MEDIEVAL LATIN SERIES · VOLUME 66

The Murder of Charles the Good

Galbert of Bruges

De multro traditione et occisione gloriosi Karoli comitis Flandriarum

The Murder of Charles the Good

Galbert of Bruges' Journal of 1127–1128

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

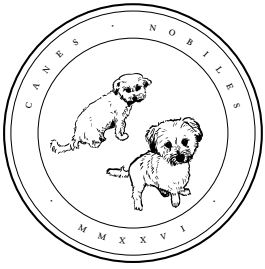


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 66 of the Canes Nobiles Medieval Latin interlinear texts

The Medieval Latin text follows Henri Pirenne's edition,
Histoire du meurtre de Charles le Bon, comte de Flandre (Paris, 1891)

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

CONTENTS

Prologue · Why Galbert Writes 11
1 · Charles and the Peace of Flanders 15
2 · Eclipse, Famine, and Death 18
3 · The Count Feeds the Poor 21
4 · The Imperial Crown Refused 24
5 · The Crown of Jerusalem Refused 27
6 · Praise of the Count 29
7 · The Count Claims His Serfs 32
8 · The Provost's Boast 35
9 · The Feud with Thancmar 37
10 · Borsiard's House Burned 39
11 · The Oath of the Conspirators 43
12 · The Count Goes to Church 47
13 · The Provost's Pride 51
14 · Signs and Vengeance 54
15 · The Murder 56
16 · The Other Victims 58
17 · Walter of Loker Is Killed 63
18 · Fromold Is Taken 67
19 · The Provost Takes the Captives 70

20 · The Plunder Begins 73
21 · The Body Lies Unburied 76
22 · The Body Is Saved 80
23 · The Burial 85
24 · Fromold Released 87
25 · William of Ypres and the Fortified Suburb 90
26 · Gervase Begins the Vengeance 95
27 · The Citizens Join Gervase 99
28 · Gervase Enters the Suburb 101
29 · The First Deaths 105
30 · Isaac Flees 109
31 · The Princes Swear 111
32 · The First Assault 112
33 · The Men of Ghent Arrive 114
34 · The Countess of Holland 117
35 · The Relics Carried Out; Galbert's Tablets 119
36 · The Besieged 123
37 · The Church and the Offer 125
38 · The Parley 129
39 · Isaac Captured 133
40 · The Great Ladders 135
41 · The Castle Taken 137
42 · The Provost's Escape 143
43 · The Church Floor Taken 145
44 · The Banners 150
45 · Thancmar's Nephews 152
46 · The Provost's Flight 157
47 · Letters from the King and from Alsace 159

48 · Isaac Hanged; Lambert Archei Taken 163
49 · William of Ypres and the Treasure 165
50 · The Annunciation; the Monks of Ghent 167
51 · The Citizens Swear to Elect a Good Count 169
52 · The King's Choice 170
53 · The Election Agreed 174
54 · Haket Escapes; Gervase Made Castellan 176
55 · The King and the Count Received; the Charter Sworn 178
56 · Homage 184
57 · The Provost Hanged at Ypres 187
58 · The Duel of Guy and Herman 194
59 · The Ram; the Viscount's Quarrel 198
60 · Robert's Plea 202
61 · The Count's Vessels 205
62 · The Ram Prepared 208
63 · The Breach 211
64 · Fromold at the Tomb; the Tower 216
65 · Pleas for Robert 220
66 · The Count Received at Saint Omer 221
67 · William of Ypres at Aire; Oudenaarde 224
68 · The Counts' Descent 225
69 · Robert the Frisian's Betrayal 227
70 · The Fourth Generation 233
71 · The Provost's Ancestry 235
72 · Defeat at Oudenaarde 238

73 · The Tower Undermined 239
74 · The Surrender 241
75 · God Reduces the Traitors 243
76 · Aardenburg; the Church Cleansed 246
77 · The Body Raised 248
78 · Saint Donatian's Church Reconciled 250
79 · Ypres Taken 252
80 · Borsiard's End; Oudenaarde Burned 254
81 · The Traitors Thrown from the Tower 256
82 · Robert Led Away 260
83 · The Dean Returns the Vessels 261
84 · The Penitence of the Traitors 262
85 · The Accusations 267
86 · William of Ypres Imprisoned at Bruges 269
87 · The Inquest 270
88 · The Toll and the Accused 272
89 · Walter of Vladslo's Death 275
90 · William of Ypres Moved; the Traitors' Feast 277
91 · Baldwin of Aalst's Death 278
92 · Desiderius's Death 280
93 · The Fine on Lille 281
94 · The Revolt at Saint Omer 282
95 · Iwain's Speech at Ghent 283
96 · Theoderic of Alsace at Ghent 289
97 · Bruges Shuts Its Gates 290

98 · Bruges Refuses the Count 292
99 · Theoderic's Promises; Flanders Divided 294
100 · Gervase Takes His Leave 296
101 · Why Theoderic Waits 298
102 · Theoderic Elected 300
103 · Homage to Theoderic 303
104 · Gervase Changes Sides 304
105 · Lambert's Ordeal; Ypres' Offer 306
106 · Bruges Answers the King 307
107 · Gistel 311
108 · Lambert Killed at Oostburg 313
109 · Ghent and Wingene 317
110 · The Anniversary; Arras 318
111 · Fighting at Wingene and Oostkamp 321
112 · William Attacks Bruges 323
113 · Walter, Thancmar's Nephew, Taken 325
114 · The Battle of Axpoele 330
115 · The Crucifix Falls 336
116 · Oostkamp Besieged 338
117 · Hostages for Walter 343
118 · The Siege of Aalst; Flattering Priests 344
119 · William's Death 348
120 · Theoderic Triumphs 350
121 · Why God Chose Theoderic 355
122 · Theoderic Confirmed 358

Among the princes of his age Charles, count and marquis of Flanders, surpassed the emperor Henry and the English king in fame, and served as father and advocate of the churches until his own serfs betrayed and killed him. Galbert writes the truth plainly amid fear and danger, asks readers to learn not to despise or kill the powers God sets over them, and says the devil, seeing the church advance, shook it with betrayals.

Cum inter regnorum principes, quos circa nos cognovimus,
when among of-kingdoms the-princes whom around us we-have-known
summum gloriae ac laudis sibi adscribendi studium
the-highest of-glory and of-praise to-himself of-ascribing zeal
per militiae facinora enituisset, et eisdem affectus
through of-knighthood deeds had-shone-forth and in-the-same-men a-disposition
consimilis ad bene regendum inesset, minoris potentiae et
alike to well ruling were-in of-less power and
famae principabatur imperator Romanorum Heinricus, qui,
of-fame was-ruling the-emperor of-the-Romans Henry who
cum annos plures sedisset, sine herede diem obiit; minoris
when years many he-had-sat without an-heir the-day met of-less
quoque famae ac virium rex Anglorum sine liberis degebat
also of-fame and of-strength the-king of-the-English without children was-living
in regno, quam comes Karolus, Flandriarum marchio,
in the-kingdom than the-count Charles of-the-Flanders marquis
naturalis noster dominus et princeps, qui quidem, militiae
natural our lord and prince who indeed of-knighthood
fama et generis nobilitatus regio sanguine, septennis in
by-the-fame and of-lineage ennobled by-royal blood for-seven-years in
comitatu pater et advocatus ecclesiarum Dei preerat, erga
the-countship father and advocate of-the-churches of-God was-over toward
pauperes largus, inter proceres suos jucundus ac honestus,
the-poor generous among nobles his pleasant and honorable

adversus hostes crudelis et cautus, qui etiam sine herede a
against enemies harsh and wary who also without an-heir by
suis, imo nefandissimis servis, traditus et occisus, pro justitia
his-own nay most-wicked serfs betrayed and slain for justice
occubuit. Tanti quidem principis mortem descripturus, non
fell of-so-great indeed a-prince the-death about-to-describe not
elaboravi eloquentiae ornatum seu diversorum colorum
I-have-labored of-eloquence the-adornment or of-diverse colors
distinguere modos, sed rerum veritatem solummodo exequi,
to-distinguish the-modes but of-things the-truth only to-pursue
et quamquam stilo arido tamen memoriae fidelium
and although in-a-style dry yet to-the-memory of-the-faithful
scribendo commendavi peregrinum mortis ipsius eventum.
by-writing I-have-commended the-strange of-death of-him outcome
Neque equidem locum et temporis oportunitatem, cum
nor indeed place and of-time the-opportunity when
animum in hoc opere intenderem, habebam, quandoquidem
the-mind on this work I-was-bending I-had since
noster locus eodem tempore sollicitabatur metu et angustia,
our place at-the-same time was-troubled by-fear and by-distress
adeo ut, sine alicujus exceptione, tam clerus quam
so-much that without of-anyone exception as-much the-clergy as
populus indeficienti periclitaretur occasu et rerum suarum
the-people by-unfailing was-endangered ruin both of-goods their
et vitae. Igitur inter tot adversa et angustissimos locorum
and of-life therefore amid so-many adversities and most-narrow of-places
fines, cepi mentem fluctuantem et quasi in Euripo jactatam
bounds I-began the-mind wavering and as-if in the-Euripus tossed
compescere, et juxta scribendi modum cohibere. In
to-check and according-to of-writing the-measure to-restrain in
qua animi mei exactione una caritatis scintillula suo
which of-mind my exaction one of-charity little-spark by-its-own

igne fota et exercitata omnes virtutes spirituales cordis
fire warmed and exercised all the-powers spiritual of-the-heart
funditus ignivit, et subsequenter hominem meum quem
utterly kindled and subsequently man my whom
a foris timor possederat, scribendi quadam libertate
from without fear had-possessed of-writing with-a-certain freedom
donavit. Super hoc igitur mentis studio, quod in tam
endowed upon this therefore of-mind effort which in so
arcto positus, vestro et omnium fidelium auditui in
narrow-a-strait placed to-your and of-all the-faithful hearing in
communi commendavi, si quis quicquam obgarrire et
common I-have-commended if anyone anything to-prattle-against and
detrahere contendat, non multum curo. Securum enim me
to-detract strive not much I-care secure for me
facit, quod veritatem omnibus apertam qui mecum eodem
makes that the-truth to-all open who with-me by-the-same
percellebantur periculo loquor, et eam posteris nostris
were-struck danger I-speak and it to-descendants our
memorandam commendo. Rogo ergo et moneo, si cui
to-be-remembered I-commend I-ask therefore and I-warn if to-anyone
hujus stili ariditas et hujus opusculi exiguus manipulus ad
of-this style the-dryness and of-this little-work the-scant handful to
manus venerit, non derideat et contempnat, sed nova
the-hands shall-have-come not let-him-mock and despise but with-new
admiratione quae scripta sunt et Dei ordinatione congesta
wonder what written are and of-God by-the-ordaining gathered
nostro solummodo tempore admiretur, et discat potestates
our only in-time let-him-wonder-at and learn powers
terrenas non despicere vel morti tradere, quas credendum est
earthly not to-despise or to-death to-hand-over which to-be-believed it-is
Deo ordinante nobis esse prepositas, unde apostolus: Omnis
God ordaining over-us to-be set whence the-apostle every

anima omni potestati subjecta sit, sive regi tamquam
soul to-every power subject let-be whether to-the-king as
precellenti sive ducibus tamquam a Deo missis. Tamquam
excelling or to-governors as by God sent as
enim non est similativum, sed confirmativum; tamquam
for not is comparative but confirmative as
vero dicitur in scriptura sacra pro eo quod vere est, sicut
but is-said in scripture holy for that which truly is as
est ibi tamquam sponsus, hoc est vere sponsus. Non
is there as a-bridegroom this is truly a-bridegroom not
quidem promeruerant homicidae et potatores et scortatores
indeed had-deserved the-murderers and drunkards and fornicators
et omnium vitiorum servi nostrae terrae, ut preesset eis
and of-all vices slaves of-our land that should-be-over them
bonus princeps, religiosus et potens, catholicus, post Deum
a-good prince devout and mighty catholic after God
pauperum sustentator, ecclesiarum Dei advocatus, patriae
of-the-poor sustainer of-the-churches of-God advocate of-the-fatherland
defensor, et talis in quo terreni imperii reliqua potestas
defender and such in whom of-earthly rule the-remaining power
bene regendi formam et Deo serviendi materiam assumeret.
well of-ruling the-pattern and to-God of-serving the-matter might-take
Videns ergo diabolus ecclesiae et fidei christianae
seeing therefore the-devil of-the-church and of-the-faith christian
profectum, sicut subsequenter audituri estis, commovit
the-advance as subsequently about-to-hear you-are shook
terrae hoc est ecclesiae Dei stabilitatem, et conturbavit
of-the-land this is of-the-church of-God the-stability and threw-into-confusion
eam dolis, traditionibus et effusione innocentium sanguinis.
it by-wiles by-betrayals and by-the-shedding of-the-innocent of-blood

Charles, son of King Cnut of Denmark by a mother of the Flemish counts' blood, is raised in Flanders and wins fame in arms. Count Baldwin, dying young, hands him the realm. Charles restores the laws and forbids arms in market or castle, and men turn to pleading their cases with a deceiving eloquence that God will correct with the scourge.

Karolus itaque filius Cnutonis regis Datiae, et matre
Charles and-so the-son of-Cnut king of-Denmark and from-a-mother
oriundus quae terrae Flandrensis comitum de sanguine
sprung who of-the-land Flemish of-the-counts from blood
processerat, ea affinitate cognationis a puero in patria
had-come by-that tie of-kinship from a-boy in country
nostra altus est usque ad virile robur corporis et animi.
our raised was right-up to manly strength of-body and of-mind
Postquam vero militiae titulis armatus est, egregium
after but of-knighthood with-the-honors armed he-was a-splendid
facinus in hostes arripuit, famam bonam et gloriam sui
deed against enemies he-seized fame good and the-glory of-his
nominis penes regnorum potentes obtinuit. Quem quidem per
name among of-kingdoms the-mighty he-won whom indeed through
plures annos in principem preoptaverant proceres nostri, si
many years as prince had-preferred nobles our if
forte sic evenire potuisset. Igitur comes Balduinus, adolescens
perhaps so to-turn-out it-could-have therefore count Baldwin a-youth
fortissimus, moriendo, nepoti suo Karolo regnum simul cum
most-brave by-dying to-kinsman his Charles the-realm together with
principibus contradidit et sub fidei securitate commendavit.
the-princes handed-over and under of-faith the-assurance commended
Cepit utique majoris consilii prudentia pius comes de
began indeed of-greater counsel by-the-prudence the-pious count about

pacis reformatione disponere, leges et jura regni revocare,
of-peace the-restoring to-arrange laws and rights of-the-realm to-recall
ita ut, paullatim pacis statu undecumque correcto in quarto
so that little-by-little of-peace the-state from-every-side corrected in the-fourth
sui comitatus anno per illum omnia florerent, omnia
of-his countship year through him all-things flourished all-things
riderent et omnia justitiae et pacis securitate et multiplici
smiled and all-things of-justice and of-peace the-security and manifold
jucunditate fruerentur. Tantam videns gratiam pacis omnibus
pleasantness enjoyed so-great seeing the-grace of-peace to-all
jucundam, indixit per terminos regni, ut sub quiete
pleasant he-proclaimed through the-bounds of-the-realm that under quiet
et securitate absque armorum usu communiter degerent,
and security without of-arms use in-common they-should-live
quicumque aut in foro aut infra castra manerent et
whoever either in the-market or within the-castles should-dwell and
conversarentur, alioquin ipsis plecterentur armis quae
should-keep-company otherwise by-the-very should-be-punished arms which
ferrent. Sub hac ergo observantia arcus et sagittae et
they-bore under this therefore observance bows and arrows and
subsequenter omnia arma postposita sunt in forinsecis locis
subsequently all arms set-aside were in outlying places
sicut et in pacificis. Qua pacis gratia legibus et justitiis
as also in peaceful-ones by-which of-peace grace by-laws and by-justice
sese regebant homines, omnia ingeniorum et studiorum
themselves ruled men all of-wits and of-studies
argumenta ad placita componentes, ut in virtute et eloquentia
arguments for the-pleas composing that in the-power and eloquence
rhetorices unusquisque se defensaret, cum impetitus fuisset
of-rhetoric each-one himself might-defend when attacked he-had-been
vel cum hostem impeteret, qua colorum varietate oratorie
or when an-enemy he-attacked by-which of-colors variety oratorically

fucatum deciperet. Tunc vero habuit rhetorica sua exercitia
painted he-might-deceive then but had rhetoric its exercises
et per industriam et per naturam, erant enim
both through diligence and through nature there-were for
multi illiterati, quibus natura ipsa eloquentiae modos et
many unlettered-men to-whom nature itself of-eloquence the-modes and
rationabiles prestiterat conjecturandi et argumentandi vias,
reasonable had-furnished of-conjecturing and of-arguing ways
quibus nullatenus illi qui disciplinati erant et docti artem
whom in-no-way those who trained were and learned the-art
rhetoricam obviare vel avertere poterant. Sed quia iterum
rhetorical to-meet or to-turn-aside could but because again
suis fallaciis minus cautis fideles et oves Christi in placitis
by-their deceits less wary the-faithful and sheep of-Christ in the-pleas
illi convenerunt, Deus qui omnia ab alto speculatur, corripere
those sued God who all-things from on-high watches to-chastise
fallaces suos non despexit, ut, quibus eloquentiae bonum
deceivers his not disdained that to-whom of-eloquence the-good
prestiterat ad salutem, ipsis per flagella insinuaret,
he-had-furnished to salvation to-them through scourges he-might-bring-home
quia eo bono usi sunt ad propriam perditionem.
because that good used they-have for their-own perdition

2 · ECLIPSE, FAMINE, AND DEATH

In August 1124 an eclipse of the sun foretells famine and death, and both follow. Men gorge at one meal on days' worth of bread and die of it, the hungry eat meat in Lent around Ghent, and the poor die on the roads and beside the farms and castles of the rich, so every face is pale as death.

Inmisit ergo Dominus flagella famis et postmodum
sent therefore the-Lord the-scourges of-famine and afterward
mortalitatis omnibus qui in regno degebant nostro, sed prius
of-mortality upon-all who in the-realm were-living our but first
terrore signorum revocare dignabatur ad penitendum, quos
by-the-terror of-signs to-call-back he-deigned to repenting those-whom
pronos previderat ad malum. Anno ab incarnatione Domini
prone he-had-foreseen to evil in-the-year from the-incarnation of-the-Lord
MCXXIV, in augusto mense, universis terrarum inhabitatoribus
1124 in August month to-all of-the-lands the-inhabitants
in corpore solari circa nonam horam diei apparuit eclipsis,
in the-body solar about the-ninth hour of-the-day appeared an-eclipse
et luminis non naturalis defectus, ita ut solis orbis
and of-light not natural a-failing so that of-the-sun the-orb
orientalis obfuscatus paullatim reliquis partibus ingereret
eastern darkened little-by-little on-the-remaining parts brought
nebulas alienas, non simul tamen totum solem obfuscantes,
clouds strange not at-once yet the-whole sun darkening
sed in parte, et tamen eadem nebula totum pererravit
but in part and yet the-same cloud the-whole wandered-over
solis circulum, pertransiens ab oriente usque ad occidentem
of-the-sun circle passing-through from the-east right-up to the-west
tantummodo in circulo solaris essentiae, unde qui statum
only in the-circle of-the-solar being whence those-who the-state

pacis et placitorum injurias notabant, futurae famis et
of-peace and of-the-pleas the-wrongs were-noting of-future famine and
mortis periculum minabantur universis. Cumque neque sic
of-death the-danger were-threatening to-all and-when not-even so
correcti sunt homines, tam domini quam servi, venit
corrected were men as-much lords as serfs came
repentinae famis inedia, et subsequenter mortalitatis irruerunt
of-sudden famine the-want and subsequently of-mortality rushed-in
flagella. Unde in psalmo: Et vocavit famem super terram,
the-scourges whence in the-psalm and he-called famine upon the-earth
et omne firmamentum panis contrivit. Qua tempestate
and every staff of-bread he-broke at-which time
non poterat solito more sese quisque cibo et potu
not could in-the-usual manner himself each-one with-food and drink
sustentare, sed contra morem tantum panis insumpsit epulator
to-sustain but against custom as-much bread took-in the-diner
semel in prandio, quantum ante hoc tempus famis in
once at a-meal as before this time of-famine on
diversis diebus sumere consueverat, atque sic per insolentiam
different days to-take he-had-been-wont and thus through excess
est gurgitatus, et omnes naturales receptaculorum meatus
he-was gorged and all the-natural of-the-vessels passages
distenti nimietate repletionis cibi et potus, natura languebat.
stretched by-the-excess of-the-filling of-food and of-drink nature languished
Cruditate quoque et indigestione tabescebant homines,
by-crudity also and indigestion were-wasting men
et adhuc fame laborabant, donec spiritum exhalarent
and still with-hunger labored until the-breath they-breathed-out
ultimum. Multi quoque inflati sunt, quibus cibus et
last many also swelled were to-whom food and
potus fastidiebat, quibus tamen utique abundabant. Quo
drink brought-loathing with-which yet indeed they-abounded at-which

tempore famis, in media quadragesima, etiam homines terrae
time of-famine in mid Lent even men of-land
nostrae, circa Gandavum et Legionem et Scaldim fluvios
our around Ghent and the-Lys and the-Scheldt rivers
commanentes, carnes comederunt, eo quod panis eis
dwelling meat ate by-this that bread for-them
prorsus defecisset. Quidam vero ipso itinere cum transitum
utterly had-failed some but on-the-very road when passage
facerent ad civitates et castra in quibus panem sibi
they-were-making to the-cities and castles in which bread for-themselves
compararent, nondum semiperfecto transitu suffocati, fame
they-might-buy not-yet half-finished the-passage choked by-hunger
perierunt; juxta villas et curtes divitum et castra seu
perished beside the-villages and farmsteads of-the-rich and the-castles or
munitiones, pauperes cum ad elemosinas misero gressu
strongholds the-poor when to the-alms with-wretched step
devoluti venissent, mendicando mortui sunt. Mirabile dictu,
rolled-down they-had-come begging dead they-were wonderful to-tell
nulli in terra nostra manserat naturalis color, sed talis pallor
to-none in land our had-remained natural color but such pallor
affinis et proprius mortis inerat universis. Languebant scilicet
akin and proper of-death was-in all were-languishing namely
sani et aegri, quia, qui sanus erat in compositione
the-healthy and the-sick because he-who healthy was in the-make
corporis, aeger effectus est, visa miseria morientis.
of-body sick made was at-the-sight-of the-misery of-one-dying

3 · THE COUNT FEEDS THE POOR

Though the conspirators are already plotting his death, Charles feeds a hundred poor daily at Bruges and in his other castles, orders half of every sown field planted in beans and peas, forbids brewing, fixes the price of wine, and rebukes the men of Ghent who let the poor die at their doors. He feeds a hundred and thirteen poor from his own table, and from the start of Lent until the day he dies he gives a poor man a full suit of new clothes every day.

Neque sic quidem correcti sunt impii, qui eodem
nor so indeed corrected were the-impious who at-the-same
tempore, sicut aiunt, in piissimi comitis Karoli mortem
time as they-say against of-the-most-pious count Charles the-death
conspiraverant. At comes egregius satagebat omnibus modis
had-conspired but the-count excellent was-busy in-all ways
pauperes sustentare, elemosinas largiri in castris et in locis
the-poor to-sustain alms to-bestow in the-castles and in places
suis, et presens ipse et per ministros suos. Eadem
his both present himself and through servants his at-the-same
tempestate centum pauperes in Brugis omni die sustentabat,
time a-hundred poor-men in Bruges every day he-was-sustaining
singulis illorum unum panem admodum grandem tribuens
to-each of-them one loaf very large giving
ab ante quadragesimam praedictam usque in novas ejusdem
from before Lent aforesaid right-up into the-new of-the-same
anni messes. Similiter in aliis castris suis idem disposuerat.
year harvests likewise in other castles his the-same he-had-arranged
Eodem anno edixerat dominus comes, quod, quicumque
in-the-same year had-decreed the-lord count that whoever
duas mensuras terrae seminarent tempore sementis, alteram
two measures of-land should-sow at-the-time of-sowing the-second
mensuram terrae seminarent faba et pisa, eo quod
measure of-land they-should-sow with-bean and pea by-this that

hoc genus leguminis citius et tempestivius fructum
this kind of-legume more-quickly and more-timely fruit
proferret, unde pauperes citius sustentari potuissent,
would-bring-forth whence the-poor more-quickly to-be-sustained could-have
si famis miseria atque inedia eo anno non cessaret.
if of-famine the-misery and the-want in-that year not should-cease
Similiter per omnem comitatum suum preceperat, per
likewise through all countship his he-had-ordered by
hoc in futuro consulens pauperibus quantum poterat. Illos
this for the-future providing for-the-poor as-much-as he-could those
etiam ex Gandavo turpiter redarguit, qui passi sunt ante
also from Ghent shamefully he-rebuked who suffered have before
ostium domus suae mori pauperes fame, quos pavisse
the-door of-house their to-die the-poor with-hunger whom to-have-fed
poterant. Cervisiam quoque interdixit confici, ut eo
they-could-have beer also he-forbade to-be-made that by-that
levius et melius abundarent pauperes, si a cervisia
more-lightly and better might-abound the-poor if from beer
conficienda cessarent tempore famis cives et incolae
to-be-made they-should-cease at-the-time of-famine the-citizens and inhabitants
terrae. Nam ex avena panes fieri jussit, ut saltem in
of-the-land for from oats loaves to-be-made he-ordered that at-least on
pane et aqua vitam continuarent pauperes. Vini quartam
bread and water life might-continue the-poor of-wine a-quart
sex pro nummis vendi precepit, et non carius, ideo ut
six for pennies to-be-sold he-ordered and not dearer so that
cessarent negotiatores ab abundantia et emptione vini,
should-cease the-merchants from the-abundance and buying of-wine
et merces suas commutarent pro necessitate famis pro
and wares their should-exchange for the-need of-famine for
victualibus aliis, quibus levius abundarent et facilius
victuals other with-which more-lightly they-might-abound and more-easily

pauperes sustentarent. A propria mensa sibi quidem
the-poor might-sustain from own table from-himself indeed
subtraxit cotidie victum, unde centum pauperes et tredecim
withdrew daily food whence a-hundred poor-men and thirteen
sustentabantur. Indumenta insuper nova, scilicet camisiam,
were-sustained garments moreover new namely a-shirt
tunicam, pelles, cappam, braccas, caligas, subtulares a
a-tunic furs a-cloak breeches leggings shoes from
principio illius quadragesimae et devoti jejunii sui, in quo
the-beginning of-that Lent and devout of-fast his in which
statim traditus in Domino obdormivit, cotidie uni pauperum
straightway betrayed in the-Lord he-fell-asleep daily to-one of-the-poor
erogavit, usque ad diem quem obiit in Christo; atque
he-gave-out right-up to the-day on-which he-died in Christ and
dispensatione tali et misericordi erogatione in pauperes
dispensation such and merciful giving-out upon the-poor
peracta, sic ibat ad ecclesiam, ubi in oratione decumbens
accomplished so he-would-go to the-church where in prayer lying-down
psallebat Deo psalmos, ibique audito ex more sacro
he-sang to-God the-psalms and-there having-heard by custom the-sacred-office
denarios pauperibus distribuit, sic Domino prostratus.
pennies to-the-poor he-distributed thus to-the-Lord prostrate

4 · THE IMPERIAL CROWN REFUSED

When the emperor Henry dies without an heir, the German clergy and people send the archbishop of Cologne's chancellor and Count Godfrey to offer Charles the empire. His barons beg him to stay, and the traitors urge him to go, hoping to be rid of him. He stays, keeps the peace, and fights in tournaments in Normandy and France, atoning for that levity with alms.

Cumque in comitatu suo Flandriarum marchio Karolus pacis
and-when in countship his of-the-Flanders the-marquis Charles of-peace
et gloriae decore degeret, Heinricus imperator Romanus
and of-glory in-the-adornment was-living Henry emperor Roman
diem obiit, et desolatum est regnum imperii illius et sine
the-day met and desolate was the-realm of-empire that and without
herede exheredatum. Igitur sapientiores in clero et populo
an-heir disinherited therefore the-wiser in the-clergy and people
regni Romanorum et Teutonicorum satagebant omnibus
of-the-realm of-the-Romans and of-the-Germans were-busy in-all
modis, quem sibi ad imperium regni providerent
ways whom for-themselves to the-empire of-the-realm they-might-provide
virum nobilem tam genere quam moribus. Igitur,
a-man noble as-much by-lineage as by-character therefore
circumspectis terrarum et regnorum principibus, considerate
having-surveyed of-lands and of-realms the-princes deliberately
inierunt consilium, quatenus illi sapientiores et potentiores
they-entered-into counsel that those wiser and more-powerful
in regno legatos idoneos, scilicet cancellarium archiepiscopi
in the-realm envoys fit namely the-chancellor of-the-archbishop
Coloniensis civitatis, et cum eo comitem Godefridum
of-Cologne city and with him count Godfrey
sollempniter transmitterent ad consulem Flandriarum Karolum
solemnly should-send to the-consul of-the-Flanders Charles

Pium, ex parte totius cleri et ex parte totius populi
the-Pious on the-part of-all the-clergy and on the-part of-all the-people
regni et imperii Teutonicorum, expostulantes et
of-the-realm and of-the-empire of-the-Germans demanding and
obsecrantes potentiam et pietatem ipsius, ut imperii
beseeching the-power and piety of-him that of-the-empire
honores et dignitates regias cum suis facultatibus pro sola
the-honors and dignities royal with their resources for sole
caritate assumeret. Omnes enim meliores tam in clero
charity he-should-take-up all for the-better-men as-much in the-clergy
quam in populo eligendum sibi eum justissimo desiderio
as in the-people to-be-chosen for-themselves him with-most-just desire
expectabant, ut si Deo donante ad ipsos dignaretur adscendere,
were-awaiting that if God granting to them he-should-deign to-come-up
coronatione et imperii exaltatione unanimiter sublimarent, ac
by-coronation and of-the-empire by-exaltation unanimously they-might-raise and
regem illum lege predecessorum catholicorum imperatorum
king him by-the-law of-predecessors catholic emperors
constituerent. Cumque legationem et expostulationem audisset
they-might-establish and-when the-embassy and demand had-heard
Karolus comes, consilium cum nobilibus et paribus suae
Charles the-count counsel with the-nobles and peers of-his
terrae subiit, quid super hoc ageret. At illi, qui ipsum
land he-undertook what upon this he-should-do but they who him
justo amore et dilectionis virtute dilexerant et ut patrem
with-just love and of-affection by-the-strength had-loved and as a-father
venerabantur, ceperunt dolere et discessum ejus deflere, et
revered began to-grieve and departure his to-lament and
ruinam patriae gravem fore, si forte eam desereret.
the-ruin of-the-fatherland heavy to-be if perhaps it he-should-forsake
Tandem illi traditores pessimi qui vitae ipsius inimicabantur
at-last those traitors most-wicked who to-life of-him were-hostile

consuluerunt ei ut regnum et ejus honores preriperet inter
counseled him that the-kingdom and its honors he-should-seize among
Teutonicos, persuadentes ei quantae gloriae et quantae
the-Germans persuading him of-how-great glory and of-how-great
famae sibi foret regem Romanorum esse. Laborabant
fame to-himself it-would-be king of-the-Romans to-be were-laboring
miseri illi qua astutia, quibus dolis carerent eo, quem
wretches those by-what cunning by-what wiles they-might-be-rid of-him whom
postmodum, dum amovere non poterant, viventem tradiderunt,
afterward when to-remove not they-could living they-betrayed
pro lege Dei et hominum cum ipsis decertantem. Remansit
for the-law of-God and of-men with them contending remained
itaque in comitatu suo Karolus comes pro expostulatione
and-so in countship his Charles the-count at the-demand
suorum dilectorum, pacem et salutem patriae, quantum
of-his beloved peace and safety of-the-fatherland as-much-as
in se erat, omnibus demandans et constituens, catholicus,
in him was to-all enjoining and establishing catholic
bonus, religiosus, cultor Dei hominumque rector providus.
good devout a-worshiper of-God of-men-and ruler provident
Qui cum secularis militiae facinora acturus foret, non
who when of-worldly knighthood the-deeds about-to-do he-was not
habebat hostes circa terram suam, sive in marchiis sive in
he-had enemies around land his either in the-marches or in
confiniis et terminis suis, quia timebant eum, aut pacis et
the-borders and bounds his because they-feared him or of-peace and
dilectionis foedere conjuncti, potius munera et donaria in
of-affection by-a-treaty joined rather gifts and presents to
invicem transmiserant; sed certamina militiae secularis pro
each-other had-sent but the-contests of-knighthood worldly for
honore terrae suae et pro exercitio militum suorum apud
the-honor of-land his and for the-exercise of-knights his with

aliquem comitum vel principum Normanniae vel Franciae,
some of-the-counts or princes of-Normandy or of-France
aliquando vero ultra regnum Franciae, arripuit, illicque cum
sometimes but beyond the-realm of-France he-took-up and-there with
ducentis equitibus tornationes exercuit, qua in re famam
two-hundred horsemen tournaments he-practiced which in thing fame
suam et comitatus sui potentiam ac gloriam sublimavit.
his and of-countship his the-power and glory he-raised
Quicquid ergo levitatis hujus culpa deliquit, elemosinarum
whatever therefore of-levity of-this by-fault he-failed of-alms
multiplici redemptione apud Deum emendavit.
by-manifold redemption with God he-amended

5 · THE CROWN OF JERUSALEM REFUSED

While the king of Jerusalem is a captive of the Saracens, the Christian knights there, who dislike his avarice, write offering Charles the kingdom of Judea. On his counselors' advice he will not leave Flanders, which he would have ruled better still had the traitors not killed him.

Hujus quoque vitae tempore contigit regem Hierosolymorum
of-this also of-life in-the-time it-happened the-king of-Jerusalem
in captivitatem Saracenorum cucurrisse, et desolata sedebat
into captivity of-the-Saracens to-have-run and desolate sat
civitas Hierusalem absque rege suo, quem, sicut didicimus,
the-city Jerusalem without king its whom as we-have-learned
christiani nominis milites qui militiae christianae ibidem
of-the-christian name the-knights who to-knighthood christian there
studuerant odio habebant, eo quod tenax et parcus
had-devoted-themselves in-hatred held by-this that stingy and sparing
fuisset rex ille captus, nec bene rexisset populum Dei. Inierunt
had-been king that captured nor well had-ruled the-people of-God they-entered

ergo consilium et communi consensu litteras direxerunt
therefore counsel and by-common consent letters they-directed
comiti Karolo, ut adscendens Hierosolymam, regnum Judeae
to-count Charles that going-up to-Jerusalem the-kingdom of-Judea
assumeret, et in loco et in sancta civitate imperii
he-should-take-up and in the-place and in the-holy city of-empire
catholici coronam dignitatemque regiam possideret. Noluit
catholic the-crown and-dignity royal should-possess he-was-unwilling
igitur, super hoc accepto fidelium suorum consilio, deserere
therefore upon this received of-faithful-men his counsel to-forsake
patriam Flandriarum, quam vita comite bene recturus foret,
the-fatherland of-the-Flanders which life companion well about-to-rule he-was
et satis melius quam adhuc rexisset, nisi traditores illi
and enough better than till-then he-had-ruled unless traitors those
pessimi, pleni demonio, dominum et patrem plenum spiritu
most-wicked full of-a-demon the-lord and father full of-the-spirit
pietatis et consilii et fortitudinis enecassent. Proh dolor! quod
of-piety and of-counsel and of-fortitude had-killed alas the-grief that
tantum virum ab ecclesia Dei tollerent, de quo regem
so-great a-man from the-church of-God they-should-take of whom as-king
ecclesiae et populus orientalis imperii et Hierosolymorum
of-the-church both the-people of-the-eastern empire and of-Jerusalem
civitas sancta simul cum populo christianorum peroptaverat
the-city holy together with the-people of-the-christians had-greatly-wished
et disposuerat simulque expostulaverat constituere.
and had-arranged and-together had-demanded to-establish

6 · PRAISE OF THE COUNT

Galbert's powers fail to praise Charles, whose merits exceed every prince's. Once a sinner, he made a good end: in a holy place, in Lent, at prayer, before the relics of Saint Donatian, his own serfs murdered their lord. Friends and enemies alike bear witness to his merits, and men of his own peace betray him, as the psalm foretold.

Deficiunt quidem mihi vires animae et ejus memoria
fail indeed me the-powers of-the-soul and its memory
simulque major vis in anima, scilicet ratio ad laudandum
and-together the-greater power in the-soul namely reason for praising
bonum consulem Karolum, cujus meritis impares omnes estis
the-good consul Charles whose to-the-merits unequal all are
vos terrarum principes, minus potentes, imperiti, indiscreti,
you of-the-lands princes less mighty unskilled undiscerning
incompositi moribus. Nam talis erat comes Karolus in fine vitae
disordered in-character for such was count Charles at the-end of-life
apud religiosos filios ecclesiae, qualis in meritis suis precellebat
among the-devout sons of-the-church as in merits his he-surpassed
rectores et plures philosophos fidei christianae, et quamvis
the-rulers and many philosophers of-the-faith christian and although
olim peccator et criminosus fuerit, in fine vitae bonae ex
once a-sinner and guilty he-had-been in the-end of-life good from
penitentiae fructu omnia cooperabantur ei in bonum et
of-penitence the-fruit all-things worked-together for-him unto good and
salutem animae perpetuam. Unde et ille ait dicique beatus
the-salvation of-soul everlasting whence also he says and-to-be-called blessed

Ante obitum nemo supremaque funera debet.
before death no-one and-last funeral-rites ought

Et apostolus: Scimus, quoniam diligentibus Deum omnia
and the-apostle we-know that for-those-loving God all-things
cooperantur in bonum, his qui secundum propositum vocati
work-together unto good for-those who according-to purpose called
sunt sancti. In sacro loco igitur et in sacris orationibus,
are saints in the-sacred place therefore and in sacred prayers
et in sacra cordis devotione, et in sacro quadragenarii
and in sacred of-the-heart devotion and in the-sacred of-the-forty-days
tempore, et in sacra elemosinarum largitione, et ante sacrum
time and in the-sacred of-alms bestowal and before the-sacred
altare, et ante sacras reliquias sancti Donatiani archiepiscopi
altar and before the-sacred relics of-saint Donatian archbishop
Remorum et beati Basilii magni et sancti Maximi trium
of-Reims and of-blessed Basil the-great and of-saint Maximus of-three
mortuorum suscitatoris, canes immundi, demonio pleni, servi
dead-men of-the-raiser dogs unclean of-a-demon full serfs
dominum suum jugulaverunt. Nemo quippe ita est absurdus,
lord their murdered no-one indeed so is absurd
ita hebes, ita stolidus, qui non adjudicaret traditores illos
so dull so stupid who not would-adjudge traitors those
penis infimis et inauditis; qui inaudita traditione
to-punishments lowest and unheard-of who by-unheard-of betrayal
dominum suum, ipsi servi qui observasse debuerant,
lord their the-very serfs who to-have-watched-over ought
disperdiderunt. Igitur mirandum erat et singulariter
destroyed therefore to-be-wondered-at it-was and singularly
memorandum, quod, cum multos vidimus imperatores,
to-be-remembered that although many we-have-seen emperors
reges, duces ac consulares viros, nullum vidimus vel
kings dukes and of-consular-rank men none we-have-seen or
audivimus adhuc, quem ita deceret fuisse dominum ac
heard till-now whom so it-befitted to-have-been lord and

patrem, advocatum ecclesiarum Dei, sicut ipsum condecuit.
father advocate of-the-churches of-God as him it-befitted
Sciebat enim esse dominus, pater, advocatus, pius, mitis,
he-knew-how for to-be lord father advocate pious gentle
exorabilis, ad honorem Dei et decorem ecclesiae idoneus,
easily-entreated for the-honor of-God and the-beauty of-the-church fit
quod vere satis probabile est, quia post mortem tanti viri
which truly enough provable is because after the-death of-so-great a-man
protestati sunt super ipsius meritis omnes, et amici et inimici,
bore-witness have upon of-him the-merits all both friends and enemies
extranei et vicini, nobiles et ignobiles, et cujuscumque terrae
foreigners and neighbors nobles and commoners and of-whatever land
habitatores, qui saltem egregiam famam de ipso audierant,
inhabitants who at-least the-excellent fame about him had-heard
quanti meriti foret credendus apud Deum et homines, qui,
of-how-great merit he-was to-be-believed with God and men who
propter justitiam Dei exequendam, et propter salutem eorum
for the-justice of-God to-be-carried-out and for the-salvation of-those
quos regebat, more christiani rectoris occubuit. Quem
whom he-ruled in-the-manner of-a-christian ruler fell whom
homines suae pacis super illum magnificantes supplantationes
men of-his peace upon him magnifying supplantings
tradiderunt, ut in psalmo: Etenim homo pacis meae, qui
betrayed as in the-psalm for the-man of-peace my who
edebat panes meos, magnificavit super me supplantationes.
ate the-loaves my magnified upon me supplantings

7 · THE COUNT CLAIMS HIS SERFS

When the famine ends, Charles inquires who in the realm are free and who are his serfs. The provost Bertulf of Bruges, his brother the castellan, and their nephews are of servile stock, and the provost has married his nieces to free knights. When one such knight challenges a free man to combat, he is refused as unfree, since by the count's law a man a year wed to a serf is a serf, and the long-forgotten claim revives.

Postquam ea igitur clementia Dei flagella subtraxerat,
after that therefore the-clemency of-God the-scourges had-withdrawn
et molestiam temporis prorsus remotam frustraverat,
and the-trouble of-the-time utterly removed had-brought-to-nothing
cepit suae dignationis copiam terris commodare, et
it-began of-its graciousness the-plenty to-the-lands to-lend and
jussit vegetabilitate frugum horrea repleri, vino et
ordered by-the-vigor of-crops the-granaries to-be-filled with-wine and
ceteris victualiis mundum redundare, et quadam amenitate
other victuals the-world to-overflow and with-a-certain pleasantness
temporum jussu divino tota terra refloruit. Volens
of-the-seasons by-command divine the-whole land bloomed-again wishing
itaque comes pius iterum revocare honestatem regni,
and-so the-count pious again to-recall the-honor of-the-realm
perquisivit qui fuissent de pertinentia sua proprii, qui servi,
he-inquired who were of the-appurtenance his own who serfs
qui liberi in regno. Dum placitorum negotia agebantur, saepe
who free in the-realm while of-the-pleas the-business was-being-done often
comes presens aderat, audiens de disceptatione libertatis
the-count present was-there hearing about the-dispute of-freedom
secularis et conditione servorum, scilicet quod in magnis
worldly and the-condition of-serfs namely that in great
negotiis et generalibus causis liberi responsa non dignabantur
affairs and general cases the-free answers not deigned

reddere servis. Quos quidem comes de pertinentia sua
to-give to-serfs whom indeed the-count of the-appurtenance his
perquirere poterat, sibi vindicare laborabat. Unus prepositus,
to-search-out could to-himself to-claim he-labored one provost
Bertulfus ille Brugensis, et frater ejus castellanus in Brugis
Bertulf that of-Bruges and brother his the-castellan in Bruges
cum nepotibus suis Bordsiardo, Roberto, Alberto et ceteris
with nephews his Borsiard Robert Albert and others
de illa cognatione precipuis, elaborabat omni astutia et
of that kindred chief was-laboring with-all cunning and
ingenio, quomodo a servitute et pertinentia comitis sese
wit how from the-servitude and appurtenance of-the-count himself
absentaret et subterfugeret; nam et ipsi de comitis
he-might-remove and slip-away for also they-themselves of of-the-count
pertinentia erant conditione servili. Accepto tandem consilio,
the-appurtenance were in-condition servile having-received at-last counsel
prepositus ille neptes suas nubiles, quas educaverat in
provost that nieces his marriageable whom he-had-brought-up in
domo sua, militibus liberis in conjugium tradidit, ut quasi
house his to-knights free in marriage gave that as-if
occasione illa nubendi ad libertatem secularem quodammodo
by-occasion that of-marrying to freedom worldly in-some-way
accederent ipse et sui. Sed contigit, quod miles, qui
might-come he and his-people but it-happened that a-knight who
neptem prepositi duxerat in uxorem, ad singulare bellum
the-niece of-the-provost had-led as wife to single combat
alium quemdam in presentia comitis appellaret militem,
another certain in the-presence of-the-count challenged knight
qui secundum suae cognationis propagationem liber erat; at
who according-to of-his kindred the-descent free was but
appellatus indignationis sibi repulsa viriliter respondit,
the-challenged-one of-indignation for-himself with-a-rebuff manfully answered

scilicet se non fuisse de servili conditione, imo liberae
namely himself not to-have-been of servile condition nay of-free
dignitatis, secundum lineas sui generis propagatum, et ob
rank according-to the-lines of-his lineage descended and for
hoc ad bellum singulare non se fore parem appellanti
this to combat single not himself to-be equal to-the-challenger
congressurum. Quicumque enim, secundum jus comitis,
about-to-engage whoever for according-to the-law of-the-count
ancillam liber in uxorem duxisset, postquam annuatim eam
a-handmaid free as wife had-led after for-a-year her
obtinuisset, non erat liber, sed ejusdem conditionis erat effectus
he-had-held not was free but of-the-same condition was made
cujus et uxor ejus. Indoluit ergo miles ille qui propter
of-which also wife his grieved therefore knight that who for
uxorem suam libertatem amiserat, per quam liberiorem
wife his freedom had-lost through whom freer
se fore crediderat cum eam accepisset; indoluit ergo
himself to-be he-had-believed when her he-had-taken grieved therefore
prepositus et sui, et ideo enitebantur omnibus modis
the-provost and his-people and therefore were-striving in-all ways
se subtrahere a servitute comitis. Igitur, cum veritatis
themselves to-withdraw from the-servitude of-the-count therefore when of-truth
judicio et seniorum regni relatu comes intellexisset,
by-the-judgment and of-the-elders of-the-realm by-the-report the-count had-understood
quod sibi sine cunctatione pertinuissent, conabatur ipsos
that to-himself without delay they-had-belonged he-was-trying them
suae servituti vendicare; et tamen quia prepositus et
to-his servitude to-claim and yet because the-provost and
cognati ejus a comitis predecessoribus usque ad hoc
kinsmen his by of-the-count predecessors right-up to this
tempus de servili conditione non interpellatus nec pulsatus
time about servile condition not questioned nor challenged

fuit, quasi sopitum et multis temporibus neglectum foret,
had-been as-if lulled-to-sleep and for-many times neglected it-was
omnium oblivioni tradebatur, nisi in predicta belli
of-all to-the-forgetfulness it-was-being-handed unless in the-aforesaid of-combat
appellatione ad recordationis veritatem revocatum fuisset.
challenge to of-recollection the-truth recalled it-had-been

8 · THE PROVOST'S BOAST

The provost insists that he and his kin are free and boasts that Charles would never have become count without him, and that no man on earth can make them serfs. The count knows of his plotting, and the provost and his nephews resolve to die rather than be made over to the count, and begin to plan his death.

Ceterum prepositus cum tota nepotum successione post
moreover the-provost with the-whole of-nephews succession after
comitem in regno potentior et fama atque religione
the-count in the-realm more-powerful and in-fame and religion
gloriosior, se liberum fuisse et cognationis tam
more-glorious himself free to-have-been and of-the-kindred as-much
antecessores quam successores suos confirmabat, et quadam
forebears as successors his asserted and with-a-certain
superstitione et arrogantia sic esse contendebat. A comitis
superstition and arrogance so to-be he-contended from of-the-count
igitur mancipatione et pertinentia se et suos subtrahere
therefore the-bondage and appurtenance himself and his-own to-withdraw
consilio et potentia laborabat, et ideo saepe improperabat
by-counsel and power he-labored and therefore often he-reproached
comiti sic: «Iste Karolus de Dacia numquam ad comitatum
the-count thus this Charles from Denmark never to the-countship
conscendisset, si ego voluissem. Nunc ergo, cum per me
would-have-mounted if I had-wished now therefore since through me

sit comes effectus, non recordatur quod bene sibi fecerim,
he-is count made not he-remembers that well to-him I-have-done
imo laborat prorsus me cum toto genere meo retorquere in
nay he-labors utterly me with whole kindred my to-twist-back into
servum, perquirens a senioribus utrum simus ejus servi. Sed
a-serf inquiring from the-elders whether we-are his serfs but
querat, quantum velit, nos semper erimus et sumus liberi,
let-him-ask as-much-as he-likes we always shall-be and are free
et non est homo super terram, qui possit nos constituere
and not is a-man upon earth who could us to-make
servos.» Frustra tamen jactanter loquebatur; nam consul
serfs in-vain yet boastfully he-spoke for the-consul
precautus detractionem prepositi et suorum intellexerat, et
forewarned the-detraction of-the-provost and of-his-people had-understood and
fraudem simul et traditionem audierat. Quandoquidem cum
the-fraud together and the-betrayal had-heard since when
defensionis suae effectum habere non poterat prepositus et
of-defense his the-effect to-have not could the-provost and
sui, quin libertate sibi usurpata carerent, maluit
his-people but-that freedom by-themselves usurped they-should-lack he-preferred
ipse cum tota nepotum successione perire quam servituti
he with the-whole of-nephews succession to-perish than to-the-servitude
comitis mancipari. Perverso tandem et nefandi consilii dolo
of-the-count to-be-made-over by-the-perverse at-last and of-wicked counsel guile
ceperunt de morte piissimi consulis seorsum tractare, et
they-began about the-death of-the-most-pious consul apart to-treat and
tandem locum et oportunitatem occidendi illum pretendere.
at-last place and opportunity of-killing him to-hold-out

9 · THE FEUD WITH THANCMAR

The provost welcomes the feud between his nephews and Thancmar, whose side the count favors, as an occasion for betrayal. Feigning regret, he summons knights to his nephews' aid, has axes fetched from the cloister's carpenters to hew Thancmar's orchards, and feasts the returning army in the cloister, while their helpers plunder the peasants as no count has ever allowed.

Laetus ergo prepositus erat, quod lites et seditiones ortas
glad therefore the-provost was that the-strifes and seditions arisen
inter nepotes suos et Thancmarum, cujus parti justae comes
between nephews his and Thancmar whose to-side just the-count
favebat, occasiones haberet tradendi comitem; nam universos
was-favoring occasions he-had of-betraying the-count for all
milites provinciae nostrae, tum pretio, tum potentia, tum
the-knights of-province our now by-price now by-power now
petitione, acciverat in auxilium nepotum suorum contra
by-petition he-had-summoned to the-aid of-nephews his against
Thancmarum. Quem quidem obsedit circumquaque in loco,
Thancmar whom indeed he-besieged round-about in the-place
quo se vallaverat, et tandem collecta manu invasit
in-which himself he-had-fortified and at-last gathered a-band he-attacked
validissime obsessos, et claustra portarum confringens,
most-strongly the-besieged and the-bars of-the-gates breaking
detruncavit pomeria et sepes inimicorum suorum. Absens
he-cut-down the-orchards and hedges of-enemies his absent
tamen et quasi nihil fecisset consilio et dolo omnia fecit,
yet and as-if nothing he-had-done by-counsel and guile all-things he-did
omnem benevolentiam a foris pretendebat, et inimicis dicebat
all goodwill from without he-held-out and to-enemies he-said
sese dolere, quod nepotes sui tot lites, tot homicidia
himself to-grieve that nephews his so-many strifes so-many homicides

peragerent, quos quidem ad omnia nefaria animaverat. In
should-carry-out whom indeed to all wicked-deeds he-had-roused in
congressione ergo predicta utrimque ceciderunt eo die plurimi
the-encounter therefore aforesaid on-both-sides fell that day very-many
vulnerati et mortui. Quod cum intellexisset prepositus, quod
wounded and dead which when had-understood the-provost that
jam congressio fieret, ipsemet descendit ad carpentarios,
already the-encounter was-being-made he-himself went-down to the-carpenters
qui in claustro fratrum operabantur, et jussit ferramenta
who in the-cloister of-the-brothers were-working and ordered tools
eorum, scilicet secures, illuc deferri, quibus detruncarent
their namely axes thither to-be-brought with-which they-might-cut-down
turrem et pomeria et domos inimicorum suorum. Misit
the-tower and orchards and houses of-enemies his he-sent
ergo per singulas domos in suburbio ad colligendas secures,
therefore through each house in the-suburb for collecting axes
quae illuc citissime delatae sunt. Cumque in nocte redissent
which thither most-quickly brought were and-when in the-night had-returned
nepotes ejus cum quingentis militibus armigeris et peditibus
the-nephews his with five-hundred knights squires and foot-soldiers
infinitis, induxit eos in claustrum et fratrum refectorium,
countless he-brought them into the-cloister and of-the-brothers the-refectory
in quo refecit universos diverso ciborum et potuum
in which he-refreshed all with-varied of-foods and of-drinks
apparatu, et super hoc laetus et gloriosus erat. Cumque
array and over this glad and glorious he-was and-when
assidue sic affligeret inimicos et maximam in eis expensam
constantly thus he-afflicted the-enemies and the-greatest on them expense
faceret, qui nepotes suos juvarent, ceperunt primo armigeri,
made those-who nephews his helped began first the-squires
postea milites depredari rusticos, adeo ut pecudes et
afterward the-knights to-plunder the-peasants so-much that the-sheep and

armenta villicorum raperent et devorarent. Quicquid in suum
herds of-the-villagers they-seized and devoured whatever for their
usum possederant rustici, hoc nepotes prepositi violenter
use had-possessed the-peasants this the-nephews of-the-provost violently
rapiebant et suorum sumptui deputabant. Sed a principio
were-seizing and of-their-own to-the-cost were-assigning but from the-beginning
regni nullus comitum perpessus est rapinam fieri in
of-the-realm none of-the-counts suffered has plunder to-be-made in
regno, eo quod maxima mors et pugna inde contigisset.
the-realm by-this that the-greatest death and fighting thence had-happened

10 · BORSIARD'S HOUSE BURNED

Two hundred plundered peasants appeal by night to the count at Ypres. On his counselors' advice he burns Borsiard's house, and the provost's kin are enraged, seeing him side with their enemies and press them daily as serfs. Warned at Bruges that they mean to betray him, he receives their intercessors after dinner, promises justice and a better house for Borsiard if they stop plundering, swears Borsiard will hold nothing there again, and sends the intercessors off with wine.

Audierunt ergo rustici comitem venisse apud Ipram,
heard therefore the-peasants the-count to-have-come to Ypres
ad quem nocte et clanculo usque ad ducentos transierunt,
to whom by-night and secretly up to two-hundred crossed-over
pedibusque ipsius convoluti, obsecrantes paternum et
and-at-the-feet of-him rolled beseeching the-fatherly and
consuetum ab eo auxilium, ut res ipsorum reddi
accustomed from him help that goods their to-be-returned
juberet, scilicet pecudes et armenta, vestes et argentum,
he-would-order namely sheep and herds clothes and silver
insuper omnem ceteram suppellectilem domuum suarum, quae
besides all other furnishing of-houses their which

omnia rapuissent nepotes prepositi, et illi qui in expeditionem
all had-seized the-nephews of-the-provost and those who in the-expedition
illius obsidionis cum illis et nocte et die pugnassent. Quas
of-that siege with them both by-night and by-day had-fought which
proclamorum conquestiones comes graviter ferens, convocavit
of-outcries complaints the-count heavily bearing called-together
consiliatores suos et plures etiam qui de cognatione prepositi
counselors his and many also who of the-kindred of-the-provost
fuere, perquirens ab eis qua vindicta et quo rigore,
were inquiring from them by-what vengeance and by-what rigor
justitia hoc facinus justificaret. At illi consilium dederunt, ut
justice this crime should-justify but they counsel gave that
sine dilatione domum Borsiardi incendio destrueret, eo
without delay the-house of-Borsiard by-fire he-should-destroy by-this
quod rapinam in rusticos comitis exercuisset, atque ideo
that plunder upon the-peasants of-the-count he-had-practiced and therefore
maxime consiliati sunt domum prefatam destrui, quia
most counseled they-have the-house aforesaid to-be-destroyed because
quamdiu staret tamdiu lites et rapinas Borsiardus insuper
as-long-as it-stood so-long strifes and plunders Borsiard besides
et homicidia perageret, et sic viciniam illam protinus
and homicides would-carry-out and thus neighborhood that forthwith
vastaret. Descendit ergo super hoc consultus consul, et
would-lay-waste went-down therefore upon this counseled the-consul and
incendit domum et funditus mansionem ejus destruxit. Tunc
burned the-house and utterly dwelling his destroyed then
ille Borsiardus et prepositus et ipsorum complices ultra
that Borsiard and the-provost and their accomplices beyond
modum indoluerunt, tum quia comes in hoc facto videbatur
measure grieved now because the-count in this deed seemed
consensum et auxilium prestitisse inimicis eorum, tum
consent and help to-have-furnished to-enemies their now

quia comes cotidie ipsos de servili conditione pulsaret, et
because the-count daily them about servile condition was-challenging and
ad sibi mancipandos omni modo laboraret. Sicque domo
for to-himself to-be-made-over in-every way labored and-so the-house
conflagrata, comes Brugas adscendit. Conscensa igitur domo
burned the-count to-Bruges went-up gone-up therefore the-house
cum consedisset, venerunt ad eum qui familiares erant ei,
when he-had-sat-down came to him who intimate were with-him
et precautum reddiderunt dicentes, quod nepotes prepositi
and forewarned made-him saying that the-nephews of-the-provost
eum traderent, eo quod jam occasionem aptam pretenderent
him would-betray by-this that already an-occasion fit they-held-out
a conflagratione domus prefatae, quamquam, etsi hoc non
from the-burning of-the-house aforesaid although even-if this not
fecisset comes, non minus tamen ab illis traderetur. Postquam
he-had-done the-count not less yet by them would-be-betrayed after
vero comes cenaverat, adscenderunt coram eo intercessores ex
but the-count had-dined went-up before him intercessors from
parte prepositi et nepotum ipsius, qui exorarent comitem, ut
part of-the-provost and of-nephews his who should-entreat the-count that
indignationem suam ab eis averteret, et sub amicitia
indignation his from them he-would-turn-away and under friendship
sua miseratus eos reciperet. At consul omnia justa se
his pitying them would-receive but the-consul all-things just himself
cum illis acturum et misericorditer etiam respondit, si
with them to-be-about-to-do and mercifully also answered if
lites et rapinas postponere deinceps voluissent, et meliorem
strifes and plunders to-set-aside henceforth they-had-wished and a-better
domum insuper restituere Borsiardo se debere promisit.
house besides to-restore to-Borsiard himself to-owe he-promised
In loco tamen in quo domus combusta est jurabat, se
in the-place yet in which the-house burned was he-swore himself

comitatum obtinente, amplius Borsiardum nullam possessionem
the-countship holding further Borsiard no possession
obtenturum, eo quod usque tunc juxta Tancmarum manens,
about-to-hold by-this that up-to then beside Thancmar dwelling
numquam nisi lites et seditiones in hostes et in cives
never except strifes and seditions against enemies and against citizens
cum rapina et cede ageret. Qui vero intercessores fuere,
with plunder and slaughter he-did who but intercessors were
partim conscii traditionis, non multum super reconciliandis
partly privy of-the-betrayal not much over things-to-be-reconciled
vexabant comitem, et quoniam propinatum ibant ministri,
troubled the-count and since to-pour-drink were-going the-servants
rogabant comitem ut de vino meliore afferre juberet.
they-asked the-count that of wine better to-bring he-would-order
Quod cum ebibissent, sicut potores solent, rogabant semel
which when they-had-drunk-off as drinkers are-wont they-asked once
sibi propinari et abundanter adhuc, ut posteriore licentia
to-themselves to-be-poured and abundantly still that a-later leave
et ultima a consule accepta, quasi dormitum abirent;
and last from the-consul received as-if to-sleep they-might-go
et jussu comitis abundanter propinatum est omnibus illis
and by-order of-the-count abundantly poured it-was for-all those
qui aderant, donec accepta licentia ultima ipsi abissent.
who were-present until received the-leave last they had-gone-away

The intercessors report the count's answer to the provost and his nephews, who swear in his chamber to betray him. The young Robert is forced to give his hand before he knows the oath, weeps when he learns it, and is told it was a test. That night Isaac, Borsiard, and their accomplices meet in the dark at Walter's lodging, choose the murderers from Borsiard's household, and promise four marks to each knight and two to each sergeant.

Igitur Isaac et Borsiardus et Willelmus ex Wervi, Ingrannus
therefore Isaac and Borsiard and William from Wervik Ingran
et eorum complices, accepto assensu a preposito, quod
and their accomplices received assent from the-provost what
ex necessitate divinae ordinationis per liberam voluntatem
out-of necessity of-divine ordaining through free will
quidem facturi erant, accelerabant. Nam statim hi qui
indeed about-to-do they-were they-hastened for at-once these who
mediatores et intercessores erant inter comitem et nepotes
mediators and intercessors were between the-count and the-nephews
prepositi, conscensa domo ejusdem prepositi, denunciaverunt
of-the-provost gone-up the-house of-the-same provost announced
responsum comitis, scilicet quod nullam gratiam potuissent
the-answer of-the-count namely that no favor they-had-been-able
acquirere aut nepotibus aut eorum fautoribus predictis,
to-acquire either for-the-nephews or for-their supporters aforesaid
sed hoc solum cum eis ageret, quod justitiae districtione
but this only with them he-would-do what of-justice by-the-strictness
censura primatum terrae constituisset. Tunc prepositus
the-judgment of-the-chief-men of-the-land should-have-determined then the-provost
et sui nepotes intro in cameram abeuntes, accitis quos
and his nephews within into the-chamber going-off summoned whom
voluissent, custodiente ipso preposito camerae januam,
they-wished guarding he-himself the-provost of-the-chamber the-door

dederunt dexteras in invicem, ut traderent consulem, et
gave right-hands to each-other that they-would-betray the-consul and
ad hoc facinus advocaverunt Robertum puerum, convenientes
to this crime they-called Robert the-boy urging
illum, ut ipsis daret dexteram, id idem simul cum
him that to-them he-should-give right-hand that same together with
ipsis peracturus, quod et ipsi peractum irent, pro
them about-to-carry-out which also they-themselves to-carry-out were-going for
quo et dexteras in invicem contradidissent. At puer nobilis
which also right-hands to each-other they-had-pledged but the-boy of-noble
animi virtute precautus animadvertebat grave fore, pro quo
mind by-strength forewarned noticed grave to-be for which
ipsum urgerent, restitit nolens ignoranter in taxationem
him they-urged he-resisted unwilling unknowing into the-compact
illorum subduci, nisi presciret quid rerum acturos sese
of-them to-be-drawn unless he-knew-beforehand what of-things about-to-do themselves
confirmassent, et cum ad hoc cogerent illum, subtrahens se
they-had-sworn and when to this they-forced him withdrawing himself
exire januam festinabat. Sed Isaac et Willelmus et ceteri
to-go-out the-door he-hastened but Isaac and William and the-rest
proclamabant preposito qui tunc janitor erat, ne Robertum
cried-out to-the-provost who then door-keeper was not Robert
exire permitteret, donec jussu ipsius coactus quod ab
to-go-out he-should-let until by-order of-him compelled what from
eo postulassent perageret. Statim prepositi blanditiis
him they-had-demanded he-should-carry-out at-once of-the-provost by-blandishments
et minis juvenis circumventus, rediit et dedit sub eorum
and threats the-youth surrounded returned and gave under their
conditione dexteram, ignarus quidem quid cum illis acturus
condition right-hand unknowing indeed what with them about-to-do
foret, et statim confirmatus cum traditoribus requisivit quid
he-was and at-once bound with the-traitors he-asked what

fecisset. At illi: «Comes iste Karolus laborat omnibus modis ad
he-had-done but they count this Charles labors in-all ways for
destructionem nostram, et ut in servos sibi nos vindicet
the-destruction our and that into serfs to-himself us he-may-claim
festinat, cujus traditionem jam conjuravimus, et debes
hastens of-whom the-betrayal already we-have-sworn and you-ought
amodo nobiscum eandem traditionem tam consilio quam
henceforth with-us the-same betrayal as-much by-counsel as
opere peragere.» Igitur territus puer et totus in lacrimas
by-deed to-carry-out therefore terrified the-boy and wholly into tears
fusus ait: «Absit a nobis, ut dominum nostrum tradamus
poured says far-be-it from us that lord our we-should-betray
et patriae consulem. Imo revera, si non desistitis, ego
and of-the-fatherland the-consul nay in-truth if not you-desist I
vadam et aperte traditionem vestram comiti et universis
shall-go and openly betrayal your to-the-count and to-all
eloquar, nec super hoc pacto consilium vel auxilium, volente
shall-speak-out nor over this compact counsel or help willing
Deo, umquam prestabo.» At illum fugientem ab eis violenter
God ever I-shall-furnish but him fleeing from them violently
retinuerunt dicentes: «Audi, amice, quasi serio facturi
they-held-back saying listen friend as-if seriously about-to-do
essemus prefatam traditionem, tibi eam intimavimus, ut
we-were the-aforesaid betrayal to-you it we-have-made-known that
per hoc probaremus utrum in aliquo gravi facto nobiscum
through this we-might-test whether in some grave deed with-us
velis permanere; est quidem aliud quiddam quod
you-are-willing to-remain there-is indeed other something which
adhuc tibi celavimus, causa cujus obligatus es nobis
still from-you we-have-hidden for-the-sake-of which bound you-are to-us
fide et taxatione, quod in futuro dicemus.» Et quasi in
by-faith and compact what in the-future we-shall-say and as-if into

risum conversi, dissimulabant traditionem. Descendit utique
laughter turned they-dissembled the-betrayal went-down indeed
in locum suum unusquisque illorum, exeuntes a camera.
to place his each-one of-them going-out from the-chamber
Isaac cum tandem domum venisset, quasi dormitum ibat —
Isaac when at-last home he-had-come as-if to-sleep went
expectabat enim silentium noctis — et mox conscenso equo
he-was-awaiting for the-silence of-the-night and soon mounted his-horse
rediit in castrum, descendens in hospitium Borsiardi et
he-returned into the-castle going-down into the-lodging of-Borsiard and
evocans eum ceterosque quos voluit, seorsum descenderunt in
calling-out him and-the-others whom he-wished apart they-went-down into
aliud hospitium, scilicet Walteri militis. Et cum introissent,
another lodging namely of-Walter the-knight and when they-had-entered
ignem prorsus qui in domo erat extinxerunt, ne forte per
the-fire utterly which in the-house was they-put-out lest perhaps through
ignem accensum innotesceret expergefactis in domo qui
the-fire lit it-should-become-known to-those-awakened in the-house who
essent et quid negotii contra morem, illa noctis tempestate,
they-were and what of-business against custom at-that of-night time
agerent. Securi igitur in tenebris consiliabantur traditionem
they-were-doing secure therefore in the-darkness they-took-counsel the-betrayal
fieri statim in mane, eligentes de familia Borsiardi
to-be-made at-once in the-morning choosing from the-household of-Borsiard
animosiores et audaces ad hoc facinus, et spondebant eis
the-bolder and daring-ones for this crime and they-promised them
divitias multas. Militibus vero qui interficerent comitem
riches many to-the-knights but who should-kill the-count
marcas quatuor, et servientibus qui idem agerent marcas
marks four and to-the-sergeants who the-same should-do marks
duas obtulerunt, et confirmaverunt sese nequissima
two they-offered and they-bound themselves by-the-most-wicked

rerum taxatione. Reversus est itaque Isaac in domum suam
of-things compact returned was and-so Isaac to house his
circa crepusculum diei, postquam suo consilio ceteros
about the-twilight of-the-day after by-his counsel the-others
animaverat et promptos ordinaverat in tantum scelus.
he-had-roused and ready had-ordered unto so-great crime

12 · THE COUNT GOES TO CHURCH

At dawn on a dark and misty day Borsiard's serfs watch the count's door. Charles, who has slept badly, gives to the poor and goes up to the gallery of Saint Donatian's, where Borsiard and his armed men find him prostrate at the altar with psalms and pennies for the poor. Galbert recalls his royal lineage, his pilgrimage to Jerusalem, and his care for the poor, and notes that news of his death reaches London and Laon within two days.

Igitur cum dies obvenisset obscura valde et nebulosa, ita
therefore when the-day had-come dark very and misty so
ut hastae longitudine nullus a se discernere posset rem
that of-a-spear at-the-length no-one from himself to-distinguish could thing
aliquam, clanculo servos aliquot misit Borsiardus in curtem
any secretly serfs several sent Borsiard into the-court
comitis, precavere exitum ejus in ecclesiam. Surrexerat
of-the-count to-watch-for the-going-out his into the-church had-risen
quidem comes multo mane et distribuerat pauperibus, sicut
indeed the-count very early and had-distributed to-the-poor as
consueverat, in propria domo, et sic ad ecclesiam ibat. Sed
he-had-been-wont in own house and thus to the-church was-going but
sicut referebant capellani ejus, nocte, cum in lectum se
as related chaplains his in-the-night when in bed himself
composuisset ad dormiendum, quadam vigilantiae sollicitudine
he-had-settled for sleeping with-a-certain of-wakefulness anxiety

laborabat, mente quidem confusa et turbata, ita ut multiplici
he-labored in-mind indeed confused and disturbed so that by-manifold
rerum meditatione pulsatus, modo in altero cubans latere modo
of-things meditation struck now on the-one lying side now
residens in stratu totus languidus sibi ipsi videretur. Cumque
sitting-up on the-bed wholly faint to-him himself he-seemed and-when
in itinere versus ecclesiam beati Donatiani processisset,
on the-way toward the-church of-blessed Donatian he-had-proceeded
servi qui ejus exitum precavebant recurrentes, denuntiaverunt
the-serfs who his going-out were-watching-for running-back announced
traditoribus consulem in solarium ecclesiae conscendisse cum
to-the-traitors the-consul into the-gallery of-the-church to-have-gone-up with
paucis. Tunc ille furibundus Borsiardus et milites et servientes
few then that raging Borsiard and knights and sergeants
ejus, simul acceptis gladiis nudis sub palliis, persequebantur
his together taking swords naked under cloaks pursued
comitem in eodem solario, dividentes se in duas partes, ita
the-count in the-same gallery dividing themselves into two parts so
ut ex utraque via solarii nullus eorum aufugeret quos tradere
that by either way of-the-gallery none of-them should-escape whom to-betray
voluissent, et ecce! comitem prostratum suo more juxta altare
they-wished and behold the-count prostrate in-his manner beside the-altar
in humili scabello viderunt, ubi Deo psalmos decantabat, et
on a-low stool they-saw where to-God psalms he-was-chanting and
orationes devotus simul et pauperibus denarios erogabat.
prayers devout together and to-the-poor pennies he-was-giving-out
Et sciendum quam nobilem virum et egregium consularem
and it-must-be-known how noble a-man and excellent consular
tradiderunt servi impiissimi et inhumani. Meliores et
betrayed the-serfs most-impious and inhuman the-better and
potentiores, qui a principio sanctae ecclesiae, sive in
more-powerful who from the-beginning of-holy church whether in

Francia, sive in Flandria, sive in Datia, sive tandem sub
France or in Flanders or in Denmark or at-last under
Romano imperio floruissent, progenitores ejus fuerunt, de
the-Roman empire had-flourished forebears his were from
quorum traduce comes pius nostro tempore concretus et in
whose stock the-count pious in-our time grown and into
virum perfectum a puero educatus, numquam paternos et
a-man perfect from a-boy brought-up never the-fatherly and
regios excessit nobiles mores et naturales vitae honestates.
royal he-departed-from noble ways and the-natural of-life honors
Cumque ante comitatum multa insignia et egregia fecisset,
and-when before the-countship many notable and excellent-things he-had-done
arripuit sanctae peregrinationis viam Hierosolymitanorum, atque
he-took-up of-holy pilgrimage the-way of-the-Jerusalemites and
maris profunda transnavigando, tandem post multa pericula
of-the-sea the-depths by-sailing-across at-last after many dangers
et vulnera pro amore Christi saepe perpessa, voto peroptato
and wounds for the-love of-Christ often endured with-vow greatly-desired
et laetissimo in Hierusalem adscendit, ubi etiam contra
and most-glad to Jerusalem he-went-up where also against
hostes christianae fidei strenue dimicavit, et sic veneranter
the-enemies of-the-christian faith vigorously he-fought and thus reverently
adorato Domini sepulchro repatriavit. In qua peregrinationis
having-adored of-the-Lord the-sepulcher he-returned-home in which of-pilgrimage
necessitate et angustia didicit pius Domini vernaculus,
the-need and straitness learned the-pious of-the-Lord servant
sicut in comitatu sedens saepe retulit, quanta egestate
as in the-countship sitting often he-related with-how-great want
pauperes laborarent, qua superbia divites extollerentur, et
the-poor labored with-what pride the-rich were-lifted-up and
tandem quota totus mundus miseria concuteretur. Unde
at-last with-how-much the-whole world misery was-shaken whence

condescendere solebat egentibus, et fortis fieri in adversis,
to-condescend he-was-wont to-the-needy and strong to-become in adversities
non elevari in prosperis, et sicut psalmista docet: Honor
not to-be-lifted-up in prosperities and as the-psalmist teaches the-honor
regentis judicium diligit, judicio principum et virorum
of-the-ruler judgment loves by-the-judgment of-princes and of-men
prudentum comitatum regebat. Cumque tam gloriosi principis
prudent the-countship he-ruled and-when so glorious of-a-prince
martirium vita suscepisset, terrarum universi habitatores
martyrdom the-life had-taken-up of-the-lands all the-inhabitants
infamia traditionis ipsius perculsi, nimis indoluerunt, et
by-the-infamy of-the-betrayal of-him struck exceedingly grieved and
mirabile dictu, occiso consule in castro Brugensi, in mane
wonderful to-tell slain the-consul in the-castle of-Bruges in the-morning
unius diei, scilicet feriae quartae, fama impiae mortis
of-one day namely of-the-day fourth the-report of-the-impious death
ejus in Londonia civitate, quae est in Anglia terra, secundo
his in London the-city which is in England the-land on-the-second
die postea circa primam diei perculit cives, et circa
day afterward about the-first-hour of-the-day struck the-citizens and about
vesperam ejusdem secundae diei Laudunenses turbavit, qui in
evening of-the-same second day the-men-of-Laon it-disturbed who in
Francia a nobis longe remoti sunt; sicut didicimus per
France from us far removed are as we-have-learned through
scholares nostros, qui eodem tempore Lauduni studuerunt,
students our who at-the-same time at-Laon studied
sic etiam per negotiatores nostros intelleximus, qui eodem
thus also through merchants our we-have-understood who on-the-same
die Londoniae mercaturae intenti fuere. Intervalla ergo vel
day at-London on-trade intent were the-intervals therefore either

temporum vel locorum predictorum nec equo nec navigio
of-the-times or of-the-places aforesaid neither by-horse nor by-ship
quisquam transiisse tam velociter poterat.
anyone to-have-crossed so swiftly could

13 · THE PROVOST'S PRIDE

God leaves alive only the bold and presumptuous of the provost's kin, the weightier ones dying first. Bertulf, proud and severe, sells prebends without election and, once the devout canons who restrained him are dead, raises and arms his nephews in feuds so that his kin's power may be known. Challenged as a serf, he resolves to resist and brings about the betrayal.

Ad hoc quoque traditionis facinus peragendum dispensatum
for this also of-betrayal crime to-be-carried-out arranged
est a Deo, ut audaces et presumptuosi de sanguine
it-was by God that the-bold and presumptuous of the-blood
predecessorum prepositi Bertulfi relinquerentur, ceteris morte
of-the-predecessors of-the-provost Bertulf should-be-left the-rest by-death
preventis, qui potentes in patria, dum viverent, fuerunt
forestalled who mighty in the-fatherland while they-lived were
personae graves et divitiis affluebant, sed predictus prepositus
persons weighty and in-riches abounded but the-aforesaid provost
in clero severitate gravissima degebat et non modice
in the-clergy with-severity most-grave lived and not moderately
superbus. Nam sui moris erat, cum in presentiam ejus aliquis
proud for of-his custom it-was when into the-presence his anyone
accessisset quem optime novisset, ut, superbia animi sui
had-come whom best he-knew that by-the-pride of-mind his
dissimulante, ex indignatione juxta se sedentes interrogaret
dissembling out-of indignation beside himself those-sitting he-would-ask

quisnam esset, at tunc primum si placuisset ei accitum
who he-was and then first if it-pleased him summoned
salutaret. Cum vero alicui prebendulam vendidisset canonicam,
he-would-greet when but to-anyone a-little-prebend he-had-sold canonical
nulla electione canonica imo violenter illi investituram
with-no election canonical nay violently to-him investiture
dedit; non enim aliquis canonicorum suorum audebat vel
he-gave not for any of-the-canons his dared either
tacite ipsum redarguere vel aperte. In predicto fratrum
silently him to-reproach or openly in the-aforesaid of-the-brothers
loco ecclesiae beati Donatiani, canonici valde religiosi et
place of-the-church of-blessed Donatian canons very devout and
perfecte litterati olim, scilicet in principio prepositurae hujus
thoroughly lettered once namely in the-beginning of-the-provostship of-this
arrogantissimi prelati, fuerunt, qui ejus superbiam reprimentes,
most-arrogant prelate were who his pride checking
et consilio et doctrina catholica constrictum tenebant, ne
both by-counsel and by-teaching catholic restrained held-him lest
quid inhonestum in ecclesia presumeret. Postquam vero
anything dishonorable in the-church he-should-presume after but
in Domino obdormierunt, relictus sibi ille prepositus ad
in the-Lord they-fell-asleep left to-himself that provost to
quicquid sibi videbatur, et quo eum impetus arrogantiae
whatever to-himself seemed-good and where him the-impulse of-arrogance
impulit, ferebatur. Siquidem, cum esset caput sui generis,
drove was-borne since when he-was the-head of-his kindred
nepotes suos admodum enutritos et tandem militia
nephews his very-well brought-up and at-last with-knighthood
precinctos omnibus in patria preferre studuit, et ut
girded above-all in the-fatherland to-prefer he-strove and that
fama eorunden ubicumque innotesceret laboravit, unde ad
the-fame of-them everywhere might-become-known he-labored whence to

lites et seditiones cognatos suos armavit, hostes eis quos
strifes and seditions kinsmen his he-armed enemies to-them whom
impugnarent opposuit, ut sic fama per universos volaret,
they-might-attack he-set-against that thus the-fame through all might-fly
scilicet quantae potentiae ac virium ipse et nepotes ejus
namely of-how-great power and strength he and nephews his
fuissent, cui nullus in regno resisteret vel prevaleret. Tandem
had-been whom no-one in the-realm might-resist or prevail-against at-last
de servorum conditione pulsatus in presentia comitis, et
about of-serfs the-condition challenged in the-presence of-the-count and
simul a comite ad hoc elaborante, ut probaret eum
at-the-same-time by the-count to this laboring that he-might-prove him
cum tota successione servum fuisse, sugillatus, sicut
with the-whole succession a-serf to-have-been affronted as
predictum est, satagebat, qua fuga et qua astutia sese
said-before it-is he-was-busy by-what flight and by-what cunning himself
servituti opponeret et qua virtute libertatem usurpatam
to-servitude he-might-oppose and by-what strength freedom usurped
conservaret. Et cum aliter obstinatus non posset, traditionem,
he-might-keep and when otherwise obstinate not he-could the-betrayal
quam diu detrectaverat, tam inter suos quam inter regni
which long he-had-shrunk-from as-much among his-own as among of-the-realm
pares nefando exitu consummavit per se et per suos.
the-peers by-wicked outcome he-accomplished by himself and by his-own

Bloody water appears in the ditches as a sign, and the conspirators ask who would avenge the count if they killed him, not knowing that the king of France and the princes of Flanders will. Galbert asks his readers to pray for Charles's soul and explains that he has written the passion day by day, down to the vengeance God took.

Sed piissimus Deus iterum suos revocare dignatus est per
but the-most-pious God again his-own to-call-back deigned has through
terrorem signorum; nam circa viciniam nostram in fossatis
the-terror of-signs for around neighborhood our in the-ditches
aquae cruentae apparuerunt in signum futurae cedis, per
waters bloody appeared as a-sign of-future slaughter through
quod a suo scelere revocari poterant, si indurato cordis
which from their crime to-be-called-back they-could if with-hardened of-heart
zelo non conspirassent in tradendo comitem. Insuper saepius
zeal not they-had-conspired in betraying the-count moreover rather-often
conferebant, si comitem interficerent, quis eum vindicaret, et
they-conferred if the-count they-should-kill who him would-avenge and
quamvis ignorarent quid dicerent, «quis,» infinitum nomen,
although they-knew-not what they-said who indefinite a-name
infinitos, et qui sub certo numero non adscriberentur, notavit;
the-indefinite and who under fixed number not were-ascribed he-marked
quandoquidem rex Franciae cum gravi exercitu, et simul
since the-king of-France with heavy army and together
principes terrae nostrae cum infinita multitudine ad vindicandam
the-princes of-land our with endless multitude for avenging
consulis piissimi mortem convenerunt. Sed adhuc nondum
of-the-consul most-pious the-death came-together but still not-yet
hujus fati miseria devoluta est ad finem, quin de die in diem
of-this doom the-misery rolled-down is to the-end but-that from day to day

non desinant vindicare prefatam comitis mortem in omnes
not they-cease to-avenge the-aforesaid of-the-count death upon all
suspectos et reos et ubicumque profugos et exules. Nos itaque
suspects and guilty and everywhere fugitives and exiles we and-so
terrae Flandriarum incolae, qui consulis et magni principis
of-the-land of-the-Flanders inhabitants who of-the-consul and great of-the-prince
mortem deflemus, vitae ejus memores obsecramus, monemus et
the-death lament of-life his mindful we-beseech warn and
rogamus, ut, audita vera et certa descriptione et vitae et
ask that having-heard the-true and sure description both of-the-life and
mortis ipsius, quicumque audiveritis, deposcatis animae ejus
of-the-death of-him whoever shall-have-heard you-entreat for-soul his
vitae aeternae gloriam et beatitudinem cum sanctis perennem.
of-life eternal the-glory and blessedness with the-saints everlasting
In hac passionnis subscriptione consequenter inveniet lector
in this of-the-passion account consequently shall-find the-reader
distinctiones dierum et gestorum, quae in ipsis facta sunt
the-divisions of-the-days and of-the-deeds which in them done were
diebus, usque ad vindictam subnotatam in fine opusculi,
days right-up to the-vengeance noted in the-end of-the-little-work
quam solus Deus exercuit in principes terrae, quos ab
which alone God exercised upon the-princes of-the-land whom from
hoc seculo mortis districtione exterminavit, quorum consilio
this world of-death by-the-severity he-wiped-out whose by-counsel
et auxilio traditio incepta est et ad finem usque perducta.
and help the-betrayal begun was and to the-end right-up carried

On Wednesday 2 March 1127, as Charles lies prostrate in Saint Donatian's at the early Mass, reading psalms and giving alms to the poor from a pile of pennies, the traitors run him through with swords. Turning his face and hands to heaven, he gives up his spirit, and his body lies alone and unhonored.

Anno milleno centeno vicesimo septimo, sexto nonas
in-the-year thousandth hundredth twentieth seventh on-the-sixth nones
martii, secundo die scilicet post introitum mensis ejusdem,
of-March on-the-second day namely after the-entry of-month the-same
preteritis duobus diebus de secunda hebdomade quadragesimae,
past two days of the-second week of-Lent
feria quarta subsequenter lucescente, concurrente quinto,
on-the-day fourth following dawning the-concurrent fifth
epacta sexta, circa mane, dum pius comes Brugis in
the-epact sixth about morning while the-pious count at-Bruges in
ecclesia beati Donatiani, Remorum quondam archipresulis, in
the-church of-blessed Donatian of-Reims once archbishop in
oratione decumberet ut matutinalem missam audiret, ex
prayer lay-prostrate that the-morning mass he-might-hear from
pia consuetudine elemosinarum suarum largitiones pauperibus
pious custom of-alms his the-bestowals to-the-poor
erogabat, fixis oculis ad legendos psalmos et manu
he-was-giving-out with-fixed eyes to reading psalms and with-hand
dextra porrecta ad largitiones elemosinarum; plures enim
right stretched-out to the-bestowals of-alms many for
denarios capellanus suus, qui hoc procurabat officium, comiti
pennies chaplain his who this managed office to-the-count
apposuerat, quos in orationis actione pauperibus distribuebat.
had-set-beside which in of-prayer the-act to-the-poor he-was-distributing

Primae horae quoque obsequium finitum erat, et de tertia
of-the-first hour also the-service finished was and of the-third
hora responsum finitum, quando Pater noster oratum
hour the-response finished when the-Father our prayed
est, quando comes more suo officiose et aperte legendo
was when the-count in-his manner dutifully and openly by-reading
orabat, tunc tandem post tot consilia et juramenta et
was-praying then at-last after so-many counsels and oaths and
securitates inter se factas, primum in corde homicidae
assurances among themselves made first in the-heart the-homicides
et traditores pessimi comitem devote orantem et elemosinas
and traitors most-wicked the-count devoutly praying and alms
dantem, divinae majestati suppliciter prostratum, gladiis
giving to-the-divine majesty suppliantly prostrate with-swords
confossum et saepius transverberatum, mortuum dimisere;
pierced and many-times run-through dead left
sic sui sanguinis rivulis a peccatis abluto, et in
thus of-his-own blood by-streams from sins washed and in
operibus bonis vitae cursu terminato martirum palma
works good of-life the-course ended of-the-martyrs with-the-palm
Deus comitem donavit. In supremo ergo articulo vitae et
God the-count endowed in the-last therefore moment of-life and
mortis accessu vultum dignissime atque regales ad coelum
of-death at-the-approach face most-worthily and royal to heaven
manus inter tot verbera, et ictus gladiatorum, quantum
hands amid so-many blows and strokes of-the-swordsmen as-much-as
potuit, converterat, sicque suum Domino universorum spiritum
he-could he-had-turned and-thus his to-the-Lord of-all spirit
tradidit, et se ipsum Deo obtulit sacrificium matutinum.
he-handed-over and him himself to-God offered as-a-sacrifice of-morning
Jacebat quidem corpus cruentum tanti viri et principis
lay indeed the-body bloody of-so-great a-man and prince

solum, sine veneratione suorum et debita reverentia
alone without the-veneration of-his-people and the-due reverence
servorum. Unde quicumque eventum ejus mortis audierunt,
of-his-serfs whence whoever the-outcome of-his death heard
miserandum funus lacrimis executi, tantum principem illo
the-pitiable funeral with-tears following so-great a-prince by-that
martirum fine finitum Deo commendaverunt defletum.
of-the-martyrs end ended to-God commended lamented

16 · THE OTHER VICTIMS

The traitors kill the castellan of Bourbourg, who confesses before dying, and pursue the count's court through the castle. His sons Walter and Gilbert are cut down as they flee, and Richard of Woumen outruns his pursuers. Many flee, and the sergeant John rides to Ypres, where the merchants at the fair scatter with the news, carrying Flanders' infamy everywhere.

Occiderunt quoque castellanum ex Brudburch, prius ad
they-killed also the-castellan of Bourbourg first to
mortem vulneratum, postea per pedes a solario, in quod
death wounded afterward by the-feet from the-gallery into which
conscenderat comes et ipse, viliter detractum in januas
had-gone-up the-count and he basely dragged-down into the-doors
ecclesiae, foras gladiis dismembrabant. Hic tamen castellanus
of-the-church outside with-swords they-were-dismembering this yet castellan
confessionem peccatorum suorum presbiteris ecclesiae ipsius
confession of-sins his to-the-priests of-the-church itself
confessus, corpori et sanguini Christi communicatus est
having-confessed with-the-body and blood of-Christ communicated was
more christiano. Nam statim occiso comite gladiatores illi,
in-manner christian for at-once slain the-count swordsmen those

relicta comitis gleba et ad mortem castellano isto relicto in
left of-the-count the-clod and to death castellan that left in
solario, excursum fecerunt in hostes illos, qui erant presentes
the-gallery a-sally made against enemies those who were present
de curia comitis, ut eos vagantes in castro interficerent,
from the-court of-the-count that them wandering in the-castle they-might-kill
sicut vellent. Henricum militem quendam, quem suspectum
as they-might-wish Henry knight a-certain whom suspected
habebat Borsiardus de morte fratris sui nomine Roberti,
held Borsiard of the-death of-brother his by-name Robert
fugabant in domum comitis. Qui prostratus est pedibus
they-put-to-flight into the-house of-the-count who prostrate was at-the-feet
castellani Haket, qui et ipse in eandem domum cum suis
of-the-castellan Haket who also himself into the-same house with his-own
conscenderat ad eam obtinendam, suscepitque Henricum et
had-gone-up for it to-be-held and-be-received Henry and
simul cum eo fratrem Walteri ex Locris, et ab invadentibus
together with him the-brother of-Walter of Loker and from those-attacking
illos vitae conservavit. Ipso momento proditi sunt iisdem
them in-life kept at-the-very moment betrayed were to-the-same
gladiatoribus duo filii castellani ex Brudburch, interim in
swordsmen two sons of-the-castellan of Bourbourg meanwhile in
solario ecclesiae peccata sua sacerdotibus confitentes, quorum
the-gallery of-the-church sins their to-the-priests confessing of-which
scilicet filiorum militia bene apud omnes et simul eorum
namely of-sons the-knighthood well among all and together their
conversatio commendabatur. Walterus et Giselbertus dicti
conduct was-commended Walter and Gilbert called
sunt, fratres genere, militia pares, elegantioris formae
were brothers in-lineage in-knighthood equal of-more-elegant form
nobilitate, digni ut ab omnibus amarentur qui eos
in-nobility worthy that by all they-should-be-loved who them

agnovissent. Qui mox, audita cede in comitem et
had-known who soon heard the-slaughter upon the-count and
patrem, suffugere satagebant; sed illos apud Harenas in exitu
father to-escape were-busy but them at the-Sands at the-exit
suburbii persequebantur equo excurrentes post illos traditores
of-the-suburb were-pursuing on-horse running-out after them traitors
pessimi. Quorum alterum fratrem, Eric nomine nefarius
most-wicked of-whom the-one brother Eric by-name a-wicked
miles, unus quidem illorum qui comitem tradiderant, ab
knight one indeed of-those who the-count had-betrayed from
equo quo insidens fugeret dejecit, et dejectum simul
the-horse on-which sitting he-was-fleeing threw-down and thrown-down together
cum persecutoribus interfecit. Alterum quoque fratrem in
with the-pursuers killed the-other also brother in
ostio hospitii sui in fugam prosilientem, ex opposito ei
the-doorway of-lodging his into flight leaping-forth from opposite him
occursitantes gladiis trajecerunt. Quem unus civium nostrorum
running-at with-swords they-pierced whom one of-citizens our
nomine Lambertus Benkin cadentem securi sua quasi lignum
by-name Lambert Benkin falling with-axe his as-if wood
aliquod detruncavit; sicque illos fratres occisos beatitudini
some cut-down and-thus those brothers slain to-the-blessedness
sanctae, quae in supercoelesti vita est, transmiserunt. Ceterum
holy which in the-supercelestial life is they-sent-over moreover
Riquardum ex Woldman, illius oppidi virum potentem, cujus
Richard of Woumen of-that town a-man powerful whose
filiam nepos duxerat Thancmari, contra quem lites et
daughter the-nephew had-married of-Thancmar against whom strifes and
seditiones hactenus prepositus et nepotes ejus exercitaverant,
seditions hitherto the-provost and nephews his had-exercised
per leugam unam persequebantur fugientem, qui cum suis
for a-league one they-were-pursuing fleeing who with his

militibus ad comitis curiam ascenderat, sicut plures principum
knights to of-the-count the-court had-gone-up as many of-the-princes
qui eodem die sese preparabant ad curiam ituros. In qua
who on-the-same day themselves were-preparing to the-court about-to-go in which
persecutione frustrati proditores, redierunt usque in castrum,
pursuit balked the-traitors returned right-up into the-castle
in quod clerus et populus loci nostri confluxerant, et
into which the-clergy and people of-place our had-flowed-together and
attoniti quidem pro eventu rerum vagabantur. Qui vero
astonished indeed at the-outcome of-things were-wandering who but
in comitis amicitia prius, scilicet dum viveret, constiterant,
in of-the-count friendship before namely while he-lived had-stood
timebant procul dubio, et ad horam latitantes et ab aspectu
feared without doubt and for the-hour lying-hidden also from the-sight
illorum traditorum declinabant; qui vero de curia comitis
of-those traitors turned-aside who but of the-court of-the-count
ab amicitia ejus pendebant, in fugam celeriter conversi,
on friendship his depended into flight quickly turned
interim, dum tumultuabat populus, fugerunt. Gervasius
meanwhile while was-in-tumult the-people fled Gervase
camerarius comitis, quem priorem ad vindicandum domini sui
chamberlain of-the-count whom first for avenging of-lord his
mortem dextera Dei armavit, interim versus Flandrenses
the-death the-right-hand of-God armed meanwhile toward the-Flemings
cognatos suos equo aufugit. Joannes quidam serviens comitis,
kinsmen his on-horse escaped John a-certain sergeant of-the-count
qui cameram observare consueverat, et quem prae servis
who the-chamber to-watch had-been-wont and whom before the-serfs
dilexerat comes, fugit a mane equo currendo per devia
had-loved the-count fled from morning by-horse running through byways
usque in meridiem, et eo tempore meridiei pervenit in
right-up into noon and at-that time of-noon he-arrived at

Ipram, divulgans ibidem mortem comitis et suorum. Quo
Ypres spreading there the-death of-the-count and of-his-men at-which
tempore negotiatores omnium circa Flandriam regnorum ad
time the-merchants of-all around Flanders realms to
Ipram confluxerant in cathedra sancti Petri, ubi forum et
Ypres had-flowed-together on the-Chair of-saint Peter where market and
nundinae universales feriebantur, qui sub pace et tutela
fairs general were-being-held who under the-peace and protection
piissimi comitis securi negotiabantur. Eodem tempore
of-the-most-pious count secure were-trading at-the-same time
ex Longobardorum regno mercatores descenderant ad idem
from of-the-Lombards realm merchants had-come-down to the-same
forum, apud quos comes argenteam kannam emerat marcis
market from whom the-count a-silver flagon had-bought for-marks
viginti una, quae miro opere fabricata, suis spectatoribus
twenty one which by-wondrous work made from-its beholders
potum, quem in se continebat, furabatur. In cujus fori
the-drink which in itself it-contained stole in of-which market
confluxu cum fama universos de diversis locis percelleret,
the-concourse when the-report all from different places struck
accinctis rebus suis et die et nocte fugerunt, secum
girded things their both by-day and by-night they-fled with-themselves
infamiam nostrae terrae ferentes et ubicumque divulgantes.
the-infamy of-our land carrying and everywhere spreading

17 · WALTER OF LOKER IS KILLED

No one in the castle dares weep openly for the count. The traitors finish off the castellan of Bourbourg at the church door and hunt Walter of Loker, hidden in the organ loft. Panicking, he leaps down into the choir and is seized by Borsiard, who at the clerics' plea drags him out of the church to be killed, and their serfs club and stone him to death.

Planxit ergo illum consulem pacis et honoris omnis
lamented therefore that consul of-peace and of-honor every
homo, quicumque vel famam ejus audierat. Sed in castro
man whoever even the-fame his had-heard but in castle
nostro, in quo occisus jacebat dominus noster et pater
our in which slain lay lord our and father
piissimus Karolus, nullus audebat aperte deflere eventum
most-pious Charles no-one dared openly to-weep the-outcome
mortis ejus, quasi ignotum suum inspicientes dominum,
of-death his as-if unknown their seeing lord
et quasi peregrinum suum videntes patrem, dolores et
and as-if a-stranger their seeing father the-griefs and
suspiria sine lacrimis reprimebant. Quos tamen dolores tanto
sighs without tears they-held-back which yet griefs so-much
gravius intus tolerabant, quanto sibi per lacrimas et
more-heavily within they-bore as to-themselves by tears and
ejulatus mederi non audebant. Nam nepotes prepositi et ille
wailings to-heal not they-dared for the-nephews of-the-provost and that
sceleratissimus hominum Borsiardus, cum complicibus suis,
most-criminal of-men Borsiard with accomplices his
statim post fugam inimicorum suorum in castrum reversus,
at-once after the-flight of-enemies their into the-castle returned
Walterum ex Locris requirebant sui milites et ipse, quem
Walter of Loker were-seeking his knights and he-himself whom

maxime oderant; nam de consilio comitis fuit et nocivus
most they-hated for of the-counsel of-the-count he-was and harmful
eis in omnibus, qui instigaverat ad hoc comitem, ut
to-them in all-things who had-urged to this the-count that
in servos sibi subjugaret totam illam cognationem
into serfs to-himself he-should-subjugate the-whole that kindred
prepositi. At idem Walterus quoque prae mortis angustia,
of-the-provost but the-same Walter also for of-death the-anguish
se in organistro, scilicet in domicilio quodam organorum
himself in the-organ-loft namely in the-housing a-certain of-the-organs
ecclesiae in eodem solario, quo occisus jacebat consul,
of-the-church in the-same gallery where slain lay the-consul
occultaverat ab eo tempore quo interficiebatur comes
had-hidden from that time in-which was-being-killed the-count
usque ad reversionem nefandorum illorum in castrum, scilicet
right-up to the-return of-wicked those into the-castle namely
quando post fugatos hostes suos circa meridiem redierunt.
when after routed enemies their about noon they-returned
Irruerunt igitur per januas intra templum et discursitantes
they-rushed therefore through the-doors within the-temple and running-about
nudis gladiis et adhuc fluentibus, clamore maximo et
with-naked swords and still flowing with-shouting the-greatest and
armorum fragore circa scrinia et subsellia fratrum ecclesiae
of-arms the-crash around the-shrines and benches of-the-brothers of-the-church
requirebant, Walterum ex nomine vociferantes, et invenerunt
they-sought Walter by name crying-out and they-found
castellanum ex Brudburch, quem in solario vulneraverant
the-castellan of Bourbourg whom in the-gallery they-had-wounded
ad mortem, adhuc spirantem. Hunc per pedes abstractum
to death still breathing him by the-feet dragged-off
tunc tandem in januis ecclesiae occiderunt; cujus annulum
then at-last in the-doors of-the-church they-killed whose ring

abbatissa ex Auriniaco ab eo in solario, dum spiraret,
the-abbess of Origny from him in the-gallery while he-breathed
eo dante, susceperat, quatenus deferret uxori suae in
him giving had-received that she-might-bring to-wife his in
signum suae mortis, et in signum omnium eorum quae
sign of-his death and in sign of-all those-things which
per abbatissam demandasset uxori et liberis, quorum
through the-abbess he-had-charged to-wife and children whose
mortem ipse nisi post mortem suam ignorabat. Interea per
death he except after death his knew-not meanwhile through
loca et intra et extra ecclesiam requirebatur Walterus ex
places both within and outside the-church was-sought Walter of
Locris; unus vero ex custodibus templi occultaverat illum,
Loker one but of the-keepers of-the-temple had-hidden him
cui et ipse pallium dimiserat. Sed de loco in quo
to-whom also he-himself the-cloak had-left but from the-place in which
latuit dum strepitum armorum audiret et se ex nomine
he-lay-hid while the-din of-arms he-heard and himself by name
vociferatum, angustia mortis confusus, putans in ecclesia
cried-out by-the-anguish of-death confused thinking in the-church
melius salvari, excurrit, et deorsum ab alta testudine
better to-be-saved ran-out and downward from the-high vault
scholarum saltans, inter medios inimicos fugit usque infra
of-the-schools leaping among the-midst-of enemies fled right-up within
chorum templi, magno et miserando clamore interpellans
the-choir of-the-temple with-great and pitiable outcry calling-upon
Deum et sanctos. Quem ad manus persecuti sunt ille miser
God and the-saints whom to hand pursued have that wretched
Borsiardus et Isaac, servus et camerarius simul et homo
Borsiard and Isaac serf and chamberlain together and vassal
comitis Karoli, furentes in sacro loco, extractis gladiis
of-count Charles raging in the-sacred place with-drawn swords

et horribiliter cruentatis. Erant quippe valde furibundi et
and horribly bloodied were indeed very furious and
ferocissimi vultus, grandes in statura et torvi, et tales
most-fierce of-face great in stature and grim and such-as
quos sine terrore aspicere nemo poterat. Borsiardus igitur
whom without terror to-look-at no-one could Borsiard therefore
crine capitis arreptum et vibrato gladio se extenderat
by-the-hair of-the-head seized and brandished sword himself had-stretched
ad percutiendum, et nullo intervallo differre hoc voluit,
for striking and by-no interval to-put-off this he-wished
eo quod tam optatum hostem in manus teneret. Tamen
by-this that so desired an-enemy in hands he-held yet
clericorum interventu distulit ejus mortem, donec, sicut
of-the-clerics at-the-intervention he-put-off his death until as
ipsum arripuerat, educeret ab ecclesia. At ille captivus et
him he-had-seized he-should-lead-out from the-church but he captive and
mortis securus ibat clamitans: Miserere mei Deus. Cui illi
of-death sure went crying-out have-mercy on-me God to-whom they
responderunt: «Talem tibi rependere debemus misericordiam,
answered such to-you to-repay we-ought mercy
qualem erga nos promeruisti.» Et a se propulso cum
as toward us you-have-deserved and from themselves thrust when
in curte castri eduxissent, illum servis suis interficiendum
into the-court of-the-castle they-had-led-out him to-serfs their to-be-killed
projecerunt. At servi quam citissime morti tradiderunt
they-threw but the-serfs as most-quickly to-death handed-over
gladiis et fustibus et clavis et lapidibus obrutum.
with-swords and cudgels and clubs and with-stones overwhelmed

Searching the sanctuary, the traitors' serfs find the count's men hiding, among them the chamberlain Arnold and Fromold the younger, the count's favorite notary, under bundles of palms. Isaac swears no gold could ransom Fromold. Fromold confesses and sends his ring to his daughter, while Isaac and Borsiard weigh keeping him alive to extort the count's treasure.

Iterum recurrentes in sanctuarium, circa altare requirebant
again running-back into the-sanctuary around the-altar they-sought
si quis latitaret quem interficiendum prejudicassent, et
if anyone lay-hidden whom to-be-killed they-had-prejudged and
servientes intro miserunt qui requirerent illud. Erant in
sergeants within they-sent who should-search it there-were in
priore sanctuario latitantes juxta altare Balduinus capellanus
the-first sanctuary lying-hidden beside the-altar Baldwin chaplain
et sacerdos, et Godebertus comitis clericus, qui solo
and priest and Godbert of-the-count clerk who by-sole
timore angustiati, sic permanserunt considentes ad altare. In
fear distressed thus remained sitting-together at the-altar in
secundo vero sanctuario subterfugerant Odgerus clericus et
the-second but sanctuary had-taken-refuge Odger clerk and
Fromoldus junior, notarius et ceteris de curia familiarior
Fromold the-younger notary and than-the-rest of the-court more-intimate
comiti Karolo, et idcirco magis suspectus erat preposito
with-count Charles and therefore more suspected he-was by-the-provost
et suis nepotibus, simulque cum illis Arnoldus camerarius
and his nephews and-together with them Arnold chamberlain
comitis latuit. Nam Odgerus et Arnoldus sub tapete
of-the-count lay-hid for Odger and Arnold under tapestry
uno sese cooperuerant, et Fromoldus subtus palmarum
one themselves had-covered and Fromold beneath of-palms

manipulos latibulum sibi composuerat, atque sic mortem
bundles a-biding-place for-himself had-made and thus death
expectabant. Tunc servi qui intromissi erant perquirentes et
they-awaited then the-serfs who sent-in were searching and
revolventes omnes cortinas, pallia, libros, tapeta et palmas,
turning-over all curtains cloths books tapestries and palms
quas in ramis palmarum annuatim fratres detulerant,
which on the-branches of-palms yearly the-brothers had-brought
invenerunt primo Odgerum et Arnoldum. Fratrem quoque
they-found first Odger and Arnold the-brother also
Walteri ex Locris Eustachium clericum invenerant prius
of-Walter of Loker Eustace the-clerk they-had-found before
cum Balduino et Godeberto sedentem, ignorantes quis esset.
with Baldwin and Godbert sitting not-knowing who he-was
Perquirentibus servis illis spoponderant qui inventi erant,
to-the-searching serfs those had-promised who found were
pecuniam se daturos postea, si per eos celarentur.
money themselves to-be-about-to-give afterward if by them they-were-concealed
Cumque tandem redissent in chorum ad Borsiardum et
and-when at-last they-had-returned into the-choir to Borsiard and
Isaac et ceteros hi qui intromissi erant, adjuraverunt illos,
Isaac and the-rest these who sent-in were they-adjured them
ut accusarent, si quos reperissent, et facta revelatione,
that they-should-accuse if any they-had-found and made the-disclosure
commotus est Isaac vehementissime in Fromoldum juniorem
stirred was Isaac most-vehemently against Fromold the-younger
furore repentino et gravi, ita ut juraret Deum et sanctos,
with-fury sudden and heavy so that he-swore by-God and the-saints
vitam ejus non posse redimi auro tantae quantitatis
life his not to-be-able to-be-ransomed with-gold of-so-great quantity
quantae ipsum templum fuisset. Omnium quoque furorem
as the-very temple might-have-been of-all also the-fury

in Fromoldum illum convertit, clamando neminem magis
upon Fromold that he-turned by-crying no-one more
preposito et nepotibus suis apud comitem detraxisse.
against-the-provost and nephews his before the-count to-have-detracted
Tunc discussis foribus, irruperat statim Isaac, et arripuit
then shaken the-doors had-burst-in at-once Isaac and seized
Fromoldum cominus et educere disposuit. Quem cum
Fromold hand-to-hand and to-lead-out arranged whom when
vidisset, non credebat se ab Isaac capi, sed per illum
he-had-seen not he-believed himself by Isaac to-be-taken but through him
a morte redimi, et ait: «Amice mi Isaac, te obsecro
from death to-be-ransomed and says friend my Isaac you I-beseech
per eandem quae hactenus fuit inter nos amicitiam, observa
by the-same which hitherto was between us friendship keep
vitam meam, et liberis meis, scilicet tuis nepotibus, per
life my and for-children my namely your nephews through
me conservatum consule, ne forte, me occiso, ipsi fiant sine
me preserved take-thought lest perhaps me killed they become without
tutore.» At ille respondit: «Illam habiturus es veniam quam
a-guardian but he answered that about-to-have you-are pardon which
detrahendo apud comitem nobis promeruisti.» Interim quidam
by-detracting before the-count from-us you-have-deserved meanwhile a-certain
sacerdotum seorsum venit ad Fromoldum, consulens ei, ut
of-the-priests apart came to Fromold counseling him that
confessione peccatorum suorum Deo et sibi profiteretur.
in-confession of-sins his to-God and to-him he-should-declare
Quod cum fecisset, extraxit annulum aureum a digito suo
which when he-had-done he-drew-off the-ring golden from finger his
vitae desperans, et per sacerdotem mandavit eum filiae
of-life despairing and through the-priest he-sent it to-daughter
suae. Interim consiliabatur Isaac cum Borsiardo, quid melius
his meanwhile took-counsel Isaac with Borsiard what better

faceret, utrum ibidem occideret an vitae adhuc reservaret,
he-should-do whether there he-should-kill or for-life still he-should-keep
donec extorquerent ab eo omnem comitis thesaurum, simul
until they-should-wring from him all of-the-count the-treasure together
et ab Arnoldo camerario quem presentem captivaverant.
and from Arnold the-chamberlain whom present they-had-captured

19 · THE PROVOST TAKES THE CAPTIVES

At the plea of Fromold's uncle and the canons the provost comes, slowly, and takes the captives into his custody, rebuking Fromold for slandering him and for hoping to be provost. Shut in, the captives can at least weep for the count, a father more than a lord, though no friend dares come to comfort them.

Interea canonici loci illius cucurrerunt ad avunculum illius
meanwhile the-canons of-place that ran to the-uncle of-that
Fromoldi junioris, consulentes ei, ut prepositum conveniret
Fromold the-younger counseling him that the-provost he-should-approach
pro vita nepotis sui, quem infra mortis actionem positum
for the-life of-nephew his whom within of-death the-doing placed
viderant, cujus mortem Isaac adjurasset. Tunc ille senior
they-had-seen whose death Isaac had-sworn then that elder
properando ad prepositum, in domum ipsius conscendit
hastening to the-provost into house his went-up
cum fratribus ecclesiae, provolutus pedibus ejus, rogans et
with the-brothers of-the-church thrown at-the-feet his asking and
obsecrans, ut nepotis sui vitam defensaret. At ille tandem
beseeching that of-nephew his the-life he-would-defend but he at-last
misit nuntium qui interdiceret nepotibus suis, ne Fromoldum
sent a-messenger who should-forbid to-nephews his lest Fromold
juniorem laederent. At illi, audito nuntio, remandaverunt
the-younger they-should-harm but they heard the-messenger sent-back

hoc non posse fieri, etsi ipse presens adesset. Quo
this not to-be-able to-be-done even-if he-himself present were-there which
relatu audito, iterum senior ille procidit ad genua prepositi,
report heard again elder that fell-down at the-knees of-the-provost
expostulando ut ipsemet descenderet ad salvandum illum; et
demanding that he-himself should-come-down for saving him and
ibat quidem non celeri gressu, sed nimis tardo, utpote ille
he-went indeed not with-quick step but too slow as-being he
qui parum de illo curaret, quem valde suspectum habebat.
who little about him cared whom very suspected he-held
Tandem pervenit in sanctuarium, in quo nihil sanctum,
at-last he-arrived in the-sanctuary in which nothing holy
sed omnia perversa agebantur. Rogatu ergo clericorum
but all-things perverse were-being-done at-the-request therefore of-the-clerics
in suum ducatum suscepit omnes ibidem captos, sub hac
into his conduct he-took all there captured under this
conditione tamen, ut quando Isaac et nepotes ejus requirerent
condition yet that when Isaac and nephews his should-require
commendatos sibi, ipse prepositus redderet captivos illos.
those-entrusted to-himself he the-provost would-return captives those
Reversus est ergo prepositus, et in suum ducatum
returned was therefore the-provost and into his conduct
commendatos in cameram domus suae induxit, observavitque
those-entrusted into the-chamber of-house his he-led and-kept
illos cautissime, aitque Fromoldo, quem captum abduxerat:
them most-carefully and-says to-Fromold whom captured he-had-led-off
«Ah! scias, Fromolde, te in proxima pascha preposituram
ah know Fromold you at the-next Easter provostship
meam non possessurum, sicut sperabas; neque hoc apud
my not about-to-possess as you-were-hoping nor this from
te promerueram, ut sic detraheres mihi.» Et ille se
you had-I-deserved that thus you-should-detract from-me and he himself

innocenter egisse jurabat. Verum tamen fuit, quod nullus
innocently to-have-acted swore true nevertheless it-was that no-one
de curia comiti ita familiaris esset, cum viveret, neque
of the-court to-the-count so intimate was when he-lived nor
ita carus sicut prefatus Fromoldus. Nam domum regali
so dear as the-aforesaid Fromold for the-house with-royal
aedificio funditus post combustionem sui reaedificavit meliori
building utterly after the-burning of-it he-rebuilt with-better
et decentiori compositione, quam unquam constitisset prius;
and more-seemly construction than ever it-had-stood before
comparatione quoque illius, nulla aestimabatur in mundo
in-comparison also with-that none was-reckoned in the-world
melior vel utilior. Igitur cum intus clausi et obserati in
better or more-useful therefore when within shut and barred in
captivitatem custodirentur, habuerunt saltem locum et tempus
captivity they-were-guarded they-had at-least place and time
deflendi consulem pium, non dominum, sed patrem, et
of-weeping-for the-consul pious not a-lord but a-father and
in familiaritate sibi ipsis parem, misericordem, humilem,
in intimacy to-them themselves equal merciful humble
mansuetum, divitibus et pauperibus in regno utilem. Loqui
gentle to-the-rich and to-the-poor in the-realm useful to-speak
ergo ad invicem captivi illi non poterant prae dolore nisi
therefore to each-other captives those not could for grief except
suspiriis et singultibus, quos a profunda tristitia mentis
with-sighs and sobs which from deep sadness of-mind
trahebant. Miserandum facinus, in quo non licuit servis
they-drew pitiable deed in which not it-was-permitted to-the-serfs
cum domino et patre suo mori, sed ad majorem miseriam post
with lord and father their to-die but to greater misery after
ipsum vivere, cum quo egregia et honestissima morte erga
him to-live with whom by-an-excellent and most-honorable death toward

Deum et erga homines a seculo melius transissent,
God and toward men from the-world better they-would-have-passed
quam cum dolore mortis domini sui viverent, et sub alio
than with grief of-the-death of-lord their they-should-live and under another
presidente consule, quod absit, traditores florere viderent.
presiding consul which far-be-it the-traitors to-flourish should-see
Et dum in hoc mentis languore consternarentur, nullus
and while in this of-mind faintness they-were-dismayed none
amicorum audebat vel latenter accedere illis, qui consolationis
of-friends dared even secretly to-approach to-them who of-consolation
verba faceret, imo, si quis accessit, a vita desolabatur.
words might-make nay if anyone approached from life he-was-cut-off

20 · THE PLUNDER BEGINS

The bodies of the castellan and his sons are carried home by boat. The provost protests his innocence. The traitors attack Thancmar's farms at Straten and find them empty, others rob the merchants traveling to Ypres, and William of Ypres, thinking himself count, makes the merchants swear fealty to him. That evening the traitors wring the keys of the count's treasury from Fromold.

Inter haec, cadavera occisorum, scilicet castellani et Walteri
among these-things the-corpses of-the-slain namely of-the-castellan and of-Walter
ex Locris, e castro efferebantur, et simul navibus imposita
of Loker out-of the-castle were-carried-out and together on-ships placed
sunt, castellanus et dilectissimi filii ejus, et devehebantur
were the-castellan and most-beloved sons his and were-carried-off
ad proprias et domus et castra. Prepositus vero in domo
to their-own both houses and castles the-provost but in house
sua cum canonicis suis deambulabat, excusans se verbis,
his with canons his was-walking-about excusing himself with-words

quantum potuit, quia nihil hujus traditionis prenovisset.
as-much-as he-could because nothing of-this betrayal he-had-foreknown
Eodem die excursum fecerunt traditores illi in hostes
on-the-same day a-sally made traitors those against enemies
suos, scilicet contra Thangmarum et suos apud Straten,
their namely against Thancmar and his-people at Straten
et repererunt oppida eorum vacua et curtes desertas. Nam
and they-found towns their empty and farmsteads deserted for
audito scelere quod factum est in morte comitis, timuerunt
heard the-crime which done was in the-death of-the-count they-feared
sibi maxime, eo quod defensorem suum perdidissent,
for-themselves most by-this that defender their they-had-lost
et si forte obsidione angustiati includerentur a traditoribus,
and if perhaps by-siege distressed they-should-be-shut-in by the-traitors
nullus foret ipsis adjutor, cum tandem intellexissent omnes
none would-be for-them a-helper since at-last they-had-understood all
regni pares in tradendo assensum prestitisse. Credebant
of-the-realm the-peers in betraying assent to-have-furnished they-believed
enim multo graviora pericula in futuro et sibi et
for much heavier dangers in the-future both on-themselves and
toti regno imminere, nihil possessiones suas curantes,
on-the-whole realm to-hang-over nothing possessions their caring
sed hoc solum reputantes, si vitam propriam conservarent
but this only reckoning if life own they-might-keep
atque ad tutiora loca fugerent. Tunc traditores illi invadentes
and to safer places might-flee then traitors those invading
tam oppidum quam curtem Thangmari, omnia arma et
as-much the-town as the-farmstead of-Thancmar all arms and
supellectilem intro diripientes, simul cum maxima rapina
furnishing within plundering together with the-greatest plunder
pecudum et vestium rusticorum villae illius, atque sic rapina
of-livestock and of-clothes of-the-peasants of-village that and thus plunder

exercitata per totum diem, in vespera redierunt. Et non
carried-on through the-whole day in the-evening they-returned and not
solummodo isti circa viciniam nostram rapinam fecerunt, sed
only these around neighborhood our plunder made but
plures qui traditionem presciverant, statim precurrentes ad
many who the-betrayal had-foreknown at-once running-ahead to
transitus mercatorum, qui ad forum in Ipra feriatum ibant,
the-crossings of-the-merchants who to the-market at Ypres festal were-going
ipsos simul cum oneribus suis rapuerunt. Audita quoque
them together with loads their seized heard also
mortis traditione, Willelmus ex Ipra obtinere comitatum se
of-the-death the-betrayal William of Ypres to-hold the-countship himself
credidit deinceps, et universos negotiatores, cujuscumque loci
believed henceforth and all the-merchants of-whatever place
fuissent, securitatem et fidelitatem sibi et suis jurare
they-had-been assurance and fealty to-himself and to-his-men to-swear
coegit, quos in foro capere potuisset, alioquin a se
he-forced whom in the-market to-catch he-had-been-able otherwise from himself
recedere non permisit, sed tam diu captivavit, donec omnia
to-depart not he-permitted but so long he-held-captive until all-things
et securitates sibi peregissent; et hoc totum fecit consilio
and assurances to-him they-had-performed and this all he-did by-the-counsel
prepositi et traditorum nepotum ipsius. Jam eodem declivo
of-the-provost and of-the-traitors nephews his now on-the-same sloping
ad vesperam die, ex communi consilio prepositi et nepotum
to evening day by common counsel of-the-provost and of-nephews
ejus et complicum suorum, claves de thesauro comitis a
his and of-accomplices their the-keys of the-treasure of-the-count from
Fromoldo juniore, quem captivum tenebant, requirebant, et
Fromold the-younger whom captive they-held they-demanded and
similiter claves omnes de domo sive de scriniis et cistis,
likewise the-keys all of the-house or of the-chests and coffers

quae in domo erant, violenter extorserunt. Quas quidem
which in the-house were violently they-wrested which indeed
Borsiardus et castellanus Haket et Walterus, filius Lamberti
Borsiard and the-castellan Haket and Walter son of-Lambert
ex Reddenburch, in suam potestatem susceperunt.
of Aardenburg into their power received

21 · THE BODY LIES UNBURIED

The count's body lies alone until Fromold the elder lays it on a bier in the choir with four candles, and women watch over it. The traitors send to Ghent for the abbot to carry it off and fortify the church and tower. The provost's messenger to Bishop Simon of Noyon is captured, Walter of Vladslo takes his four hundred marks and never comes, and Simon, the count's brother-in-law, excommunicates the traitors.

De corpore quidem comitis — animae cujus commendationem
about the-body indeed of-the-count of-the-soul whose the-commendation
sacerdotes eo tempore fecerant, quando et castellanum
the-priests at-that time had-made when also castellan
ejus Christo communicabant, latenter tamen — nihil interim
his with-Christ they-communicated secretly yet nothing meanwhile
actum est, quia corpus ejus adhuc in ipsa occisionis
done was because body his still in the-very of-the-slaying
positione cruentum et solum jacebat. Tractabant ergo
position bloody and alone was-lying were-discussing therefore
fratres ecclesiae sollicite quid inde agerent, et quas
the-brothers of-the-church anxiously what thereupon they-should-do and what
sibi exequias prepararent, cum in eadem ecclesia divinum
for-him rites they-should-prepare since in the-same church the-divine
officium nullus auderet vel latenter agere, in qua tantas
office no-one dared even secretly to-perform in which such

cedes et facinus factum fuisse constabat. Tandem, accepta
slaughters and crime done to-have-been was-evident at-last received
licentia a preposito, ex consensu fratrum, Fromoldus
leave from the-provost with the-consent of-the-brothers Fromold
senior, linteo corpus nobile involutum, in medio chori
the-elder in-a-linen-sheet the-body noble wrapped in the-middle of-the-choir
in feretro positum, debita veneratione composuit, appositisque
on a-bier placed with-due veneration laid-out and-set-beside
cereis quatuor, sicut mos noster est, accurate de cetero
candles four as the-custom our is carefully about the-rest
sollicitabatur. Quod funus mulieres solae circumsedentes
he-was-concerned which funeral women alone sitting-around
pia lamentatione per illum diem et subsecutam noctem
with-pious lamentation through that day and the-following night
vigilanter observabant. Interea traditores illi inierunt consilium
watchfully kept meanwhile traitors those entered counsel
cum preposito et castellano suo, qua astutia corpus comitis
with the-provost and castellan their by-what cunning the-body of-the-count
asportaretur, ne opprobrium ipsis moveret sempiternum,
might-be-carried-off lest disgrace for-them it-should-stir everlasting
corpus, quod in presentia eorum fuisset humatum. Et habito
the-body which in the-presence of-them had-been buried and held
callide consilio, miserunt propter abbatem in Gandavum, qui
cunningly counsel they-sent for the-abbot at Ghent who
comitis corpus a loco nostro auferret et in Gandavum
of-the-count the-body from place our should-take-away and to Ghent
translatum humaret. Et sic clausus est ille dies, plenus doloris
conveyed should-bury and thus closed was that day full of-grief
et miseriarum, in quo materia totius mali et perturbationis
and of-miseries in which the-matter of-all the-evil and disturbance
regnorum circa nos factae et maximae futurae emerserat.
of-the-realms around us done and very-great to-come had-emerged

Nocte vero subsequente jussit prepositus ecclesiam undique
in-the-night but following ordered the-provost the-church on-all-sides
armis et vigiliis premuniri, et solarium et turrim templi,
with-arms and watches to-be-fortified and the-gallery and tower of-the-temple
in quae loca, si forte a civibus insultus fieret, sese
into which places if perhaps by the-citizens an-assault should-be-made themselves
reciperent ipse et sui. Et introierunt illa nocte milites ex
might-withdraw he and his-men and entered that night knights by
precepto prepositi in solarium ecclesiae armati, premunientes
order of-the-provost into the-gallery of-the-church armed fortifying
turrim et exitus ejus continuis vigiliis, timentes impetum
the-tower and exits its with-continual watches fearing an-attack
et incursum civium fore contra se die sequenti
and onrush of-the-citizens to-be against themselves on-the-day following
et deinceps. Dominica post mortem consulis, prepositus
and thereafter on-Sunday after the-death of-the-consul the-provost
transmisit episcopo nostro Simoni Noviomensis sedis salutem.
sent to-bishop our Simon of-Noyon see greeting
Lator ergo litterarum Radulfus monachus Sancti Trudonis
the-bearer therefore of-the-letters Ralph monk of-Saint Trond
erat, in quibus obsecrabat episcopum illum, ut Deo
was in which he-besought bishop this that to-God
reconciliaret ecclesiam in qua comes traditus, eo ignorante,
he-should-reconcile the-church in which the-count betrayed him not-knowing
jaceret; obtulit quoque excusationis suae argumenta, quibus
lay he-offered also of-excuse his the-arguments by-which
canonice innocentiam suam coram universo clero et populo
canonically innocence his before all the-clergy and people
probaret. Igitur lator ille captus et ab jumento jactatus,
he-might-prove therefore the-bearer that captured and from his-beast thrown
non pervenit ad episcopum; quod audiens prepositus, valde
not arrived to the-bishop which hearing the-provost greatly

timuit sibi. Feria quarta et quinta prepositus mandavit
feared for-himself on-the-day fourth and fifth the-provost sent-word
per quendam garcionem Waltero ex Frorerdeslo, ut per
through a-certain boy to-Walter of Vladslo that by
fidem, quam sibi et nepotibus suis dederat adjuratus, in
the-faith which to-him and to-nephews his he-had-given adjured into
auxilium sibi cum potentia sua festinaret, et transmisit
aid to-him with power his he-should-hasten and he-sent
ei quadringentas marcas argenti. At ille, accepta pecunia,
him four-hundred marks of-silver but he received the-money
simulabat se venturum, et nunquam venit, nisi ut ei et
pretended himself about-to-come and never came except that him and
suis nepotibus noceret. Episcopus vero Simon, qui frater
his nephews he-might-harm the-bishop but Simon who brother
erat uxoris comitis Karoli, persequebatur ecclesiam Brudgensis
was of-the-wife of-count Charles pursued the-church of-Bruges
castelli, gladioque anathematis sacrilegos et traditores illos
castle and-with-the-sword of-anathema sacrilegious and traitors those
percussit, et ne quis fidelium in eorum conspirationem
he-struck and lest any of-the-faithful into their conspiracy
et auxilium declinaret prorsus prohibuit, sin vero, sub
and aid should-turn-aside utterly he-forbade if-not but under
anathemate omnes adjutores eorum in malo prefato damnavit.
anathema all helpers their in evil the-aforesaid he-condemned

The abbot of Ghent arrives to take the body, and the provost agrees. The poor raise the alarm, the canons seize the bier, and an elder tells the provost the martyr belongs to Bruges. The bells ring, the citizens surround the bier with drawn swords, and when a lame man is healed beneath it the tumult subsides. The abbot leaves, and the canons hurry to build a tomb where Charles fell.

Quinto nonas martii, feria quinta, abbas ille, pro quo
on-the-fifth nones of-March on-the-day fifth abbot that for whom
transmiserant in Gandavo, tota nocte equitando, summo mane
they-had-sent at Ghent the-whole night riding very early
venit in castrum ad prepositum et nepotes suos, expostulans
came into the-castle to the-provost and nephews his demanding
comitis corpus, sicut ei spoponderant. Exiverat ergo
of-the-count the-body as to-him they-had-promised had-gone-out therefore
prepositus, et convocatis castellano et nepotibus ipsius, qui
the-provost and called-together the-castellan and nephews his who
comitem tradiderant, consilium habebat cum eis, qua astutia
the-count had-betrayed counsel he-held with them by-what cunning
sine tumultu abbas auferret corpus. Statim vero pauperes,
without tumult the-abbot might-take-away the-body at-once but the-poor
qui elemosinas expectabant pro anima comitis distribuendas
who the-alms were-awaiting for the-soul of-the-count to-be-distributed
a preposito — cujus citius consilium intellexerant, eo
by the-provost whose too-quickly counsel they-had-understood by-this
quod, preter pauperes, nullus civium cum eis vellet ire,
that besides the-poor none of-the-citizens with them was-willing to-go
vel eos amplius frequentare — ceperunt diffamare, quod
or them further to-frequent began to-spread-abroad that
idcirco abbas venisset subdole et consilio traditorum, ut
for-this-reason the-abbot had-come craftily and by-the-counsel of-the-traitors that

asportaret funus. Fecerat is quidem parari feretrum,
he-might-carry-off the-funeral had-caused he indeed to-be-prepared a-bier
in quod ponendum erat corpus et equis transferendum.
into which to-be-placed was the-body and by-horses to-be-carried
Interea pauperes insequebantur prepositum quocumque ibat
meanwhile the-poor followed the-provost wherever he-went
clamantes: «Domine, ne fiat unquam, ut patris nostri
crying lord not let-it-be-done ever that of-father our
et tam gloriosi martiris gleba a loco nostro auferatur, quia
and so glorious of-a-martyr the-clod from place our be-taken-away because
si hoc fuerit, locus et aedificia ejus sine miseratione
if this shall-have-been the-place and buildings its without pity
posthac destruentur. Aliquid enim pietatis et miserationis
hereafter shall-be-destroyed something for of-piety and of-pity
habebunt hostes et persecutores, qui supervenient huic
shall-have the-enemies and persecutors who shall-come-upon this
castro, ne prorsus destruant ecclesiam, in qua fuerit
castle lest utterly they-should-destroy the-church in which shall-have-been
corpus beati consulis venerabiliter sepultum.» Et exivit
the-body of-the-blessed consul reverently buried and went-out
rumor maximus inter cives de auferendo corpore.
a-rumor very-great among the-citizens about carrying-off the-body
Festinabat quidem prepositus et abbas ille, antequam rumor
was-hastening indeed the-provost and abbot that before the-rumor
excitaretur in urbe, et fecit feretrum novum et nuperrime
should-be-stirred in the-city and he-made the-bier new and very-lately
factum ad ablationem funeris usque ad ostium ecclesiae
made for the-removal of-the-funeral right-up to the-door of-the-church
afferri. Introierant quidem milites, qui illud feretrum, quod
to-be-brought had-entered indeed knights who that bier which
in medio chori stabat, cum consule sublevarent, et in
in the-middle of-the-choir stood with the-consul should-lift and onto

alterum feretrum, quod ad ostium stabat, transponerent. Tunc
the-other bier which at the-door stood should-transfer then
canonici loci ejus accurrentes, violenter reposuerunt feretrum
the-canons of-place that running-up violently put-back the-bier
chori, dicentes se prius audire a preposito, qua de
of-the-choir saying themselves first to-hear from the-provost what for
causa hoc jussisset. Et exierunt in castrum, ubi stabat
reason this he-had-ordered and they-went-out into the-castle where stood
prepositus et nepotes sui, et simul maxima civium turba cum
the-provost and nephews his and together a-very-great of-citizens crowd with
eis, qui audierant rumorem tollendi corporis, et loquebatur
them who had-heard the-rumor of-taking-away the-body and spoke
unus seniorum coram omni populo: «Domine preposite,
one of-the-elders before all the-people lord provost
si juste volebatis egisse, non sine fratrum consensu
if justly you-wished to-have-acted not without of-the-brothers consent
et consilio dedissetis tam pretiosum martirem, tantum
and counsel you-would-have-given so precious a-martyr so-great
regni rectorem, tantum ecclesiae nostrae thesaurum, quem
of-the-realm ruler so-great of-church our a-treasure whom
nobis divina misericordia et dispensatio concessit martirem.
to-us divine mercy and dispensation granted as-a-martyr
Nulla ergo ratio est, quare debeat a nobis auferri,
no therefore reason is why he-ought from us to-be-taken-away
inter quos maxime et nutritus et conversatus est, et
among whom most both nourished and lived he-has and
inter quos Deo ordinante pro justitia traditus est, imo si
among whom God ordaining for justice betrayed he-was nay if
auferatur, timemus destructionem et loci et ecclesiae;
he-be-taken-away we-fear the-destruction both of-the-place and of-the-church
ipso enim interveniente, parcet Deus nobis et miserebitur
he-himself for interceding shall-spare God us and shall-have-mercy

nostri, ne forte, ablato eo a nobis, sine omni miseratione
on-us lest perhaps taken-away him from us without all pity
Deus vindicet traditionem inter nos factam.» At prepositus
God should-avenge the-betrayal among us done but the-provost
et traditores, in indignationem conversi, jusserant tolli
and traitors into indignation turned had-ordered to-be-taken
corpus. Igitur clamore magno irruerunt fratres ecclesiae ad
the-body therefore with-a-shout great rushed the-brothers of-the-church to
fores templi, vociferantes non se dimissuros corpus
the-doors of-the-temple crying-out not themselves about-to-give-up the-body
piissimi Karoli consulis et martiris quamdiu viverent,
of-the-most-pious Charles consul and martyr as-long-as they-lived
quin potius ibidem morerentur quam permitterent auferri.
but rather there they-would-die than they-would-allow to-be-taken-away
Tunc quidem poteras vidisse clericos armatos tabulis et
then indeed you-could have-seen clerics armed with-boards and
scabellis et candelabris et omnibus utensilibus ecclesiae,
benches and candlesticks and all the-furnishings of-the-church
quibus repugnare poterant. Loco ergo tubae campanas
with-which to-fight-back they-could in-place therefore of-the-trumpet bells
pulsabant, et sic evocaverant omnes cives loci, qui
they-rang and thus had-called-out all the-citizens of-the-place who
cum rem intellexissent, armati accurrentes, extractis gladiis
when the-thing they-had-understood armed running-up with-drawn swords
circuierunt feretrum comitis, parati ad resistendum, si quis
surrounded the-bier of-the-count ready for resisting if anyone
auferre moliretur. Cumque tumultus fieret et intra et
to-take-away should-attempt and-when a-tumult was-made both within and
extra ecclesiam, voluit divina misericordia sedare filios suos
outside the-church willed divine mercy to-calm sons its
ab insania et strepitu armorum. Nam cum subtus feretrum
from madness and the-din of-arms for when beneath the-bier

debiles et claudi jacerent, in ipso tumultu claudus, cui pes
the-feeble and lame were-lying in the-very tumult a-lame-man whose foot
ad nates coheserat, cepit clamare et benedicere Dominum,
to the-buttocks had-stuck began to-cry-out and to-bless the-Lord
qui naturalem eundi motum pro meritis pii comitis
who natural of-going motion for the-merits of-the-pious count
reddiderat sibi in conspectu omnium astantium. Igitur fama
had-restored to-him in the-sight of-all the-bystanders therefore the-fame
illius miraculi sedavit universos. At prepositus et castellanus
of-that miracle calmed all but the-provost and castellan
et traditores illi conscenderant in domum comitis timentes
and traitors those had-gone-up into the-house of-the-count fearing
tumultum, et mandabant civibus, quod contra velle eorum
the-tumult and sent-word to-the-citizens that against will their
nihil agerent de tollendo corpore. Reversus est ergo
nothing they-would-do about taking-away the-body returned was therefore
abbas ille, laetus quod evasisset. Prepositus vero ibat et
abbot that glad that he-had-escaped the-provost but went and
redibat, consulens cum traditoribus et disponens quid acturi
came-back taking-counsel with the-traitors and arranging what about-to-do
essent secundum rei eventum. Et continuo fratres
they-were according-to of-the-matter the-outcome and forthwith the-brothers
ecclesiae requirebant artifices et operarios, qui scirent
of-the-church sought craftsmen and workmen who might-know-how
pro articulo temporisque necessitate speluncam sepeliendi
for the-moment and-of-the-time the-need a-vault for-burying
comitem construere in loco illo, quo martirii palmam
the-count to-build in place that where of-martyrdom the-palm
assumpserat. Et ad hoc faciendum festinabant modis super
he-had-taken and for this to-be-done they-hastened by-means for
hoc exquisitis, ne forte per aliquem dolum surriperetur
this sought-out lest perhaps through some guile should-be-stolen

eis corpus adhuc inhumatum et adhuc magis habile ad
from-them the-body still unburied and still more ready for
tollendum. Clausus est quoque ille dies plenus turbationum
taking-away closed was also that day full of-disturbances
et dolositatis pro auferenda gleba miserandi funeris.
and of-guile for the-carrying-off of-the-clod of-the-pitiable funeral

23 · THE BURIAL

On Friday the canons and the provost hold the funeral Mass at Saint Peter's, where almost no one offers. Back at Saint Donatian's Fromold the elder distributes pennies to the poor, weeping more tears than coins, and the body is carried up to the gallery. The provost weeps at last for the father of Flanders, and Charles is shut in a hasty tomb, his soul, cleansed by martyrdom, rewarded for its merits.

Quarto nonas ejusdem mensis, sexta feria, canonici et
on-the-fourth nones of-the-same month on-the-sixth day the-canons and
prepositus ad explendas de more funeris exequias et
the-provost for fulfilling by custom of-the-funeral the-rites and
sepulcro jam preparato, in ecclesia sancti Petri extra muros
the-tomb already prepared in the-church of-saint Peter outside the-walls
convenerunt, ubi missa fidelium defunctorum pro anima
came-together where the-mass of-the-faithful departed for the-soul
pii comitis est celebrata, ubi admodum pauci preter
of-the-pious count was celebrated where very few besides
canonicos offerebant. Nam de curia nullus obtulit, nisi
the-canons made-offering for of the-court none offered except
Balduinus capellanus, Odgerus junior et Godebertus, clerici
Baldwin the-chaplain Odger the-younger and Godbert clerks
comitis. Redierunt postea et prepositus et fratres in
of-the-count they-returned afterward both the-provost and the-brothers into

ecclesiam beati Donatiani, ubi funus aderat, et intromissis
the-church of-blessed Donatian where the-corpse was-present and let-in
pauperibus in ecclesiam, Fromoldus senior dispersit denarios,
the-poor into the-church Fromold the-elder scattered pennies
per manus tamen prepositi, omnibus qui volebant recipere
by the-hands yet of-the-provost to-all who wished to-receive
egentibus, pro salute animae Karoli pii consulis. Quod
the-needy for the-salvation of-the-soul of-Charles the-pious consul which
quidem non sine lacrimis ille senior Fromoldus fecit, imo
indeed not without tears that elder Fromold did nay
plures impendit pietatis lacrimas quam denarios; quippe
more he-spent of-piety tears than pennies indeed
maximus pauperum erat conventus, qui elemosinas susceperunt.
very-great of-the-poor was the-gathering who the-alms received
Distributione vero elemosinarum consummata, corpus nobile
the-distribution but of-the-alms completed the-body noble
in solario transportatum est, et presens juxta monumentum
into the-gallery carried was and present beside the-tomb
consistens prepositus, deflebat tunc tandem consulem, quem
standing the-provost wept-for then at-last the-consul whom
rationis ductu recognovit patrem fuisse universae
of-reason by-the-guidance he-recognized father to-have-been of-the-whole
regionis Flandriarum, et talem illum planxit qualem quidem
region of-the-Flanders and such him he-lamented as indeed
recognoscere obstinato animo indignabatur; et clausus est
to-recognize with-obstinate mind he-disdained and closed-up he-was
in sepulcro pro necessitate illius temporis constructo, etsi
in a-tomb for the-need of-that time built though
non sicut decebat, tamen consequente opere et artificio infra
not as was-fitting yet by-following work and craft below
positus claudebatur. Nimirum anima ejus, martirii purgata
placed he-was-shut-in surely soul his of-martyrdom purged

penis, suorum meritorum premia possidet penes ipsum
by-the-pains of-his merits the-rewards possesses with him
qui sibi hoc ordine seculo mori dispensavit, et vivere in
who for-him in-this order to-the-world to-die arranged and to-live in
comitatu superno cum ipso Deo ac Domino, cui imperium,
the-company on-high with him God and Lord to-whom rule
laus, honor et gloria per infinita secula seculorum. Amen.
praise honor and glory through endless ages of-ages amen

24 · FROMOLD RELEASED

On Saturday 5 March Fromold the younger is released on condition that within eight days he either makes peace with his captors or leaves the land. Resolved to choose exile rather than friendship with traitors, he dines with his household, gives away his stores, and leaves Bruges with his father-in-law, while the traitors, raiding Thancmar again, are shamefully driven back.

Tertio nonas martii, sabbato, dimissus est Fromoldus junior
on-the-third nones of-March on-Saturday released was Fromold the-younger
a captivitate circa diei illius vesperam; atque hoc factum
from captivity about of-day that the-evening and this done
est maximo labore intercessorum pro eo apud prepositum
was with-the-greatest labor of-the-intercessors for him with the-provost
ejusque nepotes. Dimiserunt tandem sub conditione tali,
and-his nephews they-released(-him) at-last under condition such
quatenus infra octo dies post exitum a captione proximos,
that within eight days after the-going-out from the-capture next
aut eis reconciliaretur nefariis in quorum manus inciderat,
either to-them he-should-be-reconciled the-wicked into whose hands he-had-fallen
aut patriam abjuraturus deinceps exularet. Descendit
or the-fatherland about-to-forswear thereafter he-should-be-exiled went-down

quidem in domum suam cum amicis et familia sua,
indeed into house his with friends and household his
quae super quam dici possit dolore et timore mortis
which beyond what to-be-said could with-grief and with-fear of-death
fatigata erat pro illo et pro se ipsa. Nam postquam captus
wearied was for him and for it itself for after captured
est, servientes ejus nusquam prodire ausi sunt, quin
he-was sergeants his nowhere to-come-forth dared have but-that
se statim persequendos fore crederent, quia de ejus
themselves at-once to-be-pursued would-be they-believed because of his
familia erant. Epulabatur igitur cum amicis suis et familia,
household they-were feasted therefore with friends his and household
reputans pro certo se patriam abjuraturum prius quam
reckoning for certain himself the-fatherland about-to-forswear rather than
in captivitatem traditorum reversurum, qui dominum suum
into the-captivity of-the-traitors about-to-return who lord his
prae ceteris se diligentem, et quem ipse prae se ipso fere
beyond the-others him loving and whom he beyond him himself almost
diligebat, tradiderant. In eorum ergo amicitia antequam se
loved had-betrayed into their therefore friendship before himself
unquam componeret, exilium perpetuum sibi delegisset.
ever he-should-compose exile perpetual for-himself he-would-have-chosen
Gravissimum enim est viro cum inimico concordem esse
most-grievous for is-it for-a-man with an-enemy in-concord to-be
et contra naturam, cum omnis creatura sibi inimica, si
and against nature since every creature to-itself things-hostile if
possit, effugiat. Cum utique cenasset, disposuit domui et
it-can flees when indeed he-had-dined he-disposed for-house and
rebus suis, et licentia a singulis accepta, frumentum, caseos
goods his and leave from each-one received grain cheeses
et carnes servientibus distribuit ad se sustentandos per
and meats to-the-sergeants he-distributed for themselves sustaining for

tempus, in spe habens, quod adhuc omnia quae modo prae
a-time in hope holding that yet all-things which now for
necessitate relinqueret et prae dilectione piisimi consulis,
need he-was-leaving and for love of-the-most-pious consul
dispensante Deo, gaudens et securus possideret. Et abscessit
dispensing God rejoicing and secure he-would-possess and he-departed
cum socero suo extra castrum et extra suburbium, in
with father-in-law his outside the-castle and outside the-suburb in
quo hactenus habitaverant, quem quidem amici ejus et
which hitherto they-had-dwelt whom indeed friends his both
planctu et lacrimis Deo commendatum quantum liceret
with-lament and with-tears to-God commended as-far-as was-permitted
persequebantur. Eadem tempestate illi prefati traditores,
followed at-the-same time those aforesaid traitors
obstinatissimi in omne nefas, excursum agebant in
most-obstinate in all wickedness a-sally made against
hostes Thancmarum et suos, ubi vilissimam repulsam
the-enemies Thancmar and his-people where a-most-vile repulse
passi, cum timore et verecundia in castrum redierunt.
having-suffered with fear and shame into the-castle they-returned

William of Ypres openly promises the provost help and sends more in secret, and makes the merchants at Ypres swear him homage as count. He would have been raised to count had he come at once to Bruges to avenge Charles. The provost excuses himself to the bishops, calls on his allies for help, and orders the citizens to fence the suburb, which they do, using the count's and Fromold's timber, but for another purpose than he intends.

Priore die ante nonas, prima mensis dominica,
on-the-former day before the-nones on-the-first of-the-month Sunday
Godescalc Thaihals ab Ipra internuntius ad prepositum
Godescalc Thaihals from Ypres as-go-between to the-provost
Brugas venit in haec verba: «Dominus meus et intimus
to-Bruges came in these words lord my and close
amicus vester Willelmus ex Ipra salutem et amicitiam atque
friend your William of Ypres greeting and friendship and
in omnibus promptissimum auxilium, quantum in se est,
in all-things most-ready help as-much-as in him is
vobis et vestris aperte demandat.» Cetera vero, quae pudor
to-you and to-yours openly sends the-rest but which a-shame
erat palam referre, postquam omnes ei applausissent,
it-was openly to-report after all to-him had-applauded
introductus in cameram, denudavit preposito et Willelmo ex
brought-in into the-chamber he-laid-bare to-the-provost and to-William of
Wervi et Borsiardo, et eis quos intro ad se asciverant
Wervik and to-Borsiard and to-those whom within to themselves they-had-taken
paucos, unde tota domus laeta deinceps fiduciam obtinebat
few whence the-whole house glad thereafter confidence held
in Willelmo, adeo ut comitem eum vocaret et assumeret.
in William so-much that count him it-called and took-up
In quo mandationis occulto sapientes et qui conjecturas
in which of-the-message secret the-wise and those-who conjectures

componebant, notabant traditionis nota Willelmum, qui
composed marked of-betrayal with-the-mark William who
traditores loci nostri in maturitate sceleris sui salutasset, et
the-traitors of-place our in the-ripeness of-crime their had-greeted and
cum tota potentia sua ipsis auxilium promptissimum fide
with all power his to-them help most-ready by-faith
et scripto et securitate obtulisset. Cum ergo reversus est
and by-writing and by-assurance had-offered when therefore returned was
nuntius, captivati sunt mercatores Flandriae, de quocumque
the-messenger captured were the-merchants of-Flanders from whatever
loco apud forum convenissent in Ipra, et constricti ut
place at the-market they-had-come-together at Ypres and constrained that
in Willelmo fidem, securitatem et hominia facerent, et
to William faith assurance and homages they-should-make and
sic in comitem sibi assumerent. Quod quidem consilio
thus as count for-themselves should-take which indeed by-the-counsel
prepositi et suorum factum erat, sperantes se sic frustra
of-the-provost and of-his-men done was hoping themselves thus in-vain
tradidisse pium comitem Karolum. Et quidem in consulatum
to-have-betrayed the-pious count Charles and indeed to the-consulship
sublimatus fuisset Willelmus eodem tempore, si statim
raised would-have-been William at-the-same time if at-once
Brugas descendisset ad faciendam vindictam domini sui et
to-Bruges he-had-come-down for doing vengeance of-lord his and
nepotis traditi consulis; sed quia non sic erat a Domino
kinsman the-betrayed consul but because not so it-was by the-Lord
dispositum, necesse erat divinam sequi ordinationem tam
arranged needful it-was the-divine to-follow ordaining as-much
principes alios quam populum terrae, et unanimes omnes
the-princes other as the-people of-the-land and of-one-mind all
fieri ad ulciscendam mortem consulis piissimi. Adhuc
to-become for avenging the-death of-the-consul most-pious still

suburbani nostri loci aperte introierunt ad consilia dominorum
the-suburbans of-our place openly went-in to the-counsels of-lords
illorum, prepositi scilicet et castellani et nepotum suorum
those of-the-provost namely and of-the-castellan and of-nephews their
nefandorum, et secreta consiliorum suorum perquirebant,
wicked and the-secrets of-counsels their they-searched-out
ut sic astute rescitis eorundem dolis et machinationibus,
that thus cunningly found-out their wiles and machinations
cautiores in posterum forent. Quo tempore non cessabat
more-wary in the-future they-might-be at-which time not ceased
prepositus et sui consulere et circumvenire quoscumque,
the-provost and his-men to-take-counsel and to-get-round whomever
ut sibi faverent, dando et promittendo plurima; nam
that to-them they-might-favor by-giving and by-promising very-much for
mandavit Willelmo comitatum se donaturum, et ideo
he-sent-word to-William the-countship himself about-to-give and therefore
hominia et securitates exhortatus est illum ab omnibus
homages and assurances urged he-has him from all
accipere Flandrensibus, quos aut vi aut pretio cogere
to-receive the-Flemings whom either by-force or by-price to-force
potuisset. Transmandavit Furnensibus prepositus, qui in ejus
he-could-have sent-word to-the-men-of-Furnes the-provost who in his
amicitia steterant, ut securos et homines sese Willelmo
friendship had-stood that sworn and vassals themselves to-William
constituerent. Mandavit quoque episcopo Noviomensi litteras,
they-should-make he-sent also to-the-bishop of-Noyon letters
quibus excusationem suam obtulit, quod in traditione comitis
in-which excuse his he-offered that in the-betrayal of-the-count
nihil conscius fuisset consilio vel facto, quin et summa
nothing privy he-had-been by-counsel or by-deed but also with-the-highest
dilectione filiis ecclesiae, sibi scilicet et canonicis suis,
love to-the-sons of-the-church to-himself namely and to-canons his

consulendo succurreret, reconciliando ecclesiae loca, et
by-counseling he-should-succor by-reconciling of-the-church the-places and
ad celebranda divina officia sui pontificatus auctoritate et
for celebrating the-divine offices of-his episcopate by-authority and
presentia ipse celeriter adventaret. Sub eodem tenore litteras
with-presence he quickly should-come under the-same tenor letters
direxit episcopo Morinorum Joanni. Apud Kerseca Roberto,
he-directed to-the-bishop of-the-Morini John at Kaaskerke to-Robert
qui neptem ipsius prepositi duxerat, mandavit ut domum
who the-niece of-him the-provost had-married he-sent-word that house
et loca sua firmissime premuniret, donec constituisset
and places his most-firmly he-should-fortify until he-should-have-established
Willelmum Iprensem in comitem. Erat autem ille Robertus
William of-Ypres as count was moreover that Robert
miles liber, antequam uxorem accepisset neptem prepositi, sed
a-knight free before wife he-had-taken the-niece of-the-provost but
postquam annuatim illam tenuisset, secundum legem comitum
after for-a-year her he-had-held according-to the-law of-the-counts
Flandriae, servili conditione ad comitem pertinebat, unde
of-Flanders by-servile condition to the-count he-belonged whence
conflictus inter comitem Karolum pium et prepositum et
the-conflict between count Charles the-pious and the-provost and
suos de servitute et libertate exortus est pernitiosissimus.
his-men about servitude and freedom arisen was most-pernicious
Mandavitque idem pro Flandrensibus illis qui circa mare
and-he-sent the-same for Flemings those who around the-sea
sibi vicini manerent, ut cum sua potentia sibi et nepotibus
to-him near dwelt that with their power to-him and to-nephews
suis in auxilium venirent, si forte in regno et comitatu
his in aid they-should-come if perhaps in the-realm and countship
aliquis ad vindicandum insurgeret. Precepit potenter civibus
anyone for avenging should-rise-up he-ordered powerfully citizens

nostris, ut loca suburbii circumsepirent fossatis et sepibus,
our that the-places of-the-suburb they-should-surround with-ditches and hedges
quatenus contra quoscumque sese defenderent. Consepserant
so-that against whomever themselves they-might-defend had-fenced
tempore eodem suburbium cives quidem, sed prorsus alia
at-time the-same the-suburb the-citizens indeed but utterly another
intentione quam ipsis et consultum et imperatum fuisset,
intention than to-them both counseled and commanded had-been
sicut postmodum fuit manifestum. Igitur sepes et ligna
as afterward it-was manifest therefore the-hedges and timbers
comitis occisi et Fromoldi junioris, qui proscriptione suarum
of-the-count slain and of-Fromold the-younger who by-the-proscription of-his
rerum exilium suum expectabat, extra suburbium, et insuper
goods exile his was-awaiting outside the-suburb and besides
universa quae ad opus sepiendi utilia sibi videbantur,
all-things which for the-work of-fencing useful to-them seemed
castellano duce, diripiebant cives, et fabricabantur ad
the-castellan leading tore-away the-citizens and they-built for
defensionem communem turres et propugnacula et exitus
the-defense common towers and bulwarks and exits
contra hostes. In quo ergo perficiendo omnes festinabant,
against enemies in which therefore to-be-completed all were-hastening
tam clerus quam populus. Itaque nulla fuit requies nocte
as-much the-clergy as the-people and-so no was rest by-night
invigilando et die operando, donec, consummato opere
in-watching and by-day in-working until completed the-work
cirumsepiendi suburbium, custodes ordinarent ad singulas
of-fencing-round the-suburb guards they-should-arrange at each
portas et turres et propugnacula, quatenus nemo exiret
gate and tower and bulwark so-that no-one should-go-out
nisi cognitus, et nemo intromitteretur nisi civis.
unless known and no-one should-be-let-in unless a-citizen

On 7 March Gervase, the count's chamberlain, grieving and angry, rides out with knights and foot soldiers and besieges Raverschoot, a stronghold of the traitors. Its few defenders surrender for their lives, and the fugitives bring the news to the provost, whose pride gives way to fear, while everyone else sees that God has begun the vengeance.

Nonis martii, feria secunda, divinae ultionis gladios
on-the-nones of-March on-the-day second of-divine vengeance the-swords
evaginavit contra inimicos ecclesiae suae Deus, et commovit
unsheathed against the-enemies of-church his God and stirred
cor cujusdam militis Gervasii in exercendam vindictam
the-heart of-a-certain knight Gervase for exercising vengeance
acrius et celerius quam eo tempore aestimabatur, et sic
more-sharply and more-quickly than at-that time was-reckoned and thus
collecta ira sua, cum tota potentiae manu miles ille seviebat
gathered wrath his with the-whole of-power band knight that raged
contra sceleratos illos, qui optimum principem pium et justum
against criminals those who the-best prince pious and just
in servitio Dei ad venerationem sui et sanctorum suorum
in the-service of-God for the-veneration of-him and of-saints his
prostratum humiliter in sacro tempore quadragesimae, et in
prostrate humbly in the-sacred time of-Lent and in
sacro loco, et in sacra oratione dominum suum, pessimi
the-sacred place and in sacred prayer lord their most-wicked
servi tradiderunt morti, inter quos tutum se semper fore
serfs betrayed to-death among whom safe himself always to-be
crediderat. Gervasius igitur, qui familiaris erat et fidelis
he-had-believed Gervase therefore who intimate was and faithful
domino suo piissimo Karolo, utpote qui camerarius ejus
to-lord his most-pious Charles as-being-one who chamberlain his

extiterat, et ad ejus consilia et dispositiones secretorum
had-been and to his counsels and arrangements of-secrets
aperte accesserat, pro morte carissimi sui domini dolens
openly had-come for the-death of-dearest his lord grieving
et iratus, cum peditum exercitu truculento et militum
and angry with of-foot-soldiers an-army savage and of-knights
corona et armorum densitate succinctus, circumvallavit se
a-ring and of-arms with-a-thickness girded surrounded himself
contra hostes Dei, et accurrens obsedit oppidum quod
against the-enemies of-God and running-up besieged the-town which
in defensionem traditorum stabat premunitum valde nomine
for the-defense of-the-traitors stood fortified strongly by-name
Ravenschot, quod quidem et ex loci difficultate et ex
Raverschoot which indeed both from of-the-place the-difficulty and from
ipsa munitione invincibile fuit et inaccessibile, et accepit
the-very fortification invincible was and inaccessible and he-took
predam magnam in pecudibus castri illius et vicinorum.
booty great in livestock of-castle that and of-the-neighbors
Nam eodem tempore securi degebant universi, qui ad illos
for at-that time secure were-living all who to those
sceleratos pertinuissent, credentes neminem in toto mundo
criminals had-belonged believing no-one in the-whole world
vel velle vel posse insurgere contra dominos suos, eo
either to-wish or to-be-able to-rise-up against lords their by-this
quod tantae audaciae facinus illi miseri in dominum
that of-such-great daring a-crime those wretches against lord
suum comitem peregissent. Excecaverat enim illos Deus, ita
their the-count had-carried-out had-blinded for them God so
ut nihil rationis et consilii obtinerent, sed precipitati in
that nothing of-reason and of-counsel they-might-hold but cast-headlong into
omne malum ira et furore debriati, timore et pavore
every evil with-wrath and fury drunk with-fear and dread

errarent, tam illi qui tradiderant comitem, quam omnes
they-wandered as-much those who had-betrayed the-count as all
qui in eorum auxilio manerent. Quandoquidem securos se
who in their aid remained since secure themselves
crediderant, et omnes in regno vel inferiores se
they-had-believed and all in the-realm either inferior to-themselves
vel amicos putabant, non erant precauti de incursione
or friends they-thought not they-were forewarned about the-incursion
aliquorum contra se, et ideo cum Gervasius incursum
of-any against themselves and therefore when Gervase an-incursion
ageret apud Ravenschot, maximam predam exercuit. At illi
made at Raverschoot the-greatest booty he-took but those
qui obsessi fuere ex inopinato incursu intercepti, valde
who besieged were by the-unexpected incursion caught very
attoniti eo maxime quod pauci fuissent, qui contra tot
astonished by-this most that few they-were who against so-many
milia se defensarent, desperantes vitae suae, sese
thousands themselves might-defend despairing of-life their themselves
statim reddiderunt Gervasio, ea conditione, ut sua vita
at-once surrendered to-Gervase on-that condition that their life
et membris salvis abirent. Irruerunt itaque, expulsis
and limbs safe they-might-go-away rushed-in and-so expelled
illis, equites et pedites qui obsederant oppidum, et
those the-horsemen and foot-soldiers who had-besieged the-town and
vastabant quaecumque intro repererant. At illi qui sese
laid-waste whatever within they-had-found but those who themselves
reddiderant in obsidione, homines scilicet traditorum, aufugi
had-surrendered in the-siege the-men namely of-the-traitors having-fled
nocte usque ad nos fugerunt, narrantes eventum rei
by-night right-up to us fled telling the-outcome of-the-matter
preposito et suis, unde deinceps timore timuerunt assidue,
to-the-provost and his-men whence thereafter with-fear they-feared constantly

statum mentis mutantes ab illa superbia et tumiditate,
the-state of-mind changing from that pride and swelling
qua usque ad hoc tempus feroces et sine modo et
with-which right-up to this time fierce and without measure and
sine humilitate praeiverant. Robertus puer, cujus oppidum
without humility they-had-gone-before Robert the-boy whose town
destruendum igne et ferro fuerat in brevi spatio, conabatur
to-be-destroyed with-fire and sword had-been in short space was-trying
cum paucis excurrere contra obsidentes, sed cum tantam
with few to-sally against the-besiegers but when so-great
multitudinem prescivisset, omisit incursum. Quanto
a-multitude he-had-learned-beforehand he-gave-up the-sally with-how-great
ergo timore et dolore laborarent traditores illi, et e
therefore fear and grief labored traitors those and on-the
contra quanto gaudio exultarent preter eosdem omnes alii,
contrary with-how-great joy exulted besides the-same all others
supersedere longum erat, eo quod pari intentione Deum
to-pass-over long it-was by-this that with-equal intent God
ipsum incepisse vindictam omni ex parte intellexissent.
himself to-have-begun vengeance every on side they-had-understood

27 · THE CITIZENS JOIN GERVASE

Raverschoot and Wulfric Cnop's house are burned. The burghers of Bruges, rejoicing in secret, send envoys to Gervase and swear with him to avenge their lord and to let his army into the suburb the next day, an agreement kept from the traitors and from most of the citizens.

Octavo idus martii, feria tertia, Ravenschot oppidum
on-the-eighth ides of-March on-the-day third Raverschoot the-town
conflagratum est et destructum igne et armis, et juxta
burned was and destroyed by-fire and arms and near
Bruggas domus Wlfrici Cnop, fratris prepositi, qui mortem
Bruges the-house of-Wulfric Cnop brother of-the-provost who the-death
comitis juraverat, combusta est. Perinde accessum fecit
of-the-count had-sworn burned was then approach made
Gervasius cum potentia sua versus castrum, in quo sese
Gervase with power his toward the-castle in which themselves
premunierant traditores, circumiens excursus et preveniens
had-fortified the-traitors going-round the-sallies and forestalling
transitus illorum circa suburbium castri. Burgenses igitur
the-crossings of-them around the-suburb of-the-castle the-burghers therefore
nostri, audito quod Deus vindictam tam cito incepisset,
our heard that God vengeance so quickly had-begun
in sola conscientia gaudebant, non quidem ausi aperte
in (their)-sole conscience rejoiced not indeed daring openly
congratulari vindicantibus propter traditores, qui adhuc
to-congratulate the-avengers on-account-of the-traitors who still
securi et potenter inter illos ibant et revertebantur. Seorsim
secure and powerfully among them went and came-back apart
vero gratias Deo referebant, qui misericordiae suae oculis
but thanks to-God they-gave who of-mercy his with-the-eyes

dignabatur revisere fideles suos in loco horroris et
deigned to-look-again-upon faithful his in the-place of-horror and
confusionis, qui et exterminare festinabat homicidas pessimos,
of-confusion who also to-wipe-out hastened the-homicides most-wicked
qui hactenus flagellaverant populum Domini rapina, incendiis,
who hitherto had-scourged the-people of-the-Lord with-plunder with-fires
vulneribus, omnis modi perturbationibus. Summiserunt autem
with-wounds with-every kind-of disturbances sent moreover
secretos internuntios ad Gervasium et suos, componentes de
secret go-betweens to Gervase and his-men agreeing about
fide et amicitia et fidissima securitate in invicem. Insuper
faith and friendship and most-faithful assurance to each-other besides
conjuraverunt vindictam comitis sui, et ut die subsequenti
they-swore the-vengeance of-count their and that on-the-day following
intromitterent exercitum Gervasii ad se infra suburbium,
they-would-let-in the-army of-Gervase to themselves within the-suburb
et reciperent eos sicut fratres intra munitiones suas. Audita
and would-receive them as brothers within fortifications their heard
ergo legatione, Gervasius et sui quam laetiore et
therefore the-embassy Gervase and his-men with-how-much gladder and
justiore animo susceperunt internuntiorum verba, non potero
juster mind they-received of-the-go-betweens the-words not I-shall-be-able
explicare, scientes dispensatum a Deo fuisse quicquid in
to-unfold knowing arranged by God to-have-been whatever in
vindicando agerent. Conjuraverunt equidem Gervasius et sui
avenging they-did swore indeed Gervase and his-men
cum internuntiis civium nostrorum, et compositi sunt sub
with the-go-betweens of-citizens our and bound were under
eodem sacramento fidei et securitatis in vindicando dominum
the-same oath of-faith and of-assurance in avenging lord
suum et aequissimum consulem terrae nostrae. Hoc totum
their and most-equitable consul of-land our this all

latebat traditores illos et plurimos civium nostrorum
lay-hidden-from traitors those and very-many of-citizens our
prorsus, preter paucos sapientiores loci, qui seorsum et
utterly except a-few wiser of-the-place who apart and
nocte composuerunt hujusmodi consilium salubre universis.
by-night composed of-this-kind counsel salutary for-all

28 · GERVASE ENTERS THE SUBURB

On 9 March, after his burning of houses brings the traitors out, Gervase is let in at the Sands. The traitors flee into the castle, and when the citizens learn of the agreement they join the attack. They fight at the castle's three bridges until the besieged break the third and shut the gates.

Septimo idus martii, die quarta, quando octava dies
on-the-seventh ides of-March on-the-day fourth when the-eighth day
illius illuxerat beati consulis, qui ad veram octavam
that had-dawned of-the-blessed consul who to the-true octave
de terris transmigraverat, Gervasius ex condicto a civibus
from the-earth had-passed-over Gervase by agreement by the-citizens
nostris infra suburbium susceptus est apud Harenas versus
our within the-suburb received was at the-Sands toward
occidentem castri, quod illis traditoribus maximus occasus
the-west of-the-castle which for-those traitors the-greatest downfall
erat futurus. Sed ante hoc per domorum incendia terruerat
was about-to-be but before this by of-houses burnings he-had-terrified
eodem die Borsiardum et Robertum puerum et complices
on-the-same day Borsiard and Robert the-boy and accomplices
eorum, qui, visis domorum conflagrationibus, undique
their who seen of-the-houses the-burnings from-all-sides
exiverant a castro, ut prospicerent incensores illos, si
had-gone-out from the-castle that they-might-look-out-for burners those if

forte invadere possent. Namque orientem versus castri
perhaps to-attack they-could for the-east toward of-the-castle
tres domus altiores incensae vibrantibus flammas ventis
three houses higher set-afire brandishing the-flames with-the-winds
ardebant, et ad spectandum cives simul cum Borsiardo
were-burning and for watching the-citizens together with Borsiard
et militibus suis, ignorantes compositionem factam inter
and knights his not-knowing the-agreement made between
burgenses et Gervasium, excursitabant, et eorum pars
the-burghers and Gervase ran-out and of-them the-part
plurima armata manu cum nefariis illis. Isaac quoque qui,
greatest with-armed hand with wicked those Isaac also who
vivente Karolo pio consule, camerarius et de consilio
while-living Charles the-pious consul chamberlain and of the-counsel
et familiaritate comitis extiterat, qui caput traditionis erat,
and intimacy of-the-count had-been who the-head of-the-betrayal was
in excursu cum militibus suis ferebatur equo. Tandem
in the-sally with knights his was-borne on-horse at-last
cum sibi ad invicem adproximassent ex utraque parte
when to-themselves to each-other they-had-drawn-near from either side
milites, traditores videntes se non posse continere
the-knights the-traitors seeing themselves not to-be-able to-hold
contra tantum exercitum, eo quod paucissimi essent,
against so-great an-army by-this that very-few they-were
convertebantur in fugam; at persecutores illorum extentis
were-turned in flight but the-pursuers of-them with-outstretched
cursibus insecuti usque in castrum profugos reddiderunt.
courses following right-up into the-castle the-fugitives returned
Cum tandem in suburbium devenissent, Borsiardus et sui
when at-last into the-suburb they-had-come Borsiard and his-men
ante domum Desiderii fratris Isaac restiterant paulisper,
before the-house of-Desiderius brother of-Isaac had-halted a-little

consilium perquirentes quid jam agerent. Interim Gervasius,
counsel seeking what now they-should-do meanwhile Gervase
violenter persequens illos, venit occidentem versus ad portam
violently pursuing them came west toward to the-gate
suburbii, et ibi, fide data et accepta a civibus, irruit
of-the-suburb and there faith given and received from the-citizens rushed
infra cum validissima manu. Adhuc cives quiete solita
within with a-most-strong band still the-citizens in-quiet usual
in domibus suis substiterant, nam circa vesperam erat, et
in houses their had-stayed for about evening it-was and
consederant cives plurimi ad prandium quibus non erat nota
had-sat-down citizens very-many to dinner to-whom not was known
haec actio. Cum igitur traditores illi consulerent sibi
this action when therefore traitors those were-taking-counsel for-themselves
et de fuga sua starent perturbati, eminus prospiciunt
and about flight their stood disturbed from-afar they-see
irruere persecutores suos per plateas, qui hastis et lanceis,
to-rush-in pursuers their through the-streets who with-spears and lances
sagittis et universis armis impetebant illos. Porro tumultus
arrows and all arms were-attacking them further the-tumult
maximus et armorum fragor et clamorum tonitrua omnes
greatest and of-arms the-crash and of-shouts the-thunders all
conturbaverant cives, qui ad arma ruentes parabant se,
had-confounded the-citizens who to arms rushing prepared themselves
alii ut defenderent locum et suburbium contra Gervasium,
some that they-might-defend the-place and suburb against Gervase
qui prorsus ignoraverant pactum, alii quibus res fuerat
who utterly had-not-known the-pact others to-whom the-matter had-been
nota irruerunt cum Gervasio totis viribus et fugabant illos
known rushed-in with Gervase with-all strength and put-to-flight those
traditores fugientes in castrum. Cumque inter cives res
traitors fleeing into the-castle and-when among the-citizens the-matter

est manifestata de compositione et fide et juramento
was made-plain about the-agreement and faith and oath
Gervasii ad ipsos, tunc primum simul irruerunt per pontem
of-Gervase to them then first together they-rushed over the-bridge
castri super illos qui in parte sceleratorum e castro
of-the-castle upon those who on the-side of-the-criminals from the-castle
ad pugnam resistebant. In alio quodam ponte, qui versus
for fighting were-resisting at another a-certain bridge which toward
domum prepositi dirigebatur, magnus conflictus pugnae fuit,
the-house of-the-provost was-directed great a-clash of-fighting was
in quo cominus pugnabant lanceis et gladiis. In tertio vero
in which hand-to-hand they-fought with-lances and swords at the-third but
ponte, qui in orientali parte jacebat a castro et usque ad
bridge which in the-eastern part lay from the-castle and right-up to
portas castri se extendebat, fortissimus congressus fiebat,
the-gates of-the-castle itself stretched a-most-fierce encounter was-made
adeo ut non tolerantes pugnae acerbitatem illi qui intro
so-much that not bearing of-the-fight the-bitterness those who within
stabant frangerent pontem, et portas super se clauderent.
stood broke the-bridge and the-gates upon themselves they-closed
Ubicumque ergo cives accessum habuerant ad castrenses,
wherever therefore the-citizens access had to the-castle-men
fortissime pugnatum est quoad usque illi non poterant
most-fiercely fought it-was until right-up those not could
sustinere, eo quod intercepti et a civibus traditi essent;
to-hold-out by-this that cut-off and by the-citizens betrayed they-were
vellent nollent quidem, agitati sunt infra castrum miseri
willing unwilling indeed driven they-were within the-castle wretches
illi, quorum magna pars vulnerata est, et simul exanimati
those of-whom great part wounded was and together breathless
metu et dolore atque lassitudine pugnae defatigati.
with-fear and grief and with-weariness of-the-fight worn-out

Isaac flees to his house and breaks down the bridge behind him. Desiderius, Isaac's brother, throws George, one of the murderers, from his horse and cuts off his hands, and when George is found hiding, a knight of Gervase's has him killed and drowned in a sewer. A runner of Haket's is killed, and a serf of Borsiard's found hiding in a woman's surplice is hanged upside down facing the castle. Each night the besieged sally out, hoping the princes will spare them for the count's treasure.

Interim Isaac in principio incursus Gervasii in suburbium
meanwhile Isaac at the-beginning of-the-incursion of-Gervase into the-suburb
fugiens, a loco in quo consiliabantur recepit se in
fleeing from the-place in which they-were-taking-counsel took himself into
domum suam fortem satis. Et cum pontem transisset, qui
house his strong enough and when the-bridge he-had-crossed which
jacebat a suburbio ad domum ipsius, disjecit pontem
lay from the-suburb to the-house of-him he-threw-down the-bridge
et fregit, ne quis persequeretur eum fugientem. Qua
and broke lest anyone should-pursue him fleeing at-which
tempestate interceptus est Georgius miles traditorum maximus,
time cut-off was George knight of-the-traitors greatest
qui et ipse simul cum Borsiardo occiderat comitem; quem
who also himself together with Borsiard had-killed the-count whom
Desiderius miles, frater Isaac traditoris, equo dejecit et
Desiderius knight brother of-Isaac the-traitor from-horse threw-down and
ei utrasque manus truncavit. Hic Desiderius, quamvis
of-him both hands cut-off this Desiderius although
frater traditoris fuisset, non tamen conscius traditionis
brother of-the-traitor he-had-been not yet privy of-the-betrayal
fuerat. Fugerat truncatis manibus in locum ille miserrimus
had-been had-fled with-cut-off hands into a-place that most-wretched
Georgius, in quo se sperabat latere, sed statim accusatus
George in which himself he-hoped to-lie-hidden but at-once accused

cuidam Waltero militi Gervasii extrahitur. Nam sedens in
to-a-certain Walter knight of-Gervase he-is-dragged-out for sitting on
equo miles ille precepit cuidam juveni gladiatori ferocissimo,
horse knight that ordered a-certain young swordsman most-fierce
ut occideret. At ille irruens in Georgium, percussit gladio
that he-should-kill but he rushing upon George struck with-sword
et dejecit eum in terram, deinde per pedes in cloacarium
and threw him to the-ground then by the-feet into the-sewer
projectum submergi ex malo merito suo gladiator ille coegit.
thrown to-be-drowned for evil desert his swordsman that compelled
Interceptus erat etiam ex curte castellani Haket quidam
caught had-been also from the-court of-the-castellan Haket a-certain
nomine Robertus, cursor et serviens ejus, et occisus in
by-name Robert runner and sergeant his and slain in
medio fori in paludes trahebatur. Interceptus est
the-middle of-the-market into the-marshes was-dragged caught was
quoque quidam nefandissimus servorum Borsiardi, Fromoldus
also a-certain most-wicked of-the-serfs of-Borsiard Fromold
nomine, qui fugiens latuerat inter duas culcitras, indutus
by-name who fleeing had-lain-hidden between two mattresses clad-in
superpellicium mulieris quo se dissimularet. At inde
the-surplice of-a-woman with-which himself he-might-disguise but thence
retractus, ductus est in medium fori, et, inspectantibus
drawn-back led he-was into the-middle of-the-market and looking-on
universis, suspensus est, fuste transfixo per suffragines
all hanged he-was with-a-cudgel thrust through the-hams
et crura, capite dejecto deorsum, ita ut verecundiora,
and legs the-head cast down so that the-more-shameful-parts
scilicet culus et nates, adverterentur versus castrum ad
namely the-backside and buttocks were-turned toward the-castle to
dedecus et ignominiam illorum traditorum, qui obsessi stabant
the-disgrace and ignominy of-those traitors who besieged stood

ad lobium comitis et ad propugnacula, inspectantes hoc
at the-gallery of-the-count and at the-bulwarks watching this
fieri sibi ipsis in opprobrium. Non interim cessabant
to-be-done to-them themselves for reproach not meanwhile they-ceased
trahere sagittas ad invicem et jacere lapides et contorquere
to-shoot arrows at each-other and to-throw stones and to-hurl
jacula a muris. Tandem clauso die, noctis tempore metus
javelins from the-walls at-last closed the-day in-the-night time fear
et vigiliae utrobique agebantur, et insidiabantur sibi,
and watches on-both-sides were-kept and they-lay-in-wait for-each-other
si quisquam se furaretur, ut fugeret ab obsessis, vel
if anyone himself should-steal-away to flee from the-besieged or
aliquis latenter per muros illaberetur ad obsessos in eorum
someone secretly over the-walls should-slip-in to the-besieged in their
auxilium. Proinde per omne tempus obsidionis utrobique
aid thereafter through all the-time of-the-siege on-both-sides
vigiliae et insidiae agebantur. Saepissime vero invasionem
watches and ambushes were-kept very-often but an-attack
fecerunt obsessi singulis noctibus obsidentibus fortissimo
made the-besieged on-each nights on-the-besiegers with-a-most-fierce
congressu, et acrius pugnatum est nocte quam die, eo
encounter and more-sharply fought it-was by-night than by-day by-this
quod ob turpe facinus sese in die non auderent
that on-account-of the-shameful crime themselves by day not they-dared
manifestare obsessi, qui quoquo modo celari et evadere
to-show the-besieged who in-some way to-be-hidden and to-escape
posse sperabant, ut, si forte evaderent, nemo de eis
to-be-able hoped that if perhaps they-should-escape no-one of them
crimen traditionis suspicaretur, et ideo in nocte pugnabant
the-crime of-betrayal should-suspect and therefore by night they-fought
tanto acrius, quanto se crediderant per principes
so-much more-sharply as themselves they-had-believed through the-princes

obsidionis, qui eis assensum annuerant, forte postmodum
of-the-siege who to-them assent had-nodded perhaps afterward
exire et a crimine faciliter purgari. At principes non
to-go-out and from the-crime easily to-be-cleared but the-princes not
curabant quid obsessis promitterent, et quota juramenta
cared what to-the-besieged they-promised and how-many oaths
facerent, solummodo ut pecuniam et thesaurum boni
they-made only that the-money and treasure of-the-good
comitis ab eis extorquerent. Et jure quidem sic fecerunt,
count from them they-might-wring and rightly indeed so they-did
accipientes ab obsessis thesaurum comitis et insuper
receiving from the-besieged the-treasure of-the-count and besides
donaria multa, quando quidem nulla fides et juramenta
gifts many since indeed no faith and oaths
nulla illis debebant observari, qui legitimum et naturalem
none to-them were-owed to-be-kept who the-lawful and natural
dominum suum impiissimi servi tradiderant, et nimirum ab
lord their most-impious serfs had-betrayed and surely from
inimicis suis fidem et juramenta, quae nulla illis debebant,
enemies their faith and oaths which none to-them were-owed
querebant sibi salubriter observari, qui domino suo et
they-sought for-themselves salutarily to-be-kept who on-lord their and
patri totius comitatus mortem intulerant. Justius ergo
father of-the-whole countship death had-brought more-justly therefore
ii qui consulem dilexerunt etiam in morte, qui et ad
those who the-consul loved even in death who both for
vindictam convenerant, et ibi sustinuerunt metus, vigilias,
vengeance had-come-together and there sustained fears watches
vulnera, aggressus, et omnia quae in obsidione perpeti
wounds assaults and all-things which in a-siege to-be-endured
solent adversa, justius, inquam, obtinuissent castrum et
are-wont adversities more-justly I-say would-have-held the-castle and

thesaurum et comitialia post domini sui mortem quam
the-treasure and the-count's-goods after of-lord their the-death than
traditores pessimi, qui utrumque et locum et divitias
the-traitors most-wicked who each both the-place and the-riches
loci destruxerant. Hujusmodi ratione saepe colloquebantur
of-the-place had-destroyed by-this-kind-of reasoning often conversed
sibi obsidentes et obsessi; at obsessi solam in
with-each-other the-besiegers and the-besieged but the-besieged only in
responsalibus suis excusationem traditionis pretendebant.
replies their the-excuse of-the-betrayal held-out

30 · ISAAC FLEES

The castellan of Ghent and Iwain of Aalst join the siege. That night Isaac, knowing his guilt, flees with his household, leaving his house and goods, which the besiegers plunder and burn with fire-darts so quickly that everyone marvels.

Sexto idus martii, feria quinta, ad obsidendum proditores
on-the-sixth ides of-March on-the-day fifth for besieging the-betrayers
Karoli accucurrit castellanus ex Ghendt cum sua potentia,
of-Charles hastened the-castellan of Ghent with his power
et frater Baldevini ex Alst nomine Iwan. Nocte igitur
and the-brother of-Baldwin of Aalst by-name Iwain in-the-night therefore
preterita ejusdem feriae quintae, quia Isaac se conscium
past of-the-same day fifth because Isaac himself privy
sceleris sciebat et damnabat, urgebat enim eum timor
of-the-crime knew and condemned was-pressing for him the-fear
mortis, cum solo armigero suo aufugit, simul et uxor ejus
of-death with sole squire his fled together and wife his
et servi et pedissequae universaque familia ipsius, et ubi
and serfs and maidservants and-the-whole household of-him and where

contigit eos manere in tam arcto noctis aufugio, latuerunt;
it-happened them to-stay in so narrow of-night a-flight they-lay-hidden
domum quidem et curtem et majorem supellectilem et
the-house indeed and farmstead and the-greater furnishing and
reliquas etiam res, quas hactenus potenter et libere
the-remaining also goods which hitherto powerfully and freely
possederant, desertas et sine consilio in predam hostibus
they-had-possessed deserted and without counsel as booty to-the-enemies
reliquerunt. Quo audito, summo mane, castellanus ex Gendt et
they-left which heard very early the-castellan of Ghent and
Iwan cum multitudine obsidionis irruerant, diripientes omnia
Iwain with the-multitude of-the-siege had-rushed-in plundering all-things
quae usui suo ad asportandum invenerant. Tandem jaculis
which for-use their for carrying-off they-had-found at-last with-javelins
igneis tectis suppositis incenderunt domus et curtes, et
fiery to-the-roofs set-under they-burned the-houses and farmsteads and
quaecumque igne consumi poterant ibidem reperta. Quae
whatever by-fire to-be-consumed could there found which
quam citissime omnia conflatione et ventorum fomentis
as most-quickly all by-the-blaze and of-the-winds by-the-fanning
et insania tempestatis ignis destructa sunt, omnium
and by-the-madness of-the-storm of-fire destroyed were of-all
admiratione testificatum est, scilicet nihil tanti aedificii
by-the-wonder attested it-was namely nothing of-so-great a-building
et lignorum tam celerem passum fuisse adnihilationem.
and of-timbers so swift suffered to-have-been annihilation

Daniel, a peer of the realm and once the provost's close friend, Richard of Woumen, Theoderic, castellan of Dixmude, and Walter the count's butler come to avenge their lord. Before entering the suburb they swear with the citizens to respect its goods, to take the traitors by storm, and to spare none of the guilty.

Quinto idus martii, feria sexta, Daniel, unus de paribus
on-the-fifth ides of-March on-the-day sixth Daniel one of the-peers
regni, qui ante traditionem comitis in amicitia alte fuerat
of-the-realm who before the-betrayal of-the-count in friendship high had-been
cum preposito et nepotibus ejus, acceleravit ad obsidionem,
with the-provost and nephews his hastened to the-siege
simul et Riquardus ex Woldman, Theodericus castellanus
together and Richard of Woumen Theoderic castellan
Dikasmutis oppidi, Walterus butelgir comitis. Unusquisque
of-Dixmude town Walter butler of-the-count each-one
itaque istorum principum cum tota sua potentia venerat ad
and-so of-these princes with all his power had-come for
vindicandam mortem comitis et domini sui. Qui quidem
avenging the-death of-the-count and of-lord his who indeed
omnes, postquam convenerant cum civibus nostris, accitis
all after they-had-come-together with citizens our summoned
quoque omnibus in obsidione primatibus, conjuraverunt,
also all in the-siege the-chief-men swore
antequam permitterentur introgredi in suburbium, sese
before they-were-allowed to-enter into the-suburb themselves
inviolabiliter observare loca et possessiones suburbii ad
inviolably to-respect the-places and possessions of-the-suburb for
salutem et profectum civium nostrorum, deinde uno
the-safety and advantage of-citizens our then with-one

animo impetere adversarios et homicidas impiissimos aggredi,
mind to-attack the-adversaries and the-homicides most-impious to-assail
expugnare, et Deo volente evincere, et nulli reorum parcere
to-storm and God willing to-overcome and none of-the-guilty to-spare
ad vitam, nec aliquo suo ingenio educere et salvare reos
for life nor by-any his device to-lead-out and to-save the-guilty
sed disperdere, et communi procerum judicio agere ad
but to-destroy and by-the-common of-the-nobles judgment to-act for
honorem regni et ad salutem habitantium in eo. Simul
the-honor of-the-realm and for the-safety of-those-dwelling in it together
confirmaverunt, salvis quidem rebus civium et suis,
they-confirmed safe indeed the-goods of-the-citizens and their-own
et salva omnium re qui in obsidione laborarent, pro
and safe of-all the-property who in the-siege labored for
morte consulis vindicanda.
the-death of-the-consul to-be-avenged

32 · THE FIRST ASSAULT

On 12 March the besiegers attack the castle gates with fire, burning the postern by the provost's house, but stones from the walls crush helmets and shields, and the attackers withdraw at evening, while the besieged take heart.

Quarto idus martii, sabbato, edictum exiit a principibus,
on-the-fourth ides of-March on-Saturday an-edict went-out from the-princes
ut castrum ex omni parte qua accessum haberent invaderent
that the-castle from every side where access they-had should-attack
omnes, qui in obsidione consedissent; et quidem circa meridiem
all who in the-siege had-encamped and indeed about noon
armaverant se milites simul cum civibus, et circumibant
had-armed themselves the-knights together with the-citizens and went-round

impetentes igne portas castri, in quo aggressu posticum,
attacking with-fire the-gates of-the-castle in which assault the-postern
quod juxta domum prepositi stabat, incenderunt. Ceterum cum
which beside the-house of-the-provost stood they-burned moreover when
majores portas castri invaderent, subducta feni et stipularum
the-greater gates of-the-castle they-attacked brought-up of-hay and of-straw
arida congerie, et accito milite qui ignem stipulis ingereret,
a-dry heap and summoned a-knight who fire to-the-straw should-set
abintus castrum lapidibus, sudibus, lanceis, sagittis obruti
from-within the-castle with-stones stakes lances arrows overwhelmed
sunt hi qui aggrediebantur, ita ut quasi molaribus petris a
were those who were-assailing so that as-if with-millstone rocks from
propugnaculis dejectis innumeri laesi et conquassati galeas
the-bulwarks thrown-down countless hurt and shattered the-helmets
et scuta, vix a portarum testudine, sub qua latitabant
and shields scarcely from of-the-gates the-vault under which they-lay-hidden
ut incendia administrarent, cum salute vitae aufugerent.
that the-fires they-might-tend with safety of-life they-fled
Quemcumque igitur persequebatur lapis ab alto dejectus,
whomever therefore pursued a-stone from on-high thrown-down
quantaecumque fuisset virtutis et virium, passus est sui
of-however-great he-had-been valor and strength suffered has of-himself
ruinam gravissimam, ita ut totus prostratus et confractus,
the-ruin most-grievous so that wholly prostrate and shattered
moribundus et exanimis caderet. Qua infestatione armiger
dying and lifeless he-fell in-which attack squire
unus a foris sagitta trajectus cor expiravit. Tumultus
one from without by-an-arrow pierced in-the-heart expired tumult
et clamor utrimque grandis et gravissimus congressus
and shouting on-both-sides great and most-grievous the-encounter
fuit, stridor quoque armorum et fragor in altiori aeris
was the-grating also of-arms and crash in the-higher of-the-air

repercutiebatur concavitate. Inferebatur tandem pugna vespertino
was-echoed hollow was-carried-on at-last the-fight in-the-evening
tempore, et cum nihil praeter mortem et damnum obtinuissent
time and when nothing besides death and loss they-had-gained
a foris, subtraxerunt se a muris et propugnaculis
from without they-withdrew themselves from the-walls and bulwarks
castri, et collecta multitudinis suae parte, de futuro
of-the-castle and gathered of-the-multitude their part about the-coming
noctis periculo sollicitabantur, de quo aggressu obsessi magis
of-night danger they-were-anxious from which assault the-besieged more
et magis animati sunt, eo quod invasores suos, tot
and more emboldened were by-this that assailants their with-so-many
ruinis et vulneribus infectos, a muris propulsos vidissent.
falls and wounds stained from the-walls driven-back they-had-seen

33 · THE MEN OF GHENT ARRIVE

After a Sunday's truce the burghers of Ghent arrive with a crowd of robbers and thirty wagons of arms, hoping for great sums if the besieged surrender. Barred at first by the besiegers, they are admitted on oath, the rest sent home, and their craftsmen build ladders. Razo the butler returns from Saint Gilles to join the siege.

Tertio idus martii, dominica, sub specie pacis, utrobique
on-the-third ides of-March on-Sunday under the-appearance of-peace on-both-sides
observabatur.
it-was-kept
Priore die ante idus martii, feria secunda et feria tertia
on-the-former day before the-ides of-March on-the-day second and on-the-day third
postea, convenerunt burgenses ex Ghend, et avidissima turba
afterward came-together the-burghers of Ghent and a-most-greedy crowd
predonum simul cum ipsis ex circa sibi adjacentibus villis ad
of-robbers together with them from around to-them lying-near villages for

obsidendum. Nam pro ipsis mandaverat castellanus ipsorum, ut
besieging for for them had-sent-word castellan their that
collecta virtute et communione sua, armati et ad pugnandum
gathered strength and commune their armed and for fighting
succincti, insultum facerent ad castrum singulariter et per
girded an-assault they-should-make on the-castle singly and by
se, utpote viri gloriosi in certamine et pugna, habentes
themselves as-being men glorious in contest and fight having
scientiam demoliendi obsessos. Cumque sese singulariter in
knowledge of-overthrowing the-besieged and-when themselves singly in
obsidione insultum facturos audissent, associaverunt sibi
the-siege an-assault about-to-make they-had-heard they-joined to-themselves
universos sagittarios et ingeniosos operum artifices et audaces
all the-archers and ingenious of-works craftsmen and daring
raptores, homicidas, latrones et quoscumque presumptores in
robbers homicides thieves and whatever presumers to
omne belli nefas, atque triginta plaustra oneraverunt armis;
every of-war wickedness and thirty wagons they-loaded with-arms
pedes et equo accurrebant, sperantes se obtenturos
on-foot and on-horse they-ran-up hoping themselves about-to-obtain
maximam pecuniam, si forte se sibi redderent obsessi.
the-greatest money if perhaps themselves to-them should-surrender the-besieged
Erat quippe validus et infinitus exercitus eorum. Qui cum juxta
was indeed strong and endless army their who when near
portas suburbii accessissent, violenter ingredi ausi sunt, sed in
the-gates of-the-suburb they-had-come violently to-enter dared have but in
faciem restitit eis omnis obsidionis quae intro occurrebat
the-face withstood them all of-the-siege which within was-running-to-meet
multitudo, et pene pugnatum fuisset undique, nisi quod
the-multitude and almost fought it-would-have-been on-all-sides except that
sapientiores sese composuissent in utraque acie. Nam
the-wiser themselves had-composed in either battle-line for

datis dextris et acceptis, fide et sacramento juramenti sese
given right-hands and received faith and oath of-swearing themselves
taxabant, quatenus eadem intentione eisdemque armis et
they-bound that with-the-same intention and-with-the-same arms and
eodem consilio in obsidione cum ipsis jungerentur, salvo
with-the-same counsel in the-siege with them they-should-be-joined safe
loco et rebus nostrorum civium, atque vernaculos et sagaces
the-place and goods of-our citizens and the-natives and the-shrewd
in pugna secum tantum retinerent, alios vero retrorsum
in fighting with-themselves only they-should-keep others but backward
remandarent. Ingressi sunt ergo cum maxima multitudine
they-should-send-back entered have therefore with the-greatest multitude
Gendenses illi et compleverunt locum circa castrum. Deinde
men-of-Ghent those and they-filled the-place around the-castle then
paraverunt operatores et artifices eorum scalas, quibus muros
prepared the-workmen and craftsmen their ladders by-which the-walls
conscenderent. Eodem tempore, reversus est Razo butelgir
they-might-climb at-the-same time returned was Razo butler
a Sancto Aegidio, et venit justissime dolens pro morte
from Saint Gilles and came most-justly grieving for the-death
domini sui consulis cum sua potentia ad obsidionem.
of-lord his the-consul with his power to the-siege

The countess of Holland comes with her son, hoping the princes will choose him as count. Two knights falsely announce that the king of France has given the county to William of Ypres, and the princes swear never to serve under William, whom they suspect of the betrayal.

Septimo decimo die ante kal. aprilis, feria quarta
on-the-seventh and-tenth day before the-kalends of-April on-the-day fourth
cum sanctificatus, in nocte sanctae Gertrudis, comitissa
when sanctified in the-night of-Saint Gertrude the-countess
Hollandensis ad obsidionem accessit cum filio suo et multa
of-Holland to the-siege came with son her and much
multitudine cum ipsa. Sperabat enim omnes obsidionis
multitude with her she-hoped for all of-the-siege
principes electuros filium ejus in comitem, eo quod illud
the-princes about-to-choose son her as count by-this that this
ei cives nostri et plures principum suggessissent. Habebat
to-her citizens our and many of-the-princes had-suggested she-had
quippe magnas gratias eis comitissa, et laborabat omnium
indeed great thanks to-them the-countess and labored of-all
procerum animos convertere in amicitiam sui dando
the-nobles the-minds to-turn into friendship of-herself by-giving
et promittendo multa. Qua die Froolfus et Balduinus
and promising many-things on-which day Froolf and Baldwin
ex Somerenghen milites quasi a Willelmo Iprensi se
of Somergem knights as-if from William of-Ypres themselves
venisse simulabant, denuntiantes principibus obsidionis, regem
to-have-come pretended announcing to-the-princes of-the-siege the-king
Franciae dedisse comitatum ipsi Willelmo Iprensi et super
of-France to-have-given the-countship to-the-very William of-Ypres and upon

hoc universos sollicitos reddidit, qui filium comitissae prefatae
this all anxious it-made who the-son of-the-countess aforesaid
eligendum spoponderant. Astute ergo hujusmodi mendacium
to-be-chosen had-promised cunningly therefore of-this-kind lie
et simulate milites illi pro veritate annunciaverunt, ut
and feignedly knights those for truth announced that
ea astutia differrent concessionem principum obsidionis
by-that cunning they-might-put-off the-grant of-the-princes of-the-siege
de suscipiendo filio predictae comitissae in comitem.
about receiving the-son of-the-aforesaid countess as count
Quo audito, principes indigne ferebant, si forte verum
which heard the-princes indignantly bore-it if perhaps true
fuisset, Willelmum Iprensem comitatu a rege donatum.
it-had-been William of-Ypres with-the-countship by the-king endowed
Conjurabant ergo et fide sese taxabant, nunquam sub
they-swore therefore and by-faith themselves bound never under
illo comite Flandriae manente sese militaturos, nam omnibus
that count of-Flanders remaining themselves about-to-serve for to-all
suspectus erat et notatus in traditione domini consulis.
suspected he-was and marked in the-betrayal of-the-lord consul

With the princes' leave the canons carry the shrines and relics, the church ornaments, and the books over the walls to Saint Christopher's, and the provost lets out the count's revenue rolls he had kept for William of Ypres. The church is left to the traitors. Galbert explains that he wrote on tablets amid the fires and fighting, and he describes the great double ladder built for the assault.

Sexto decimo kal. aprilis, feria quinta, canonici Sancti
on-the-sixth and-tenth kalends of-April on-the-day fifth the-canons of-Saint
Donatiani in meridionali parte castri per scalas muros
Donatian in the-southern part of-the-castle by ladders the-walls
conscenderunt, in qua parte scrinia et feretra sanctorum et
climbed in which part the-shrines and biers of-the-saints and
reliquiarum suarum emiserunt, accepta principum super hoc
relics their they-sent-out received of-the-princes upon this
licentia et consensu, transtuleruntque in ecclesiam beati
leave and consent and-they-carried-over into the-church of-blessed
Christophori, quae in medio fori consita est, cortinas
Christopher which in the-middle of-the-market set is the-curtains
et aulearia quoque tapeta, cappas palliatas et sericas, vestes
and hangings also tapestries copes cloaked and silken vestments
sacras et librorum aggerem, et utensilia templi et
sacred and of-books a-heap and the-utensils of-the-temple and
cetera quae de pertinentia ecclesiae erant, elata sunt.
the-other-things which of the-appurtenance of-the-church were carried-out were
De redditibus comitis brevia et notationes, quae prepositus
of the-revenues of-the-count the-briefs and notes which the-provost
sibi et suo conservaverat Willelmo Iprensi, quia
for-himself and for-his-own had-kept for-William of-Ypres because
fortunam suam prorsus mutatam vidit, interventu Fromoldi
fortune his utterly changed he-saw at-the-intervention of-Fromold

senioris efferri perpessus est, sicut omnia sanctorum
the-elder to-be-carried-out allowed has as all of-the-saints
scrinia et armamenta templi invitus permisit auferri.
the-shrines and the-gear of-the-temple unwilling he-permitted to-be-taken-away
Stabat igitur ecclesia Sancti Donatiani sola et deserta
stood therefore the-church of-Saint Donatian alone and deserted
tandem relicta traditoribus, qui in ea scortum haberent et
at-last left to-the-traitors who in it a-brothel might-have and
cloacaria sua et coquinas et furnos, et omnia immunda
privies their and kitchens and ovens and all unclean-things
immundi agerent. Jacebat quoque ipse piissimus et Dei
the-unclean might-do lay also the-very most-pious and of-God
servus Karolus comes solus adhuc in loco, quo martirium
servant Charles the-count alone still in the-place where martyrdom
susceperat, relictus suis traditoribus. Igitur postquam elata
he-had-received left to-his traitors therefore after carried-out
sunt omnia, quae permissa sunt efferri, canonici flentes
were all-things which allowed were to-be-carried-out the-canons weeping
et sine consueta veneratione portabant reliquias sanctorum
and without accustomed veneration carried the-relics of-the-saints
in dolore et suspiriis et planctu; nullusque preter clerum
in grief and sighs and lament and-no-one except the-clergy
et paucos in efferendo ea sacra permissus est ad
and a-few in carrying-out those sacred-things allowed was to
muros accedere, utrobique enim stabant armati, precavantes
the-walls to-approach on-both-sides for stood armed-men taking-care
sibi, et inter tot arma tamen sanctos venerati sunt,
for-themselves and among so-many arms yet the-saints venerated they-have
pacem et viamen latoribus sanctorum offerendo. Extranea
peace and passage to-the-bearers of-the-saints by-offering strange
fuit quaedam et rara valde talis processio, in qua Algerus,
was a-certain and rare very such procession in which Alger

camerarius prepositi, cappam juxta morem clerici indutus,
chamberlain of-the-provost a-cope after the-manner of-a-cleric clad-in
crucem ferebat; nam cum vitae desperaret, tali dissimulatione
the-cross carried for when of-life he-despaired by-such disguise
evasit. Indoluerunt ergo omnes boni et universi civium
he-escaped grieved therefore all good-men and all of-the-citizens
de tali rerum eventu, laeti quidem quod reliquias sanctorum
at such of-things outcome glad indeed that the-relics of-the-saints
obtinuissent, quae in predam inimicis et raptoribus loci
they-had-obtained which as booty to-the-enemies and robbers of-the-place
relictae in ecclesia fuissent, si remansissent, sicut in
left in the-church would-have-been if they-had-remained as in
captione castri et invasione ecclesiae postmodum apparuit.
the-capture of-the-castle and the-invasion of-the-church afterward appeared
Et notandum, quod in tanto tumultu rerum et tot
and it-must-be-noted that in so-great a-tumult of-things and so-many
domorum incendiis, quae per ignitas sagittas nocte tectis
of-houses burnings which by fiery arrows by-night on-the-roofs
suburbiorum injecerant ab intus, et etiam latrunculi
of-the-suburbs they-had-thrown from within and also petty-thieves
exterius, ut sibi aliquid furarentur, et inter tot
from-outside that for-themselves something they-might-steal and amid so-many
noctium pericula et tot dierum certamina, cum locum
of-nights dangers and so-many of-days contests since a-place
scribendi ego Galbertus notarius non haberem, summam rerum
for-writing I Galbert notary not had the-sum of-things
in tabulis notavi, donec, aliquando noctis vel diei expectata
on tablets I-noted until sometime by-night or by-day awaited
pace, ordinarem secundum rerum eventum descriptionem
peace I-might-arrange according-to of-things the-outcome the-description
presentem, et sic, secundum quod videtis et legitis, in arcto
present and thus according-to what you-see and read in a-strait

positus fidelibus transcripsi; neque quid singuli agerent
placed for-the-faithful I-have-transcribed nor what each-one did
prae confusione et infinitatione notavi, sed hoc solum
for confusion and endlessness I-noted but this only
intenta mente notavi quod in obsidione communi edicto et
with-intent mind I-noted what in the-siege by-common edict and
facto ad pugnam et ejus caussam congestum est, atque ad
deed for the-fight and its cause brought-together was and to
hoc quasi me invitum, ut scripturae commendarem, coegi.
this as-if me unwilling that to-writing I-should-commit I-forced
Scalae igitur structura talis erat: primum latior scala cum
of-the-ladder therefore the-structure such was first a-broader ladder with
suis claviculis fabricata est juxta altitudinem murorum
its little-rungs made was according-to the-height of-the-walls
castri; a dextris et a sinistris vero conceptae sunt
of-the-castle on the-right and on the-left but woven were
virgae tenacissimae ad modum parietis; in fronte vero
withes most-tough in the-manner of-a-wall in the-front but
scalae consimilis paries consertus est; super quam scalam
of-the-ladder a-like wall joined was upon which ladder
altera scala strictior et longior, simili opere constructa,
another ladder narrower and longer by-like work constructed
superimposita est jacendo, ut post erectionem scalae
placed-on-top was lying that after the-raising of-the-ladder
majoris, minor scala infra murum laberetur atque parietes
greater the-smaller ladder within the-wall might-slip and the-walls
dextrorsum et sinistrorsum et in fronte consepti, in
to-the-right and to-the-left and in front fenced in
defensionem ascendentium undique starent.
defense of-those-climbing on-all-sides might-stand

Not all the besieged did the deed; some were caught inside, some went in willingly as its accomplices, and others came for pay, among them the archer Benkin. With the guilty is also Weriot, a knight who had been a thief and robber from his youth, and the two wreak havoc on the attackers. The besieged pack the gates with earth and stones, and both sides destroy the bridges.

Hic non est pretereundum, quod plures inclusi fuerant intra
here not is to-be-passed-over that many shut-in had-been within
castrum, qui in morte comitis rei non fuere opere vel
the-castle who in the-death of-the-count guilty not were by-deed or
consensu, sed vel intercepti erant simul cum reis eo
by-consent but either caught they-had-been together with the-guilty on-that
die quo clausi sunt infra muros primum. Itemque plures
day on-which shut they-were within the-walls first likewise many
erant qui sponte introierant simul cum sceleratis, qui
there-were who of-their-own-accord had-gone-in together with the-criminals who
licet in opere et materiali occisione non adfuissent,
although in the-deed and the-material slaying not they-had-been-present
assentiebantur tamen reis. Itemque plures et in prima
assented yet to-the-guilty likewise many both in the-first
et subsequentibus obsidionis ingressi erant diebus causa
and in-the-following of-the-siege entered had days for-the-sake-of
pretii et lucri; inter quos inmanis et in sagittando sagax
price and gain among whom monstrous and in shooting shrewd
et velox tirunculus unus nomine Benkin aderat. Hic
and swift young-recruit one by-name Benkin was-present this-man
circumibat muros pugnando, modo hac modo illac discurrens,
went-round the-walls fighting now here now there running-about
quandoque solus ipse videbatur fuisse plures, qui tot
sometimes alone he seemed to-have-been many who so-many

ab intro vulneribus inficeret et numquam cessaret. Cumque
from within with-wounds might-stain and never would-cease and-when
ipse ad obsidentes traheret, tractus ipsius discernebatur ab
he at the-besiegers shot the-shots of-him were-distinguished by
omnibus, quia vel percuteret gravi vulnere nudos,
all because either he-struck with-heavy wound the-unprotected
vel jactata sagitta quos persequebatur armatos sine
or with-the-thrown arrow those-whom he-pursued armed without
vulnere contunsos, stupefactos in fugam vertebat. Affuit
wound bruised stupefied into flight he-turned was-present
etiam cum reis illis miles Weriot, qui a tempore juventae
also with guilty those the-knight Weriot who from the-time of-youth
suae fur et latro manserat; hic stragem maximam
his a-thief and robber had-remained this-man slaughter very-great
inter extra muros insultum facientes fecerat in obruendo et
among outside the-walls assault making had-made in crushing and
dejiciendo lapides, qui sola manu sinistra utebatur. Ad haec
throwing-down stones who with-sole hand left used to these
vero nefanda infinitus erat reorum et coadjutorum infra
but wicked-things endless was of-the-guilty and helpers within
muros numerus, die ac nocte, vigiliis, pugna, insultibus,
the-walls the-number by-day and by-night in-watches in-fight in-assaults
labore quoque diverso desudantium; nam portas castri
in-labor also various sweating for the-gates of-the-castle
terrae et lapidum et fimorum comportationibus introrsum
with-earth and stones and dung by-carryings inward
humaverant ab imo usque ad summum, ne exustione et
they-had-buried from the-bottom right-up to the-top lest by-burning and
incendio portarum facto ad eos forte ingrederentur a foris.
fire of-the-gates done to them perhaps they-might-enter from without
Utique appositis ignibus in parte orientis, portae grandes pene
indeed set fires on the-side of-the-east the-gates great almost

perustae fuerant, ita ut foramen maximum patuisset,
burned-through had-been so that an-opening very-great would-have-lain-open
nisi predicta materiarum mole obserassent. Tandem cum
unless the-aforesaid of-materials by-the-mass they-had-barred at-last when
intrinsecus exitus portarum lapidibus et terrae aggeribus
from-within the-exits of-the-gates with-stones and of-earth with-heaps
obruissent, a foris destruxerant utrobique pontes tam
they-had-covered from without had-destroyed on-both-sides the-bridges as-much
obsessi quam obsidentes, qui ad castrum directi olim fuerant,
the-besieged as the-besiegers which to the-castle directed once had-been
et ita nullus aditus relictus est inimicis vel exitus obsessis.
and thus no approach left was to-the-enemies or exit to-the-besieged

37 · THE CHURCH AND THE OFFER

The besieged block the doors to the church, the count's house, and the cloister. Galbert describes Saint Donatian's, round and high, roofed in earthenware and brick, with its strong western tower. The princes offer free exit to all who are innocent, and many leave.

Igitur cum securos fecissent se obsessi in exitibus
therefore when secure had-made themselves the-besieged in the-exits
suis, instabant obstruere fores templi ad meridiem et
their they-pressed to-block the-doors of-the-temple to the-south and
fores domus comitis, quae exibant in castrum, foresque
the-doors of-the-house of-the-count which went-out into the-castle and-the-doors
quae a claustro se porrexerant in castrum, ut si
which from the-cloister themselves had-stretched into the-castle that if
aliquo suo infortunio curtem comitis perdidissent, sese
by-some their misfortune the-court of-the-count they-should-lose themselves
reciperent in domum comitis et in domum prepositi,
they-might-withdraw into the-house of-the-count and into the-house of-the-provost

simulque in refectorium et claustrum fratrum et infra
and-together into the-refectory and cloister of-the-brothers and within
ecclesiam. Stabat autem ecclesia beati Donatiani aedificata
the-church stood moreover the-church of-blessed Donatian built
in rotundum et altum, contecta fictitio opere, ollis, et
in round and high roofed with-earthen work with-pots and
lateribus cacuminata, nam olim tegumen ecclesiae lignorum
bricks peaked for once the-covering of-the-church of-timbers
compositione astruebatur, et elevata materia campanarii
by-construction was-built-up and raised the-structure of-the-bell-tower
in altitudinem artificiosum opus eadem susceperat basilica;
into height an-artful work the-same had-taken-up the-basilica
unde honestatis suae fulgore preeminebat, velut regni
whence of-honor its by-the-brightness it-stood-out as of-the-realm
sedes, et in medio patriae securitate et pace, jure
the-seat and in the-middle of-the-fatherland with-security and peace with-right
et legibus undique terrae partibus salutem et justitiam
and laws on-all-sides of-the-land to-the-parts safety and justice
demandans. Quippe ignis dispendio omnis lignorum materies
commending indeed of-fire by-the-loss all of-timbers the-material
consumpta est olim, et ideo contra ignis molestiam
consumed was once and therefore against of-fire the-harm
lapideum et tale opus confinxerant ex ollis et lateribus,
a-stone and such work they-had-fashioned out-of pots and bricks
quod elementum igneum exurere non potuisset. In parte
that the-element fiery to-burn not could-have in the-part
quoque ejusdem templi occidentem versus, turris fortissima
also of-the-same temple the-west toward a-tower most-strong
in eadem templi essentia altiore statura eminebat, in
in the-same of-the-temple being with-higher stature stood-out in
supremis dividens se in duas turres acutiores. Murus
(its)-tops dividing itself into two towers sharper a-wall

quidem circumcinxerat et domum prepositi et dormitorium
indeed had-surrounded both the-house of-the-provost and the-dormitory
fratrum et claustrum et pariter omne illud castrum, atque
of-the-brothers and the-cloister and likewise all that castle and
ille murus, quem tandem obtinere sibi presumpserant,
that wall which at-last to-hold for-themselves they-had-presumed
propugnaculis et circumcursu ad extra pugnandum, altior
with-bulwarks and walkway for outward fighting higher
et fortior stabat. Et quamquam in se murus fortis et
and stronger stood and although in itself the-wall strong and
ascensoria firma fuissent, elaborabant nocte et die sese
the-stairways firm had-been they-labored by-night and by-day themselves
tutiores intrinsecus reddere, qui pugnaturos se fore
safer from-within to-make who about-to-fight themselves to-be
contra universum mundum amodo intellexerant. Tunc tandem
against the-whole world henceforth had-understood then at-last
reminisci poterant proverbii sui: «Si interfecerimus Karolum,
to-remember they-could of-saying their if we-shall-have-killed Charles
quis vindicaturus veniet illum?» Et vere, infiniti erant et
who about-to-avenge shall-come him and truly endless were and
eorum ad vindicandum venientium incertus hominum preter
of-them for avenging coming uncertain of-men except
Deum numerus erat, et ideo quis nomen interrogativum
God the-number was and therefore who the-name interrogative
et infinitum in proverbio eorum vim rectam et plenam
and indefinite in saying their the-force right and full
obtinuit. Et sciendum, quia milites illi strenui intus quidem
has-held and it-must-be-known that knights those vigorous within indeed
cum reis fuere, quibus semper animus exeundi vel extra
with the-guilty were to-whom always the-mind of-going-out or outside
a muro cadendi et labendi erat promptior, si forte locum
from the-wall of-dropping and of-slipping was readier if perhaps a-place

habuissent, eo quod communiter sub nota traditorum
they-had-had by-this that in-common under the-mark of-the-traitors
adscriberentur, quicumque obsessi sunt cum reis. Quo
were-ascribed whoever besieged were with the-guilty which
rescito, principes obsidionis, collectis consiliariis et optimatibus
found-out the-princes of-the-siege gathered the-counselors and great-men
majoris prudentiae, accesserunt ad muros et usi sunt colloquio
of-greater prudence approached to the-walls and used have a-parley
cum omnibus intro obsessis. Jusserunt igitur sibi ad
with all within besieged they-ordered therefore to-themselves to
spectaculum murorum evocari illos obsessos, qui rei
the-view of-the-walls to-be-called-forth those besieged who guilty
non fuerant, et obtulerunt eis licentiam et potestatem, si
not had-been and offered to-them leave and power if
vellent, exeundi ab obsessis, salva vita et membris eorum
they-wished of-going-out from the-besieged safe the-life and limbs of-them
quorum quidem aperta foret innocentia; ceterum preter
of-whom indeed open should-be the-innocence moreover besides
reos si aliqui exire vellent et probare innocentiam suam
the-guilty if any to-go-out should-wish and to-prove innocence their
secundum judicium principum, eadem libertate exirent,
according-to the-judgment of-the-princes with-the-same freedom they-might-go-out
reis vero nulla dispensatione subveniretur, qui tantum
to-the-guilty but by-no dispensation would-it-be-helped who so-great
facinus et ante hoc inauditum perfecerant crimen, imo
a-crime and before this unheard-of had-accomplished the-crime nay
inaudito plecterentur exterminio et ante hoc inaudita
by-an-unheard-of they-would-be-punished extermination and before this unheard-of
moriendi acerbitate. Igitur, secundum edictum et pactum
of-dying with-bitterness therefore according-to the-edict and pact
hujusmodi, exierunt perplures, quia eorum erat aperta
of-this-kind went-out very-many because their was open

innocentia, aut parati fuerunt quibus minus credebatur,
the-innocence or ready were those-to-whom less was-believed
probare innocentiam.
to-prove innocence

38 · THE PARLEY

Haket speaks for the besieged, asking the princes to let the guilty nephews go into exile and the rest clear themselves by lawful proof. The knight Walter answers that they owe no loyalty to those who betrayed their lord in Lent at prayer, and the whole army renounces its fealty to the besieged with rods.

Tandem prepositus, vultu tristiore et omisso majestatis
at-last the-provost with-face sadder and set-aside of-majesty
suae rigore et superbia, mente consternatus, accessit ad
his the-rigor and pride in-mind dismayed came to
colloquium, et frater ejus castellanus Haket usi sunt humili
the-parley and brother his the-castellan Haket used have humble
oratione in verbis hujusmodi. Responsalis quidem prepositi
speech in words of-this-kind the-spokesman indeed of-the-provost
et omnium obsessorum erat castellanus Hacket, qui solus
and of-all the-besieged was the-castellan Haket who alone
pro omnibus loquebatur, et respondit ita principibus:
for all spoke and answered thus to-the-princes
«Domini et amici nostri, qui nostri miserentur, si aliter
lords and friends our who on-us have-mercy if otherwise
nobis accidisset, aliquo vestigio dilectionis antiquae debent
to-us it-had-happened by-some trace of-love old they-ought
pietatis officia erga nos exhibere, quantum poterunt salvo
of-piety the-duties toward us to-show as-much-as they-can saving
honore suo et facultate. Rogamus ergo vos et obsecramus,
honor their and means we-ask therefore you and beseech

principes terrae hujus, et mementote quantae dilectionis
princes of-land this and remember of-how-great love
bona consecuti fueritis a nobis, miseremini nostri qui
the-goods attained you-have from us have-mercy on-us who
mortem domini comitis vobiscum conquerimur, deflemus,
the-death of-the-lord count with-you lament we-weep-for
reos damnamus et prorsus expelleremus a nobis,
the-guilty we-condemn and utterly we-would-expel from us
nisi quod nostri sanguinis propinquitatem inviti quidem
except that of-our blood the-nearness unwilling indeed
servamus in ipsis. Tamen obsecramus potentiam vestram,
we-keep in them yet we-beseech power your
audite nos super nepotes nostros, quos reos dicitis, ut
hear us about nephews our whom guilty you-call that
liceat eis per vos exeundi obtinere libertatem jam
it-be-permitted to-them through you of-going-out to-obtain the-freedom now
a castro et deinde, instituta eis pena pro tam inmani
from the-castle and then appointed for-them a-penalty for so monstrous
facinore ab episcopo et magistratibus, abeant in exilium
a-crime by the-bishop and the-magistrates they-may-go-off into exile
perpetuum, ut sic quoquo modo in cilicio et penitentia
perpetual that thus in-some way in sackcloth and penitence
Deo mereantur reconciliari, quem graviter offenderunt. Nos
to-God they-may-deserve to-be-reconciled whom heavily they-have-offended we
vero, ego et prepositus et Robertus puer cum hominibus
but I and the-provost and Robert the-boy with men
nostris parati sumus, secundum universi generis judicium,
our ready are according-to of-every kind the-judgment
satisfacere omnibus, quod innocentes sumus ab opere et
to-satisfy all that innocent we-are of the-deed and
consensu traditionis et super hoc innocentiam nostram
consent of-the-betrayal and upon this innocence our

probare omnimodo parati sumus, si quis sub coelo hominum
to-prove in-every-way ready we-are if anyone under heaven of-men
dignetur suscipere probationis nostrae argumenta. Dominus
should-deign to-receive of-proof our the-arguments lord
meus prepositus coram universo clero suae innocentiae
my the-provost before the-whole clergy of-his innocence
probationem quantumcumque gravem se facturum offert,
the-proof however heavy himself about-to-make offers
eo quod conscientiam suam mundam testetur. Requirimus
by-this that conscience his clean be-may-witness we-ask
iterum a vobis, ut salva vita et membris suis permittatis
again from you that safe life and limbs their you-allow
nepotibus reis et in traditione notatis habere in exilium
the-nephews guilty and in the-betrayal marked to-have into exile
eundi libertatem et nobis verae probationis sententia purgari,
of-going the-freedom and for-us of-true proof by-the-sentence to-be-cleared
militibus secundum jus seculare, clericis secundum scripta
the-knights according-to law secular the-clerics according-to writings
divina examinari liceat. Quod si fieri abominaveritis,
divine to-be-examined be-permitted which if to-be-done you-shall-abhor
volumus melius sic obsessi simul cum reis vivere, quam
we-wish rather thus besieged together with the-guilty to-live than
ad vos exire et turpiter mori.» Cumque complesset
to you to-go-out and shamefully to-die and-when he-had-completed
orationem castellanus Hacket, exorsus est quidam militum
the-speech the-castellan Haket begun has a-certain of-the-knights
obsidionis nomine Walterus respondere predictis: «Nullius
of-the-siege by-name Walter to-answer the-aforesaid of-no
beneficii vestri memores esse nulliusque dilectionis antiquae
kindness your mindful to-be and-of-no love old
vestigia jure observare deinceps debemus, qui dominum
the-traces rightly to-keep henceforth we-ought who the-lord

comitem traditum, a nobis, sicut dignum fuit, tumulandum
count betrayed from us as fitting it-was to-be-buried
et deflendum, violenter seclusistis, simulque cum reis
and to-be-wept-for violently you-have-shut-off and-together with the-guilty
participastis thesaurum regni, et regalem aulam ipsius
you-have-shared the-treasure of-the-realm and the-royal hall of-him
injuste possidetis, impiissimi traditores domini vestri, ad
unjustly you-possess most-impious traitors of-lord your to
quos amodo nihil pertinet de regno et comitatu. Omnia
whom henceforth nothing belongs of the-realm and the-countship all-things
enim, tam vitam propriam quam rem extrinsecam, injuste
for as-much life own as property external unjustly
possidetis, quandoquidem sine fide, sine lege vos
you-possess since without faith without law yourselves
fecistis et idcirco omnes christiani nominis professores
you-have-made and therefore all of-the-christian name the-professors
contra vos armastis, quoniam principem terrae hujus pro
against you you-have-armed since the-prince of-land this for
justitia Dei et hominum tradidistis, in sacro quadragenario,
the-justice of-God and of-men you-betrayed in the-sacred forty-days
in sacro loco, in sacris orationibus Deo prostratum.
in the-sacred place in sacred prayers before-God prostrate
Itaque deinceps fidem et hominia, quae hactenus vobis
and-so henceforth the-faith and homages which hitherto to-you
servavimus, exfestucamus, damnamus, abjicimus.» Aderat
we-have-kept we-renounce-with-the-rod we-condemn we-cast-off was-present
huic collocutioni totius obsidionis multitudo, qui statim,
at-this parley of-the-whole siege the-multitude who at-once
finita responsione ista, arreptis festucis, exfestucaverunt illorum
finished answer that seized rods renounced-with-the-rod of-those
obsessorum hominium, fidem et securitatem et separati sunt
besieged the-homage the-faith and the-assurance and separated were

ab invicem colloquentes sibi animo irato et obstinato
from each-other speaking to-themselves with-mind angry and obstinate
utrobique, hinc ad expugnandum, illinc ad resistendum.
on-both-sides on-this-side for storming on-that-side for resisting

39 · ISAAC CAPTURED

Isaac, fleeing by Steenvoorde to Thérouanne, takes the monk's habit, but the advocate's son finds him in the church, scourges him, and makes him name his accomplices: Borsiard, William of Wervik, Ingran of Eessen, the young Robert, and Wulfric. Knights dig in vain for money he is said to have hidden under an oak.

Eodem die, ab armigeris abbatissae Auriniacensis coenobii,
on-the-same day from the-squires of-the-abbess of-Origny convent
audivimus eventum Isaac, qui eadem nocte qua fugerat,
we-heard the-outcome of-Isaac who on-the-same night on-which he-had-fled
cum se credidisset venisse Gandavum, venerat juxta
when himself he-had-believed to-have-come to-Ghent had-come near
Ipram. Fugit ergo inde usque in Steenvordam, villam
Ypres he-fled therefore thence right-up to Steenvoorde the-village
Widonis generi sui, ubi, accepto consilio, nocte Teruannam
of-Guy son-in-law his where received counsel by-night to-Thérouanne
descendit et latenter et furtim monachicum habitum
he-went-down and secretly and stealthily the-monastic habit
assumpsit. Ceterum rumor et requirentia universorum
took-on moreover the-rumor and searching of-all
persequebatur fugientem, ita ut nullatenus lateret quin
pursued the-fugitive so that in-no-way he-lay-hidden but-that
statim veritatem rescirent. Igitur advocati Teruannae filius,
at-once the-truth they-found-out therefore of-the-advocate of-Thérouanne the-son
cum Isaac resciret, irruit in claustrum fratrum et reperit
when Isaac he-found-out rushed into the-cloister of-the-brothers and found-him

in cuculla latentem in ecclesia et quasi psalmos ruminantem.
in a-cowl lying-hidden in the-church and as-if psalms chewing-over
Cumque captum eduxisset Isaac, virgis et vinculis coactum
and-when captured he-had-led-out Isaac with-rods and chains forced
et flagellatum constrinxit et ita extorsit ab eo, ut reos
and scourged he-bound and thus wrung from him that the-guilty
in comitis traditione proderet. Et respondit, confitens de
in of-the-count the-betrayal he-should-disclose and he-answered confessing about
se et aliis nominatim reis, superaddens plures fuisse qui
himself and others by-name guilty adding many to-have-been who
conscii sceleris et administratores fuissent reorum, tradentium
privy of-the-crime and agents had-been of-the-guilty betraying
actualiter comitem, scilicet gladio materiali. Subjunxit
actually the-count namely with-the-sword material he-added
quoque de conjuratione proditionis suae cum Borsiardo et
also about the-conspiracy of-betrayal his with Borsiard and
Willelmo ex Wervi et Ingranno de Esna et Roberto puero,
William of Wervik and Ingran of Eessen and Robert the-boy
Wlfrico fratre prepositi et paucis simul annumeratis homicidis
Wulfric brother of-the-provost and a-few together counted homicides
pessimis. Et retulerunt aliqui, dixisse Isaac in suffossione
most-wicked and related some to-have-said Isaac in the-digging-under
unius quercus, in pomerio domui suae adjuncto, pecuniam
of-one oak in the-orchard to-house his joined money
radicitus abscondisse, quam milites loci nostri perscrutando et
by-the-roots to-have-hidden which the-knights of-place our by-searching and
circumquaque fodiendo usque in viscera terrae ibant frustrati.
round-about by-digging right-up into the-bowels of-the-earth went thwarted

On 18 March the great ladders, sixty feet high, are dragged against the walls under the defenders' stones and arrows. Young men climbing small ladders are thrown down, others try to breach the wall with hammers, and night ends the fighting before the ladders can be raised.

Quinto decimo die ante kal. aprilis, sexta feria, adductae
on-the-fifth and-tenth day before the-kalends of-April on-the-sixth day brought-up
sunt scalae adversus muros, et impetebant utrobique sese
were the-ladders against the-walls and they-attacked on-both-sides each-other
sagittis et lapidibus. Illi vero qui scalas adduxere, clypeis
with-arrows and stones those but who the-ladders brought-up with-shields
defensi et loricas induti progrediebantur. Multi equidem
defended and coats-of-mail clad advanced many indeed
consequebantur ad spectandum, quomodo erigerentur ad
followed for watching how they-would-be-raised to
muros scalae, eo quod ex viredine et humiditate graves
the-walls the-ladders by-this that from greenness and dampness heavy
essent et ponderis magni, in altitudinem habentes circa
they-were and of-weight great in height having about
mensuras sexaginta pedum hominis, et in latitudinem pedum
measures sixty of-feet of-a-man and in breadth of-feet
duodecim scala inferior, et scala superior admodum
twelve the-ladder lower and the-ladder upper very
strictior, sed longior parumper extitit. Cumque trahebantur
narrower but longer a-little was and-when were-being-dragged
scalae, juvabat manus, vox et clamor trahentium, et
the-ladders helped the-hand the-voice and shout of-those-dragging and
resonabant clamores in aere altiori. Tunc Gandenses armata
resounded the-shouts in the-air higher then the-men-of-Ghent with-armed

manu protegebant illos clypeis, qui scalas traherent; nam
hand protected those with-shields who the-ladders dragged for
audito et viso tractu, obsessi super muros ascenderunt et ad
heard and seen the-dragging the-besieged on the-walls climbed and to
propugnacula prodibant, obruentes lapidum infinitos jactus et
the-bulwarks came-forth hurling of-stones countless throws and
sagittarum densitatem contra scalarum attrectatores. Ceterum
of-arrows a-thickness against of-the-ladders the-handlers moreover
animosi juvenes et audaces, appositis parvulis scalis, quas decem
spirited youths and daring set-against little ladders which ten
homines solebant ferre, volentes prevenire insultum majorum
men were-wont to-carry wishing to-forestall the-assault of-the-greater
scalarum, ascenderunt ad murum unus post alium. Sed cum
ladders climbed to the-wall one after another but when
aliquis in summitatem ascensum et super murum intentaret,
anyone into the-top an-ascent and onto the-wall attempted
illi qui ab intus latitabant, insidiantes ascensoribus, hastis
those who from within lay-hidden lying-in-wait-for the-climbers with-spears
et conto et telis dejecerunt herentem in scala, ita ut nullus
and pike and missiles threw-down him-clinging on the-ladder so that no-one
tam audax, tam velox amplius foret qui auderet ingredi
so daring so swift further would-be who would-dare to-enter
ad obsessos per scalas minores. Interim murum perforare
to the-besieged by the-ladders smaller meanwhile the-wall to-pierce
satagebant cementariorum malleis et universis ferramentis
were-busy of-the-masons with-hammers and all iron-tools
alii, et magnam partem muri avellentes frustrati recesserunt.
others and a-great part of-the-wall tearing-away thwarted withdrew
Sed cum trahentium multitudo prope muros conscendisset,
but when of-those-dragging the-multitude near the-walls had-climbed
et acrius utrimque pugnaretur in obruendo moles lapidum
and more-sharply on-both-sides was-fought in hurling masses of-stones

ab intus, densae noctis tenebrae prohibebant utrosque a
from within of-dense night the-darkness kept both from
pugna; et multa laesione accepta, Gendenses expectabant
the-fight and much hurt received the-men-of-Ghent awaited
diem crastinum, quando universa simul cum ipsis obsidio,
the-day next when all together with them the-siege
violenter erectis majoribus scalis, ingrederentur ab obsessos.
violently raised the-greater ladders should-enter to the-besieged

41 · THE CASTLE TAKEN

At dawn on 19 March, while the guards warm themselves, the citizens climb in by light ladders, open a gate, and let the army in. The traitors, roused from sleep, fight in the passage to the church, Borsiard most fiercely, but are driven into the church with the young Robert. The besiegers plunder the count's and provost's houses and the canons' dormitory until night.

Quarto decimo kal. aprilis, sabbato, cum lucescente
on-the-fourth and-tenth kalends of-April on-Saturday when at-dawning
mane obsessi in diversa vocati parte castri post pugnas
morning the-besieged into different placed parts of-the-castle after the-fights
quotidianas membra dedissent quieti et cum paulisper
daily their-limbs had-given to-rest and when a-little
securiores forent, quod hesterno die egregie pugnassent contra
more-secure they-were because on-yesterday's day excellently they-had-fought against
forinsecos Gendenses, namque ea securitate vigiles
the-outside men-of-Ghent for with-that security the-watchmen
murorum preconato die introierant in domum comitis
of-the-walls at-the-proclaimed day had-gone into the-house of-the-count
ad ignem tepefacere se propter asperitatem frigoris et
at the-fire to-warm themselves on-account-of the-harshness of-the-cold and

ventorum, in vacuum relicta curte castri, cives nostri in
of-the-winds into empty left the-court of-the-castle citizens our in
meridionali parte, qua sanctorum reliquiae elatae fuerant,
the-southern part where of-the-saints the-relics carried-out had-been
intro conscenderunt per subtiles scalas et latrices quas solus
within climbed by slender ladders and light-ones which a-single
homo ferret. Intus quippe sine sonitu et clamore sese
man could-carry within indeed without sound and shout themselves
collegerunt in magnas acies et premunitas ad pugnandum,
they-gathered into great battle-lines and fortified for fighting
statimque ordinabant minores inter se ituros ad portas
and-at-once they-arranged the-lesser among themselves about-to-go to the-gates
majores, ut terrae et simul lapidum congeriem sustollerent
greater that of-earth and together of-stones the-heap they-might-lift-away
a portis et introitum facerent extra consistentibus universis,
from the-gates and an-entry might-make outside for-those-standing all
qui hoc factum adhuc ignorabant. Portam quoque unam
who this deed still did-not-know a-gate also one
castri in parte occidentis repererant clausam firmiter
of-the-castle in the-part of-the-west they-had-found shut firmly
clavi et sera ferrea, nullaque terrae et lapidum objectione
with-key and bolt iron and-by-no of-earth and of-stones blocking
obrutam, quam ideo liberam observaverant, ut per
buried which for-this-reason free they-had-kept that through
illam reciperent et emitterent quos vellent traditores
it they-might-receive and send-out whom they-wished traitors
illi. Quam statim ipso accessu gladiis et securibus
those which at-once at-the-very approach with-swords and axes
nostri burgenses aperuerant, et tunc concitato clamore et
our burghers had-opened and then raised the-shout and
strepitu armorum, intrinsecus in tumultum et concursum
din of-arms within into tumult and running-together

conturbaverunt exercitum in circuitu castri. Igitur
they-threw-into-confusion the-army in the-circuit of-the-castle therefore
irruerat gravissima obsidionis manus intra castra, alii ut
had-rushed-in the-heaviest of-the-siege band within the-castle some that
pugnarent, alii ut raperent quaecumque infra reperirent,
they-might-fight others that they-might-seize whatever within they-should-find
alii ut intra ecclesiam ingressi, corpus beati comitis
others that within the-church entered the-body of-the-blessed count
Karoli obtinentes, Gandavum transferrent. Tunc traditores illi,
Charles gaining to-Ghent they-might-carry then traitors those
qui in domo comitis gravi sopore soluti jacebant, terrore
who in the-house of-the-count by-heavy sleep loosed were-lying by-terror
et clamore infinito expergefacti, ignari rerum eventus,
and shouting endless awakened ignorant of-things of-the-outcome
discurrebant visum quidnam clamorum caussa foret. Et cum
ran-about to-see what of-the-shouts the-cause might-be and when
rerum pericula sibi inminere cognovissent, prosilientes
of-things the-dangers on-themselves to-hang-over they-had-known leaping-forth
ad arma, instabant prae foribus expectantes congressum.
to arms they-stood before the-doors awaiting the-encounter
Quidam ex ipsis in ingressu civium nostrorum intus castrum,
some of them at the-entry of-citizens our within the-castle
intercepti sunt ad unam portarum, milites quidem plures,
caught were at one of-the-gates knights indeed many
quibus custodia earundem portarum deputata fuerat in parte
to-whom the-guard of-the-same gates assigned had-been in the-part
orientis, qui cum introgressis civibus tumultum subeuntes,
of-the-east who with the-entered citizens the-tumult undergoing
cum nihil ulterius possent, sese reddiderunt misericordiae
when nothing further they-could themselves surrendered to-the-mercy
et pietati captivantium. Quidam vero eorum diffidentes vitae
and pity of-the-captors some but of-them distrusting of-life

suae, si a civibus caperentur, a muris dilapsi sunt, unus
their if by the-citizens they-were-taken from the-walls slipped-down were one
quorum in labendo precipitatus Giselbertus miles expiravit.
of-whom in slipping fallen-headlong Gilbert a-knight expired
Quem cum mulierculae traxissent in domum et exequias
whom when the-poor-women had-dragged into a-house and the-rites
sibi prepararent, castellanus Theodoricus et sui rescitum
for-him were-preparing the-castellan Theoderic and his-men found-out
mortuum illum caudae equi copulatum, per omnes plateas
the-dead-man that to-the-tail of-a-horse tied through all the-streets
suburbii tractum, tandem in cloacarium in medio fori
of-the-suburb dragged at-last into the-sewer in the-middle of-the-market
projectum decapitavit. Igitur cum cives intellexissent illos
thrown he-beheaded therefore when the-citizens had-understood them
velle resistere prae foribus in domo comitis, conscensis
to-wish to-resist before the-doors in the-house of-the-count climbed
gradibus, quibus itum est ad easdem fores, securibus
the-steps by-which gone it-was to the-same doors with-axes
et gladiis detruncabant januas et introgressi ad obsessos,
and swords they-hewed-down the-doors and having-entered to the-besieged
fugabant eos per mediam domum eandem usque ad
they-put-to-flight them through the-middle-of house the-same right-up to
transitum, quo transire consueverat comes de domo sua
the-passage by-which to-cross was-wont the-count from house his
in ecclesiam beati Donatiani. In hoc ergo transitu, qui
into the-church of-blessed Donatian in this therefore passage which
arcuatus erat et ex lapidibus constructus, congressus maximus
arched was and from stones built the-encounter greatest
fuit, ubi cives cominus gladiis tantummodo pugnabant,
was where the-citizens hand-to-hand with-swords only fought
eo quod obsessi ulterius fugere aspernarentur. Satis vires
by-this that the-besieged further to-flee scorned enough strength

et animos suos tentantes, utrimque stabant inmobiles, sicut
and courage their testing on-both-sides they-stood immovable as
ipse murus, donec, collecta manu, cives non pugnando,
the-very wall until gathered the-band the-citizens not by-fighting
sed ruendo in obsessos, in fugam converterent ipsos, scilicet
but by-rushing upon the-besieged into flight turned them namely
Borsiardum, qui inmanis et iracundus, ferox et imperterritus,
Borsiard who huge and wrathful fierce and undaunted
robore corporeo validior, restitit civibus semper in faciem,
in-strength of-body stronger resisted the-citizens always in the-face
multos vulnerans, sternens et ictu malleatorio gladii sui
many wounding laying-low and with-a-blow hammer-like of-sword his
attonitos plurimos dejiciens. Simulque fugabant Robertum
stunned very-many throwing-down and-together they-put-to-flight Robert
puerum, in quem nemo manum mittere volebat, eo quod
the-boy on whom no-one a-hand to-lay wished by-this that
audissent de eo quod innocens traditionis diceretur, atque
they-had-heard about him that innocent of-the-betrayal he-was-said and
imo magis, quod omnibus in regno et ante traditionem et
nay rather that to-all in the-realm both before the-betrayal and
post dilectior permanserat; fugere ille nobilis neglexerat, sed
after more-beloved he-had-remained to-flee that noble-one had-neglected but
rogatu amicorum secutus est fugientes; et nisi caussa
at-the-request of-friends followed he-has the-fleeing and unless for-the-sake
ipsius fuisset, ibidem Borsiardum et suos milites simulque
of-him it-had-been there Borsiard and his knights and-together
omnes reos traditionis comprehendissent. Cumque sese
all the-guilty of-the-betrayal they-would-have-seized and-when themselves
traditores infra templum recepissent, non ulterius persecuti
the-traitors within the-temple had-withdrawn not further pursued
sunt eos cives, sed ad predam et spolia reversi sunt,
have them the-citizens but to the-booty and spoils returned they-have

discurrentes per domum comitis et domum prepositi et
running-about through the-house of-the-count and the-house of-the-provost and
dormitorium fratrum et claustrum. Consimiliter fecerunt
the-dormitory of-the-brothers and the-cloister likewise did
universi qui in obsidione aderant, sperantes thesaurum
all who in the-siege were-present hoping the-treasure
comitis se forte obtenturos et supellectilem domorum
of-the-count themselves perhaps about-to-obtain and the-furnishing of-the-houses
infra muros positarum. Et quidem in domo comitis culcitras
within the-walls placed and indeed in the-house of-the-count mattresses
plures, tapeta, linteamina, sciphos, caldaria, catenas, ferrea
many tapestries linen-sheets cups cauldrons chains iron
claustra, vincula, compedes, nervos, boias, manicas, universae
bars bonds fetters shackles collars manacles of-all
captivitatis adminicula ferrea, et fores ferreas thesauri
captivity the-appliances iron and the-doors iron of-the-treasury
comitis, et plumbeos ductus aquarum, qui a tectis
of-the-count and lead pipes of-waters which from the-roofs
aquas deduxerant, diripiebant, sine aliqua culpa credentes
waters had-led-off they-tore-away without any fault believing
se rapere potuisse. In domo prepositi etiam lectos,
themselves to-seize to-have-been-able in the-house of-the-provost also beds
scrinia, sedilia, vestes, vasa et universam supellectilem ejus
chests seats clothes vessels and all furnishing his
rapuerunt. In cellario tam comitis quam prepositi et
they-seized in the-cellar as-much of-the-count as of-the-provost and
fratrum quoque cellario, frumentorum et carnium et
of-the-brothers also in-the-cellar of-grain and of-meats and
vini et cervisiorum copiam quantam rapuerint, infinitum
of-wine and of-beers the-plenty how-great they-seized endless
relinquo. In dormitorio fratrum, quod vestibus pretiosis
I-leave in the-dormitory of-the-brothers which with-garments precious

et caris stratum stabat, tam magnam rapinam exercuerunt,
and dear spread stood so great a-plunder they-carried-out
ut non cessarent a tempore ingressus in castrum usque
that not they-ceased from the-time of-entry into the-castle right-up
in noctem ire et redire ad asportandum.
into night to-go and to-return for carrying-off

42 · THE PROVOST'S ESCAPE

The besieged hold only the church. The provost had escaped on the Thursday night before by a rope, paying four hundred marks to Walter the butler, who led him to Moer and abandoned him there. From the tower the besieged hurl millstones at the plunderers, try to fire the school roof, and guard the church floor.

Obsessis ergo nihil preter solum templum relictum est,
to-the-besieged therefore nothing except the-sole temple left was
et absque eis quae in templo secum comportaverant
and apart-from those-things which into the-temple with-them they-had-carried
victualibus, scilicet vino et carnibus, farina, caseis, leguminibus
victuals namely wine and meats flour cheeses legumes
et ceteris necessariis vitae. Hic pretereundum non est
and other needs of-life here to-be-passed-over not is
qui erant capita inter obsessos, scilicet castellanus Haket,
who were the-heads among the-besieged namely the-castellan Haket
Borsiardus, Robertus puer, Walterus filius Lamberti in
Borsiard Robert the-boy Walter son of-Lambert at
Reddenburg, Wlfricus Knop. Nam prepositus Bertulfus
Aardenburg Wulfric Cnop for the-provost Bertulf
tertia nocte, id est nocte diei Jovis ante captionem
on-the-third night that is on-the-night of-the-day of-Jove before the-capture
castri, data pecunia Waltero butelgir usque ad quadringentas
of-the-castle given money to-Walter the-butler up to four-hundred

marcas, de subtus lobium suum funibus appensus, elapsus
marks from under gallery his by-ropes hung slipped-away
est solus, melius confidens illi Galtero quam ulli hominum
was alone better trusting that Walter than any of-men
super terram, qui tamen ipsum transductum in desertum
upon earth who yet him led-across into a-deserted
locum, scilicet Mor, solum reliquit, expositum inimicis suis et
place namely Moer alone left exposed to-enemies his and
derelictum fugae, cum tamen in loco illo sibi ignoto nesciret
abandoned to-flight since yet in place that to-him unknown he-knew-not
quo fugeret et quem fugeret. Igitur obsessi in templo
whither he-should-flee and whom he-should-flee therefore the-besieged in the-temple
conscensa turre molares lapides obruebant super vagantes in
climbed the-tower millstone stones hurled upon those-roaming in
castro, et predam universae supellectilis ferentibus gravem
the-castle and the-booty of-all the-furnishing on-those-carrying a-heavy
injecerunt casum, ubi plures obruti letaliter perierunt. Sagittas
they-threw fall where many crushed mortally perished arrows
statim direxerant contra fenestras turris victores castri,
at-once had-directed against the-windows of-the-tower the-victors of-the-castle
ut non posset in turri quisquam caput per fenestras
so-that not could in the-tower anyone a-head through the-windows
emergere, cui non injicerentur mille sagittae, mille
put-out on-whom not would-be-thrown a-thousand arrows a-thousand
fundarum jactus, ita ut tota turris sagittis inherentibus
of-slings shots so that the-whole tower with-arrows sticking
hirsuta staret. Cumque nihil super hoc proficerent utrimque,
bristling stood and-when nothing upon this they-gained on-both-sides
obsessi flammas injecerant in tectum scolarum, quod
the-besieged flames had-thrown onto the-roof of-the-schools which
templo adjacuerat, per hoc volentes domum prepositi
to-the-temple had-lain-adjoining by this wishing the-house of-the-provost

exurere, cui idem tectum vicinum fuit. At in illo facto
to-burn to-which the-same roof near was but in that deed
frustrati, deorsum in pavimentum templi et in choro
thwarted down onto the-floor of-the-temple and in the-choir
et in sanctuario interiore discursitantes, armati et precauti
and in the-sanctuary inner running-about armed and wary
sollicitabantur, ne auderet aliquis per fenestras introgredi
they-were-anxious lest should-dare anyone through the-windows to-enter
ad ipsos, aut per januas ecclesiae violenter irrumpere.
to them or through the-doors of-the-church violently to-burst-in

43 · THE CHURCH FLOOR TAKEN

A youth of Ghent climbs in through a sanctuary window to loot and is killed by a falling chest lid. The men of Ghent want the count's body, and the citizens of Bruges nearly fight them before the wiser calm them. The citizens storm the church and drive the besieged up into the gallery where they murdered the count, while stones from above wreck the choir.

Summo igitur mane, unus ex Gendensium turba juvenis
very therefore early one from of-the-men-of-Ghent the-crowd a-youth
per scalam ascendens ad capitalem sanctuarii ecclesiae
by a-ladder climbing to the-head of-the-sanctuary of-the-church
fenestram, gladio et conto perfringens opus vitreum
window with-sword and pike breaking-through the-work glass
et ferreum, illapsusque audaciter aperuit scrinium unum
and iron and-slipping-in boldly opened chest one
sanctuarii, ut predam quereret. Inclinus quoque revolvere
of-the-sanctuary that booty he-might-seek bent-over also to-turn-over
ceperat et manum hac et illac deducere, cum janua scrinii
he-had-begun and the-hand here and there to-draw-along when the-lid of-the-chest

gravis et in casum preceps percuteret furem et predonem
heavy and into falling headlong struck thief and robber
illum, et rejecit a se emortuum; sed isdem mortuus
that and threw from itself half-dead but the-same dead-man
plumarum congerie contectus, diu ibidem jacuerat, nam
of-feathers by-a-heap covered long there had-lain for
maximus plumarum cumulus in sanctuario jacebat. Interea
a-very-great of-feathers pile in the-sanctuary was-lying meanwhile
dum diu a Gendensibus expectaretur ille juvenis, et non
while long by the-men-of-Ghent was-awaited that youth and not
rediret, volebant violenter conscendere per fenestram; nam
returned they-wished violently to-climb through the-window for
juvenem illum premiserant, velut audacissimum, per quem
youth that they-had-sent-ahead as the-most-daring through whom
temptarent ingressum templi, et sic comitis corpus obtinere
they-might-try the-entry of-the-temple and thus of-the-count the-body to-obtain
crediderant. Contra quos nostri cives armis occurrebant,
they-had-believed against whom our citizens with-arms ran-to-meet
nec unquam perpessi sunt Gendenses vel etiam loqui
nor ever suffered have the-men-of-Ghent or even to-speak
coram se de auferendo comitis corpore. Valde et supra
before themselves about carrying-off of-the-count the-body greatly and beyond
quam mihi credat aliquis, indignati sunt cives nostri quod
what me may-believe anyone indignant were citizens our that
aliquis hominum a loco nostro corpus auferre moliretur.
any of-men from place our the-body to-take-away should-attempt
Contendentibus illis, exerebant gladios ad invicem et factus
contending them they-bared swords at each-other and made
est tumultus et concursus universorum ad pugnam. Ceterum
was a-tumult and running-together of-all to the-fight moreover
obsessi tunc, quantum poterant, infestabant victores, quorum
the-besieged then as-much-as they-could harassed the-victors of-whom

sapientiores, audito tumultu et de victoria et lite,
the-wiser heard the-tumult both about the-victory and the-quarrel
scilicet quod Gendenses contenderent se jure corpus
namely that the-men-of-Ghent contended themselves by-right the-body
comitis secum apud Gandavum transferre debere, eo
of-the-count with-themselves to Ghent to-carry to-be-obliged by-this
quod suis scalarum instrumentis perterruissent obsessos et
that with-their of-ladders engines they-had-terrified the-besieged and
coegissent eos fugere a castro, et quod nostri cives e
had-forced them to-flee from the-castle and that our citizens on-the
contra assererent, nihil valuisse instrumenta eorum, nihil
contrary asserted nothing to-have-availed engines their nothing
aliud in obsidione fecisse quam furari et sumptum gravem
else in the-siege to-have-done than to-steal and expense heavy
facere in loco nostro, dirimendo lites sedabant tumultum
to-make in place our by-settling the-quarrels calmed the-tumult
dicentes: «Nolite contendere, sed potius simul expectemus
saying do-not to-contend but rather together let-us-wait
quoadusque Deus nobis et regno contradiderit comitem
until God to-us and to-the-realm shall-have-handed-over a-count
bonum et legitimum, cujus et principum regni et
good and lawful whose and of-the-princes of-the-realm and
episcopi nostri et totius cleri consiliis de corpore fiat
of-bishop our and of-all the-clergy counsels about the-body be-made
dispensatio.» Atque in hunc modum pacificati, instituerunt
the-disposal and in this manner pacified they-appointed
invasores templi viros armatos et audaces ad invasionem.
as-invaders of-the-temple men armed and bold for the-invasion
Collecto ergo robore, impetuose introierunt et irruperunt
gathered therefore the-strength impetuously they-went-in and burst
ad januam templi versus claustrum et fugaverunt obsessos
to the-door of-the-temple toward the-cloister and put-to-flight the-besieged

a pavimentis inferius usque in solarium, in quo impie
from the-floors below right-up into the-gallery in which impiously
et fraudulenter tradiderant dignissimum terrae consulem,
and fraudulently they-had-betrayed the-most-worthy of-the-land consul
simulque cum domino suo servi arctati sunt, quamquam
and-together with lord their the-serfs confined were although
sine velle ipsorum cum domino suo consule clausi
without the-will of-them with lord their the-consul shut-in
forent. Tunc tandem Gendenses in sanctuarium ingressi,
they-were then at-last the-men-of-Ghent into the-sanctuary entered
requirebant juvenem illum, quem in mane premiserant
sought youth that whom in the-morning they-had-sent-ahead
per capitalem sanctuarii fenestram, et repererunt in
through the-head of-the-sanctuary window and they-found in
plumis conquassatum et mortuum, quem alii mentiebantur
the-feathers shattered and dead whom others falsely-claimed
occisum a Borsiardo, cum illaberetur incaute in templum.
slain by Borsiard when he-slipped-in incautiously into the-temple
Neque enim describere locus est, quantus jactus fuisset
nor for to-describe the-place is how-great the-throwing had-been
lapidum a solario super victores pavimentorum templi, et
of-stones from the-gallery upon the-victors of-the-floors of-the-temple and
quot obruti, conquassati, telis et sagittis vulnerati, ita
how-many crushed shattered by-missiles and by-arrows wounded so
ut totus chorus templi plenus jaceret cumulo lapidum
that the-whole choir of-the-temple full lay with-a-heap of-stones
et nusquam pavimentum appareret. Parietes et vitreae
and nowhere the-floor appeared the-walls and glass
fenestrae in circuitu et status simul et sedes fratrum
windows in circuit and the-stalls together and the-seats of-the-brothers
dejectae sunt, et ita totum erat confusum et dirutum, ut
thrown-down were and so all was confused and ruined that

nulla in templo facies sancta et integra maneret, sed turpi
no in the-temple face holy and whole remained but by-foul
et informi deformitate horribilior staret quolibet carcere.
and shapeless deformity more-horrible it-stood than-any prison
Nam in solario obsessi preparaverant sibi propugnacula
for in the-gallery the-besieged had-prepared for-themselves bulwarks
ex scriniis et tabulis altarium et formis et scamnis et
from chests and boards of-the-altars and forms and benches and
cetera supellectile templi et colligaverant ea funibus
other furnishing of-the-temple and had-bound them with-the-ropes
campanarum. Campanas quoque in frusta et plumbum,
of-the-bells the-bells also into pieces and the-lead
quo antiquitus contecta erat ecclesia, diviserunt, cum
with-which of-old covered was the-church they-divided with
eo obruentes alios. Infra enim ecclesiam, scilicet in choro,
it crushing others within for the-church namely in the-choir
pugnabatur accerrime, sed a turri et a januis turris
it-was-fought most-sharply but from the-tower and from the-doors of-the-tower
tanta strages facta est, ut non sufficiat mihi describere
so-great a-slaughter made was that not suffices for-me to-describe
neque percussorum et vulneratorum multitudinem prosequi.
nor of-the-struck and wounded the-multitude to-follow-out

Gervase and Desiderius, Isaac's brother, hoist banners on the count's house, as the traitors had on the siege's first day. From the tower the young Robert calls Desiderius the greater traitor, who urged the betrayal and now joins the pursuit.

Igitur domum comitis superiorem obtinuit Gervasius miles et
therefore the-house of-the-count upper held Gervase knight and
camerarius et consiliarius comitum regni cum fortitudine
chamberlain and counselor of-the-counts of-the-realm with strength
magna et jussit affigi signa sua in summa arce domus;
great and ordered to-be-fixed banners his on the-highest top of-the-house
namque ex invidia obsessorum hoc factum est, qui statim
for out-of envy of-the-besieged this done was who at-once
primo die obsidionis et etiam in die qua dominum
on-the-first day of-the-siege and also on the-day on-which lord
suum servi impii tradiderant, signa contra inimicos ferebant.
their the-serfs impious had-betrayed banners against enemies bore
Unde Willelmus ille Iprensis signa, quasi dominus et terrae
whence William that of-Ypres banners as-if lord and of-the-land
consul, ferebat contra quosdam, qui sibi redditus consulares
consul bore against certain-men who to-him the-revenues consular
solvere denegaverant, quia illum consulem fore aspernati
to-pay had-refused because him consul to-be they-scorned
sunt. Traditores quidem illi die primo obsidionis nihil
have the-traitors indeed those on-the-day first of-the-siege nothing
humiliter agentes, quia principes regni sibi conscios in
humbly doing because the-princes of-the-realm to-themselves privy in
scelere suo et securos in eadem fide et amicitia crediderant,
crime their and secure in the-same faith and friendship they-had-believed
cum ipsis signa sua in suprema arce camerae comitis
with them banners their on the-highest top of-the-chamber of-the-count

et in summitate turris ecclesiae et in minoribus tribus
and on the-summit of-the-tower of-the-church and on the-lesser three
et in lobio prepositi simul in exitu portarum superbe
and on the-gallery of-the-provost together at the-exit of-the-gates proudly
prefixerant, ut per hoc appareret ipsos fuisse dominos,
had-fixed that through this it-might-appear them to-have-been lords
qui expectarent regni proceres, amicos et conscios suos,
who awaited of-the-realm the-nobles friends and accomplices their
per quorum potentiam obsidionem destruerent et inultum
through whose power the-siege they-might-destroy and unavenged
maneret quod consulem tradidissent. Desiderius frater Isaac
might-remain that the-consul they-had-betrayed Desiderius brother of-Isaac
obtinuit inferiorem domum comitis cum civibus nostris et
held the-lower house of-the-count with citizens our and
fixerat signum suum in lobio comitis majore. Quem cum
had-fixed banner his on the-gallery of-the-count greater whom when
transeuntem Robertus puer in castro vidisset a turri,
passing Robert the-boy in the-castle had-seen from the-tower
improperabat ei taliter: «O Desideri, non es memor, quod
he-reproached him thus O Desiderius not are-you mindful that
tu hactenus nobis consuluisti tradere dominum consulem?
you hitherto us counseled to-betray the-lord consul
Fidem super hoc et securitatem tradidisti, et nunc, viso
faith upon this and assurance you-handed and now seen
infortunio nostro, gaudes et persequeris nos. O utinam
misfortune our you-rejoice and pursue us O would-that
liceret mihi exire! ad singulare bellum te evocarem.
it-were-permitted to-me to-go-out to single combat you I-would-call-out
Deum testor, quod tu magis sis traditor quam nos,
God I-call-to-witness that you more are a-traitor than we

eo quod olim dominum, modo nos tradidisti.» Quod
by-this that once the-lord now us you-have-betrayed which
improperium non sine omnium nota tulit.
reproach not without of-all the-notice he-bore

45 · THANCMAR'S NEPHEWS

Thancmar's nephews plant their banners on the provost's house and try to send its grain and wine to their estate. The citizens, who blame them for the whole affair, fall on them with drawn swords, and the princes calm the uproar only by making them take down their banners and leave under escort. The besieged keep up their watches and trumpets, hoping for help from the princes.

In domo quoque prepositi nepotes Thancmari, quorum
in the-house also of-the-provost the-nephews of-Thancmar for-whose
caussa in parte traditio facta est, ut aiunt, prefixerant
sake in part the-betrayal done was as they-say had-fixed
signa sua superbe et gloriose ac potenter. Quod valde
banners their proudly and gloriously and powerfully which very
aegre ferebant omnes, et cives nostri nimis indoluerant,
ill bore all and citizens our exceedingly had-grieved
eo quod prepositus et sui ante tempus traditionis viri
by-this that the-provost and his-men before the-time of-the-betrayal men
essent religiosi, amicabiliter se habentes erga eos et
were devout in-a-friendly-way themselves holding toward them and
cum honore omnes tractassent in loco nostro et in regno
with honor all they-had-treated in place our and in the-realm
commanentes. Hi ergo predicti, postquam obtinuissent domos
dwelling these therefore aforesaid after they-had-held the-houses
et signa affixerant, quicquid intus repererant, quasi proprium
and banners had-fixed whatever within they-had-found as-if their-own

possidebant. Intumuit ergo cor civium nostrorum contra
they-possessed swelled therefore the-heart of-citizens our against
nepotes Thancmari, et querebant occasionem pugnandi et
the-nephews of-Thancmar and they-sought an-occasion of-fighting and
interficiendi illos. Igitur ad vesperam sabbati illius, cum
of-killing them therefore toward the-evening of-Saturday that when
frumenta et vinum, quod obtinuerant in domo prepositi, apud
the-grain and wine which they-had-got in the-house of-the-provost to
rus suum emitterent nepotes Thancmari, occurrerunt
estate their they-were-sending-out the-nephews of-Thancmar ran-to-meet
eis cives nostri in claustro et extractis gladiis, vas vini
them citizens our in the-cloister and drawn swords the-vessel of-wine
truncabant, et concitatus est tumultus infinitus et clauserunt
they-backed and stirred-up was a-tumult endless and closed
cives portas suburbii, ut nemo aufugeret nepotum illorum.
the-citizens the-gates of-the-suburb that no-one should-escape of-nephews those
At obsessi evocaverant cives, olim amicos suos, obsecrantes
but the-besieged had-called-out the-citizens once friends their beseeching
ut inimicos illos perderent, quorum caussa gravissimum
that enemies those they-should-destroy for-whose sake the-heaviest
nefas perpetrassent. Nepotes igitur Thancmari in eadem
wickedness they-had-committed the-nephews therefore of-Thancmar in the-same
domo prepositi resistere cum non potuissent civibus,
house of-the-provost to-resist since not they-could the-citizens
querebant subterfugere, Thancmarus ipse fugiendo pervenerat
sought to-slip-away Thancmar himself by-fleeing had-arrived
ad exitum unius portae, et quia clausa fuit, cum quereretur
at the-exit of-one gate and because shut it-was when it-was-asked
ab eo quid caussae fuisset tanti tumultus, mentitus
from him what of-cause had-been of-so-great tumult lied
est congressum fieri inter obsessos et obsidentes.
he-has an-encounter to-be-made between the-besieged and the-besiegers

Tandem latuit in domuncula una, quousque videret
at-last he-lay-hidden in little-house one until he-should-see
quid de nepotibus suis ageretur. Cumque cives per
what about nephews his would-be-done and-when the-citizens over
pontem Sancti Petri et per pontem castri armata manu
the-bridge of-Saint Peter and over the-bridge of-the-castle with-armed hand
transirent, obviam eis occurrit Walterus butelgir et ceteri
crossed to-meet them ran Walter the-butler and the-other
principes obsidionis, conatu gravi compescentes tumultum.
princes of-the-siege with-effort heavy checking the-tumult
Tot equidem lanceati stabant in foro, ut crederet
so-many indeed lance-bearers stood in the-market that would-believe
aliquis superficiem hastarum silvam fuisse densissimam.
anyone the-surface of-the-spears a-forest to-have-been most-dense
Nec mirum, cum universi totius regni eodem die, tum
nor wonderful since all of-the-whole realm on-the-same day now
pro preda, tum pro vindicta, tum magis pro auferendo
for booty now for vengeance now more for carrying-off
consulis funere, tum pro admiratione omnium quae ibidem
of-the-consul the-corpse now for wonder of-all-things which there
fiebant, in suburbium confluxerant. Clamabant itaque
were-being-done into the-suburb had-flowed-together cried and-so
omnes Thancmarum et nepotes ejus jure suspendi debere,
all Thancmar and nephews his by-right to-be-hanged ought
eo quod eorum caussa comes occisus et prepositus et
by-this that for-their sake the-count slain and the-provost and
ejus nepotes obsessi et plures de ipsorum familia interfecti
his nephews besieged and many of their household killed
et turpissima morte dampnati fuissent, ideoque non
and by-most-shameful death condemned had-been and-therefore not
posse eos perpeti, ut parcerent eis, imo turpiori
to-be-able them to-endure that they-should-spare them nay by-a-more-shameful

et magis crudeli nece dampnarent, qui dominos suos,
and more cruel death they-should-condemn who lords their
prepositum et fratres simulque ejus nepotes, potentiores
the-provost and brothers and-together his nephews more-powerful
et nobiliores in comitatu, fraude, seditione, coemptione
and nobler in the-countship by-fraud by-sedition by-bribery
facta, apud comitem deposuissent. Vix ergo turbatos cives
made with the-count had-deposed scarcely therefore the-disturbed citizens
principes cohibebant, quia castellanus Hacket et Robertus
the-princes restrained because the-castellan Haket and Robert
puer cum amicis et propinquis ipsorum civium in turri
the-boy with friends and kinsmen of-them of-the-citizens on the-tower
altiore stantes annuebant brachiis et manibus, ut insultum
higher standing nodded with-arms and hands that an-assault
facerent in nepotes Thancmari, qui ita arroganter in
they-should-make on the-nephews of-Thancmar who so arrogantly into
domum prepositi conscenderant, signa victricia affixerant,
the-house of-the-provost had-climbed banners victorious had-fixed
quasi suis viribus castrum expugnassent, cum eo tempore
as-if by-their strength the-castle they-had-stormed when at-that time
quo cives ingressi sunt violenter in castrum, nepotes
in-which the-citizens entered have violently into the-castle the-nephews
Thancmari domi et in rure suo dormirent. Illa tandem
of-Thancmar at-home and on estate their were-sleeping on-that at-last
conditione sedatus est tumultus, quatenus ipsa hora
condition calmed was the-tumult that at-that-very hour
exirent domum et signa quae affixerant verecunde
they-should-go-out from-the-house and the-banners which they-had-fixed shamefacedly
tollerent et discederent. At illi conductu principum
should-take-down and should-depart but they under-the-conduct of-the-princes
periculoso sibi recesserunt inde, in tantum diffidentes
dangerous to-themselves withdrew thence so much distrusting

civibus, ut unusquisque nepotum Thancmari equo et suo
the-citizens that each-one of-the-nephews of-Thancmar on-horse and his
secum ductore insidente abscederet. Et sic relicta est domus
with-him guide sitting rode-off and thus left was the-house
sub tutela militum et civium nostri loci, et frumentum
under the-guard of-the-knights and of-the-citizens of-our place and the-grain
et vinum dispertitum est inter principes obsidionis et
and wine divided was among the-princes of-the-siege and
cives, quorum viribus victoria illo die consummata est.
the-citizens whose by-strength the-victory on-that day completed was
Et tandem clausus ille dies sollicitos nimis reddidit super
and at-last closed that day anxious exceedingly made-them about
noctis subsequentis temporibus observandis, et in curte
of-the-night following the-times to-be-watched both in the-court
castri et in claustro fratrum simulque in domo prepositi
of-the-castle and in the-cloister of-the-brothers and-together in the-house of-the-provost
et refectorio atque fratrum dormitorio. Nam illo usi sunt
and the-refectory and of-the-brothers the-dormitory for that used have
consilio obsessi, ut claustri et domorum tecta circa
counsel the-besieged that of-the-cloister and of-the-houses the-roofs around
templum flammis destruerent, ne accessum aliquo modo ad
the-temple with-flames they-should-destroy lest access in-any way to
ipsos obsidentes haberent. Inde stupefacti custodes noctis
them the-besiegers should-have thence stupefied the-guards of-the-night
sollicitudine et metu pervigilabant. Saepe obsessi clanculo
with-anxiety and fear watched-through often the-besieged secretly
egressi nocturnis horis incusserunt timores custodibus.
having-gone-out at-night hours struck fears into-the-guards
Ceterum in tam arcto loco turris templi, traditores
moreover in so narrow a-place of-the-tower of-the-temple the-traitors
vigiles suos omni nocte obsidionis tubis et buccinis
watchmen their every night of-the-siege with-trumpets and horns

resonare jusserant et cornu canere, adhuc evadere sperantes,
to-resound had-ordered and the-horn to-sound still to-escape hoping
eo quod principes regni per litteras in turrim sagitta
by-this that the-princes of-the-realm by letters into the-tower by-arrow
transjectas amicitiam et auxilium offerrent.
shot friendship and help were-offering

46 · THE PROVOST'S FLIGHT

Guided by a crafty knight at Walter the butler's order, the provost hides at Keiem, flees to his wife at Furnes, and goes barefoot to Warneton, doing penance. Galbert marvels that the man who once feared a flea's bite now roams his own land an exile.

Prepositus vero conductorem habens fratrem Fulconis canonici
the-provost but a-conductor having the-brother of-Fulk canon
Brudgensis, militem subdolum, ex precepto Walteri butelgir,
of-Bruges a-knight crafty by order of-Walter the-butler
nocte prescripta diei Jovis, pervectus est equo apud
on-the-night aforesaid of-the-day of-Jove carried was on-horse to
Kaihem villam ejusdem Walteri et Borsiardi. Cumque parum
Keiem the-village of-the-same Walter and of-Borsiard and-when a-little
ibi delituisset et accusatus fuisset, cum uno comite
there he-had-lain-hidden and accused he-had-been with one companion
nocte Furnas ad uxorem suam fugit, et inde iterum, quia
by-night to-Furnes to wife his he-fled and thence again because
latere non poterat, in nocte sancta Parasceve transivit
to-lie-hidden not he-could on the-night holy of-Good-Friday he-crossed
apud Warnestum, sicut audivimus, eadem nocte, et fugam
to Warneton as we-have-heard on-the-same night and flight
institit et nudis pedibus penam peccatorum suorum sponte
pressed and with-bare feet the-penalty of-sins his willingly

perpessus ibat, ut tanto peccatori Deus indulgeret, quod
enduring he-went that to-so-great a-sinner God might-pardon what
contra consulem pium deliquerat. Satisque probabile fuit,
against the-consul pious he-had-done-wrong and-quite probable it-was
quia postea statim cum captus fuisset, pedum ipsius plantae
because afterward at-once when captured he-had-been of-the-feet of-him the-soles
excorticatae apparuerunt, quia in itinere nocturno ad lapides
flayed appeared because on the-journey by-night against the-stones
in tantum offenderat pedes, ut sanguis ex eis efflueret.
so much he-had-struck the-feet that blood from them flowed
Et vere gravissime vir iste dolebat, qui pridem omnibus
and truly most-grievously man this suffered who formerly over-all
imperitabat, divitiis et honore seculi pollebat, et cum in
commanded in-riches and honor of-the-world was-strong and when in
voluptate floreret, punctum pulicis ut jaculum formidaret,
pleasure he-flourished the-bite of-a-flea as a-javelin he-dreaded
ecce! solus et infra terminos suos exul solus pererrabat.
behold alone and within bounds his an-exile alone he-wandered
Revertamur ergo ab excursu isto ad vigilias noctis
let-us-return therefore from digression this to the-watches of-the-night
prefatae, in qua timores nocturnos cum ad invicem incuterent
aforesaid in which fears nightly when to each-other struck
sibi tam obsidentes quam obsessi, pertesi et fatigati
on-themselves as-much the-besiegers as the-besieged weary and wearied
utrimque diem pro nocte transposuerant ad dormitandum.
on-both-sides the-day for night had-shifted for sleeping

King Louis of France writes from Arras ordering the princes to come and elect a count, since the land is in turmoil and almost all the towns have sworn never to accept William of Ypres, a bastard whose mother carded wool. A letter from Count Charles's nephew in Alsace claims the county by kinship; the princes call it forged, attack the tower to cow the besieged, and leave for the king.

Tertio decimo kal. aprilis, dominica, in nocte Benedicti
on-the-third and-tenth kalends of-April on-Sunday on the-night of-Benedict
abbatis, ex Atrebato rex Franciae Lodewicus mandavit
abbot from Arras the-king of-France Louis sent
principibus et baronibus obsidionis predictae salutem, fidem
to-the-princes and barons of-the-siege aforesaid greeting faith
et auxilium; insuper omnem gratiam pro vindicando nepote
and help besides all favor for avenging nephew
suo et Flandriarum aequissimo consule Karolo, quem justius
his and of-the-Flanders most-equitable consul Charles whom more-justly
decuerat fuisse regem quam pessimorum traditorum
it-had-befitted to-have-been king than of-most-wicked traitors
comitem: «Non habeo quidem ad vos ad presens transeundi
count not I-have indeed to you at present of-crossing
opportunitatem, eo quod festinantius cum paucis huc
the-opportunity by-this that too-hastily with few hither
descenderem auditum et scitum eventum rei et
I-should-come-down heard and known the-outcome of-the-matter and
obsidionis. Non enim sapienter mihi agere visum est in manus
of-the-siege not for wisely to-me to-act seemed it-has into the-hands
traditorum terrae incidere, quoniam, sicut intelleximus,
of-the-traitors of-the-land to-fall since as we-have-understood
plures sunt adhuc qui super obsessos dolent et eorum scelera
many are still who over the-besieged grieve and their crimes

defendunt et ad eorum evasionem omni modo laborant. Igitur
defend and for their escape in-every way labor therefore
quia terra conturbata est, et conjurationes jam factae
because the-land thrown-into-confusion is and conspiracies already made
sunt in personam Willelmi, ut violenter regnum obtineat, et
are in the-person of-William that violently the-realm he-may-hold and
contra eum omnes fere de civitatibus adjuraverunt, se
against him all nearly of the-cities have-sworn themselves
nullo modo Willelmum illum in comitem recepturos eo
in-no way William that as count about-to-receive by-this
quod spurius sit, natus scilicet ex nobili patre et matre
that a-bastard he-is born namely of a-noble father and of-a-mother
ignobili, quae lanas carpere, dum viveret ipsa, non cessaret,
low-born who wool to-card while she-lived she not ceased
volo et precipio vobis, sine dilatione coram me convenite,
I-wish and command you without delay before me come-together
et communi consilio eligite comitem utilem vobis, qualem et
and by-common counsel choose a-count useful to-you such-as both
terrae et incolis preesse consenseritis. Nec poterit
over-the-land and over-the-inhabitants to-be-over you-shall-have-agreed nor shall-be-able
diu terra sine consule fore, nisi cum graviore periculo
long the-land without a-consul to-be except with heavier danger
quam modo inmineat.» Cumque perlectae sunt litterae coram
than now hangs-over and-when read-through were the-letters before
universis, ecce! dum nondum respondissent litteris regis
all behold while not-yet they-had-answered the-letters of-the-king
utrum irent an non, supervenit alius nuntius nepotis
whether they-would-go or not came-upon-them another messenger of-the-nephew
comitis Karoli, demandans principibus obsidionis salutem
of-count Charles sending to-the-princes of-the-siege greeting
et naturalem erga omnes terrae inhabitatores dilectionis
and natural toward all of-the-land the-inhabitants of-love

affectum: «Certum est vobis omnibus meae sorti et potestati
the-affection certain it-is to-you all to-my lot and power
regnum Flandriae post mortem domini mei consulis jure
the-realm of-Flanders after the-death of-lord my the-consul by-right
cognationis pertinere. Idcirco considerate et caute agere vos
of-kinship to-belong therefore with-consideration and carefully to-act you
volo super electionem meae personae, et premonitos vos rogo,
I-wish about the-choice of-my person and forewarned you I-ask
ne me alienum a regno faciatis, qui jure et ex debito
not me a-stranger from the-realm you-make who by-right and by debt
propinquitatis, si mihi remandaveritis, comes futurus, justus,
of-nearness if to-me you-shall-have-sent-word count about-to-be just
pacificus, tractabilis et utilitatis communis atque salutis
peaceable tractable and of-advantage common and of-safety
provisor accurro.» Tunc principes simulque omnes qui audierant
the-provider I-run-to-you then the-princes and-together all who had-heard
litteras ab Elsatan a nepote consulis transmissas, fictitias
the-letters from Alsace by the-nephew of-the-consul sent feigned
asserentes, nulla animadversione responsionis agebantur, eo
asserting with-no heed of-reply were-moved by-this
quod res publica laboraret, et rex e vicino conventum
that the-thing public labored and the-king from near the-meeting
acceleraret, neque sine longa opera pro eligendo nepote
hastened nor without long work for choosing nephew
illo se tractare posse previderent. Utilissimum ergo
that themselves to-deal to-be-able they-foresaw the-most-useful therefore
preanticipantes consilium, ex imperio regis preparabant
forestalling counsel by command of-the-king they-prepared
se ituros feria secunda et tertia. Postea tamen ex
themselves about-to-go on-the-day second and third afterward yet from
industria et consilio singulari principes, convocatis civibus,
purpose and counsel singular the-princes summoned the-citizens

proruerunt in eadem dominica ad arma et invaserunt obsessos
rushed-forth on the-same Sunday to arms and attacked the-besieged
in turri. Quodque ideo factum est, ut perterritos
in the-tower which for-this-reason done was that the-terrified
obsessos magis exanimarent et pavidos redderent, qui in
besieged more they-might-dishearten and fearful might-make who in
discessu subito ad regem a principibus facto non auderent
the-departure sudden to the-king by the-princes made not should-dare
a turri exire vel aufugere. Congressus quidem gravis
from the-tower to-go-out or to-flee an-encounter indeed heavy
utrimque factus est, et adhuc obsessos latebat cur in
on-both-sides made was and still from-the-besieged it-was-hidden why on
dominica insultum facerent in eos, cum omnes ceteras de
Sunday an-assault they-made on them when all other of
preterito tempore dominicas in pace observassent. Exierunt
past time Sundays in peace they-had-kept they-went-out
igitur secunda et tertia feria apud Atrebatum locutum
therefore on-the-second and third day to Arras to-speak
regi, ordinatis illis, qui turrim nocte ac die armati caute
to-the-king appointed those who the-tower by-night and by-day armed carefully
et fideliter, ne quis obsessorum subterfugeret, observarent.
and faithfully lest any of-the-besieged should-slip-away should-guard

Isaac is hanged. Lambert Archei, Borsiard's counselor and a deadly archer, slips down from the tower and escapes by boat to Michem, but the citizens drag him out, and his kinsman Gerbert keeps him in chains for the princes' judgment.

Decimo kal. aprilis, feria quarta, Isaac captus est et
on-the-tenth kalends of-April on-the-day fourth Isaac captured was and
suspensus, Liberator meus, finitis tribus hebdomadis ab
hanged Deliverer my ended three weeks from
occisione comitis, ante annuntiationem sanctae Mariae. Et ante
the-slaying of-the-count before the-annunciation of-holy Mary and before
in ramis palmarum, Lambertus Archei a turri elapsus
on the-branches of-palms Lambert Archei from the-tower slipping-down
evasit, fugiens apud Michem villam, navicula devectus. Hic
escaped fleeing to Michem the-village by-a-little-boat carried this-man
de consilio Borsiardi fuit, et nequiter semper egit consiliando,
of the-counsel of-Borsiard was and wickedly always acted by-counseling
agendo et ad omne nefas instigando dominos suos, idcirco
by-acting and to every wickedness by-urging lords his therefore
odiosus erat omnibus, qui in obsidione dolos illius audierant.
hateful he-was to-all who in the-siege the-wiles of-him had-heard
Cumque a tempore obsidionis intra castrum clauderetur,
and-when from the-time of-the-siege within the-castle he-was-shut
usque ad tempus quo fugam subiit ad omne negotium
right-up to the-time in-which flight he-undertook for every business
quod intus agebatur strenuus erat, in sagittando peritissimus,
which within was-done vigorous he-was in shooting most-skilled
in jaculando hastas et universa tela fortior, qui quidem
in hurling spears and all missiles stronger who indeed
stragem mortalem fecerat in hostes. Qui cum fugeret, a
a-slaughter deadly had-made against the-enemies who when he-fled by

civibus requisitus est diluculo, et per totum illum quo
the-citizens sought was at-dawn and through all that on-which
fugerat diem, nam a turri cum se furaretur, exclamabat
he-had-fled day for from the-tower when himself he-stole-away cried-out
eis qui obsederant turrim Borsiardus, quando et ad quem
to-those who had-besieged the-tower Borsiard when and to what
locum suus consiliarius et tam familiaris fugisset. Tandem
place his counselor and so intimate had-fled at-last
cives constipaverant villam, in qua fugitivus ille latuit
the-citizens had-crowded-round the-village in which fugitive that lay-hidden
et a latibulo extractum reduxerunt eum captivum et
and from the-hiding-place dragged-out brought-back him captive and
suspendio in foro nostro illum perdidissent, si eo
by-hanging in market our him they-would-have-destroyed if at-that
tempore affuissent primates obsidionis, qui in Atrebato
time had-been-present the-chief-men of-the-siege who at Arras
regno consuluerunt. Cuidam tandem Gerberto civi nostro
for-the-realm took-counsel to-a-certain at-last Gerbert citizen our
sub fidei securitate commendatus, cujus ille cognatus fuit,
under of-faith assurance entrusted whose he kinsman was
qui illum cautelae custodia in vinculis constrictum usque
who him of-caution in-custody in chains bound right-up
ad presentiam primorum comitatus conservavit, ut illorum
to the-presence of-the-first-men of-the-countship kept that by-their
judicio constaret quicquid fieri percenserent de illo.
judgment might-stand whatever to-be-done they-should-decide about him

Woltra Cruual claims that the king of England has given William of Ypres money and knights, but in truth William received five hundred pounds of the count's treasure from the traitors, and so seeks to hide his guilt. Gilbert of Bergues, a nephew of the traitors, offers to prove his innocence before the king.

Nono kal. aprilis, feria quinta, Woltra Cruual retulit
on-the-ninth kalends of-April on-the-day fifth Woltra Cruual related
nostratibus regem Anglorum cum illo Iprensi Willelmo
to-our-people the-king of-the-English with that of-Ypres William
concordiam laudasse, pecuniam infinitam simul et milites
concord to-have-praised money endless together and knights
trecentos prestitisse in auxilium ad obtinendum comitatum
three-hundred to-have-furnished in aid for obtaining the-countship
Flandriae. Quod cum falsum foret, tamen simulata fraude quasi
of-Flanders which though false it-was yet by-feigned fraud as-if
credibile diffamavit. Nam vere constitit illum Willelmum
credible he-spread-abroad for truly it-was-established that William
Iprensem suscepisse de thesauro comitis Karoli Anglicae
of-Ypres to-have-received from the-treasure of-count Charles of-English
monetae quingentas libras per manus nepotum prepositi
money five-hundred pounds by the-hands of-the-nephews of-the-provost
Bertolphi, qui impiissimi traditores sibi et regno
Bertulf who most-impious traitors to-themselves and to-the-realm
preferre conati sunt eundem Willelmum, qui ab eis quidem
to-prefer tried have the-same William who from them indeed
pecuniam, consilium et auxilium obtinuerat, et cotidianis
money counsel and help had-obtained and by-daily
litteris missis in invicem et remissis, mutuas voluntates et
letters sent to each-other and sent-back mutual wishes and

conscientiarum secreta loquebantur. A rege ergo Anglorum
of-consciences the-secrets they-spoke from the-king therefore of-the-English
mentitus est miles prefatus Willelmum suscepisse donaria
lied has knight aforesaid William to-have-received gifts
pecuniarum, volens tegere traditiosam conscientiam Willelmi,
of-moneys wishing to-cover the-treacherous conscience of-William
qui vere a traditoribus submissam pecuniam acceperat, per
who truly from the-traitors sent-secretly money had-received through
quam solidarios compararet, et sic cum virtute cum comitatum
which hired-soldiers he-might-procure and thus with strength when the-countship
obtinuisset, traditores suas voluntates consequenter per ipsum
he-had-obtained the-traitors their wishes consequently through him
consummassent. Nullus vero primatum obtenturus in regno
would-have-accomplished none but of-the-chief-men about-to-obtain in the-realm
voluit aliquid consilii vel internuntii traditorum aperte suscipere,
wished anything of-counsel or of-go-between of-the-traitors openly to-receive
eo quod statim sub nota traditionis conscriberetur. Ideo
by-this that at-once under the-mark of-betrayal he-would-be-enrolled therefore
ille Willelmus tegebat conscientiam suam, et pecuniam a
that William was-covering conscience his and the-money from
rege mentitus est sibi fuisse transmissam, quasi nihil
the-king lied he-has to-himself to-have-been sent as-if nothing
commune haberet vel secreti cum traditoribus, qui tamen
common he-had or of-secret with the-traitors who yet
manifeste ante tempus obsidionis salutem et auxilium litteris
manifestly before the-time of-the-siege greeting and help by-letters
signatis mandaverat preposito et suis. Qua tempestate
sealed had-sent-word to-the-provost and his-men at-which time
Giselbertus, nepos traditorum, castellanus Bergensis, qui
Gilbert nephew of-the-traitors castellan of-Bergues who
sub nota traditionis erat, ad castellanum Sancti Audomari
under the-mark of-betrayal was to the-castellan of-Saint Omer

subterfugerat, offerens excusationem suam et innocentiam
had-slipped-away offering excuse his and innocence
se paratum probare coram rege et paribus regni.
himself ready to-prove before the-king and the-peers of-the-realm

50 · THE ANNUNCIATION; THE MONKS OF GHENT

The Annunciation, the feast on which the Lord also suffered, is kept on Friday. On the night of the Saturday before Palm Sunday, by the scheming of the men of Ghent and with the traitors' consent, two monks of Ghent try to have the count's body let down from the gallery windows and carried off in sacks, but the watchmen sound their horns and the citizens drive off their helpers.

Octavo kal. aprilis, feria sexta, annuntiatio Domini,
on-the-eighth kalends of-April on-the-day sixth the-annunciation of-the-Lord
quo etiam die passus est Dominus, celebrata est.
on-which also day suffered has the-Lord celebrated was
Sabbato in ramis palmarum machinamento et dolis
on-Saturday on the-branches of-palms by-the-scheming and wiles
Gendensium actum est, ut per ducatum magni preconis
of-the-men-of-Ghent done it-was that through the-conduct of-the-great herald
et Ansboldi militis et civium quorundam nostrorum
and of-Ansbold the-knight and of-citizens certain of-ours
assensu simulque ex consensu traditorum, nocte hujus
with-the-assent and-together by the-consent of-the-traitors on-the-night of-this
sabbati transacta, introirent in castrum et corpus
Saturday passed they-should-go-in into the-castle and the-body
piissimi comitis per manus traditorum a fenestris
of-the-most-pious count by the-hands of-the-traitors from the-windows
solarii ejectum, Gendensis coenobii fratres susciperent, et
of-the-gallery thrown-out of-Ghent monastery the-brothers should-receive and

manticis et saccis collectum transferrent. Expectaverant quidem
in-bags and sacks gathered should-carry-off had-waited indeed
monachi duo per totum illud tempus oportunitatem furandi
monks two through all that time for-an-opportunity of-stealing
corpus. Cum igitur armati circa turrim deambularent illi qui
the-body when therefore armed around the-tower walked-about those who
monachis ducatum prestiterant, vigiles perterriti cornua
to-the-monks conduct had-furnished the-watchmen terrified horns
circumquaque personuerunt, et evocati cives et observatores
round-about sounded and called-out the-citizens and the-watchers
turris irruerunt contra preconem magnum et Ansboldum
of-the-tower rushed against the-herald great and Ansbold
militem et suorum complices, fugantes illos et vulnerantes
the-knight and of-his-men the-accomplices putting-to-flight them and wounding
quosdam timore mortis nimis affectos. Pepigerant vero
some by-fear of-death too-much affected had-agreed but
monachi coadjutoribus suis centum marchas argenti se
the-monks to-helpers their a-hundred marks of-silver themselves
daturos, si forte per illos glebam consulis obtinerent.
about-to-give if perhaps through them the-clod of-the-consul they-should-obtain
Igitur rescito eo, quod furtim et pretio aut quoquo modo
therefore found-out this that stealthily and by-price or in-whatever way
alio monachi vellent corpus consulis auferre, cives precauti
other the-monks wished the-body of-the-consul to-take-away the-citizens forewarned
cum vigilanti turba sollicitae magis sese observantiae dedere.
with watchful crowd to-anxious more themselves watchfulness gave

On Palm Sunday the burghers of Bruges and the Flemings round about swear on the relics, the judge Folpert first, to choose only a count who will rule usefully, defend the land, and care for the poor.

Sexto kal. aprilis, dominica in ramis palmarum,
on-the-sixth kalends of-April on-Sunday on the-branches of-palms
convenerunt burgenses nostri in agrum quod suburbio
came-together burghers our into the-field which to-the-suburb
adjacet intra septa villae, convocatis undecumque
lies-adjacent within the-enclosures of-the-town called-together from-everywhere
Flandrensibus circa nos, conjuraverunt simul super sanctorum
the-Flemings around us they-swore together upon of-the-saints
reliquias sic: «Ego Folpertus judex juro me talem electurum
the-relics thus I Folpert judge swear myself such about-to-choose
comitem terrae hujus, qui utiliter recturus regnum
as-count of-land this who usefully about-to-rule the-realm
predecessorum suorum comitum, jura potenter contra
of-predecessors his the-counts the-rights powerfully against
hostes patriae obtinere poterit, affectuosus et pius
the-enemies of-the-fatherland to-hold shall-be-able affectionate and pious
in pauperes, Deo devotus, semitam gradiens rectitudinis,
toward the-poor to-God devoted the-path walking of-rectitude
et talis fuerit qui utilitati communiter patriae
and such shall-have-been who for-the-advantage in-common of-the-fatherland
velit et possit prodesse.» Consequenter ergo omnes
may-wish and may-be-able to-be-of-use consequently therefore all
meliores civium juraverunt: ex Isandica Adalardus scabinus
the-better of-the-citizens swore from IJzendijke Adalard alderman
cum sua potentia, ex Ostburg Haiolum cum illius loci
with his power from Oostburg Haiolus with of-that place

potestatibus, ex Reddenburg Hugo Berlensis et illius loci
the-powers from Aardenburg Hugh of-Beerle and of-that place
fortioribus, ex Lapscura, Ostkerka, Utkerka, Liswega, Slipen,
the-stronger from Lapscheure Oostkerke Uitkerke Lissewege Slype
Gistella, Oldenburg, Lichtervelda, Jadbeca omnes fortiores et
Gistel Oudenburg Lichtervelde Jabbeke all the-stronger and
meliores simili sacramento juraverunt, eratque multitudo
better by-a-like oath swore and-there-was a-multitude
maxima conjurantium in id ipsum.
very-great of-those-swearing to that very-thing

52 · THE KING'S CHOICE

The princes return from Arras with the king's letter, and Walter the butler reports that at the king's command they have chosen William, a Norman youth raised in Flanders, as count, and that William has rewarded them with the traitors' lands. He promises that the count will remit the toll and the rent of their houses, and the citizens put off their answer until they consult the Flemings.

Tertio kal. aprilis, feria quarta, in succinctione
on-the-third kalends of-April on-the-day fourth at the-ringing
campanarum, reversi sunt ex Atrebato principes nostri, qui
of-the-bells returned have from Arras princes our who
ad regem exiverant pro consulendo regno et eligendo consule
to the-king had-gone-out for taking-counsel-for the-realm and choosing a-consul
secundum consilium regis Ludewici, Franciae imperatoris,
according-to the-counsel of-king Louis of-France emperor
atque omnium baronum ipsius et terrae nostrae electionem,
and of-all the-barons of-him and of-land our the-election
et juxta prudentem et patriae utilitati probabilem
and according-to prudent and of-the-fatherland to-the-advantage approvable

examinationem, cum tali relatu laeti et gaudentes, salutem
examination with such report glad and rejoicing greeting
et fidem ex parte regis et baronum denuntiantes nobis
and faith from part of-the-king and of-the-barons announcing to-us
et omnibus terrae incolis, atque illis precipue qui ad
and to-all of-the-land the-inhabitants and to-those especially who for
faciendam vindictam pro morte domini Karoli consulis assidua
making vengeance for the-death of-lord Charles the-consul by-constant
obsidione desudaverant: «Rex Franciae Ludovicus omnibus
siege had-sweated king of-France Louis to-all
regni filiis bonis salutem et gratiam et cum regali potentia
of-the-realm sons good greeting and grace and with royal power
in virtute Dei et fortitudine armorum, invictissimum
in the-strength of-God and in-the-might of-arms the-most-invincible
suae presentiae subsidium. Quia patriae ruinam simul
of-his presence support because of-the-fatherland the-ruin together
cum comite tradito gravem previdentes indoluimus, severitatis
with the-count betrayed heavy foreseeing we-have-grieved of-severity
rigore et inaudito ante hoc tempus supplicio vindictam
with-rigor and with-unheard-of before this time punishment vengeance
acturi convenimus; et ut deinceps terra suo consule
about-to-do we-have-come-together and that henceforth the-land with-its consul
noviter per nos electo reconcilietur et convaleat, quicquid in
newly by us chosen may-be-reconciled and may-grow-strong whatever in
subsequenti litterarum serie audieritis, obedite et facite.»
the-following of-the-letters series you-shall-have-heard obey and do
Igitur Walterus butelgir litteras protulit regis signatas
therefore Walter the-butler the-letters brought-forth of-the-king sealed
coram universis civibus nostris, qui confluxerant simul in
before all citizens our who had-flowed-together together into
agrum predictum ad auscultandum regis mandatum, atque
the-field aforesaid for hearing of-the-king the-command and

viva voce litteris testimonium confirmans ait: «Audite,
with-living voice to-the-letters witness confirming says hear
o cives nostri, quid consilii et negotii apud regem et
O citizens our what of-counsel and of-business with the-king and
ejus barones actum sit et prudenti examinatum judicio.
his barons done has-been and by-prudent examined judgment
Principes Franciae et primi terrae Flandriarum, jussu
the-princes of-France and the-first-men of-the-land of-the-Flanders by-command
et consilio regio, elegerunt vobis et terrae hujus consulem
and counsel royal have-chosen for-you and for-land this as-consul
Willelmum puerum, natum ex Normannia, nobilem quidem
William a-boy born in Normandy noble indeed
genere, et hactenus inter vos ab infantulo educatum
by-lineage and hitherto among you from little-child brought-up
in puerum et inde in juvenem fortem. Quem juxta
into a-boy and thence into a-youth strong whom according-to
omnem consuetudinem bonam consuescere liquet, et qualem
every custom good to-accustom is-clear and such-as
vultis talem habiliter flectere poteritis ad omnes bonos
you-wish such deftly to-bend you-shall-be-able to all good
mores mansuetum et docilem. Ego quidem elegi ipsum;
ways gentle and teachable I indeed chose him
Robertus Betuniae, Baldwinus ex Alst et Iwan frater ejus,
Robert of-Béthune Baldwin of Aalst and Iwain brother his
castellanus ex Insulis, et ceteri barones sublimaverunt illum
the-castellan of Lille and the-other barons raised him
in comitatu; fidem, securitatem et hominia ei fecimus
in the-countship faith assurance and homages to-him we-made
secundum omnem modum predecessorum suorum comitum
according-to every manner of-predecessors his the-counts
Flandriae. Ipse etiam nos pro merito nostri laboris donavit
of-Flanders he also us for the-merit of-our labor endowed

terris et prediis traditorum, qui secundum principum
with-lands and estates of-the-traitors who according-to of-the-princes
omnium judicia proscriptione dampnati sunt, nihilque ipsis
all the-judgments by-proscription condemned were and-nothing to-them
rerum vel miserationis preter gravissimam et inexcogitatam
of-goods or of-pity besides the-heaviest and undevised
adhuc mortem relictum constat. Precipio ergo et volo ac
still death left is-established I-command therefore and I-wish and
consulo absque dolo vobis, suburbanis simul omnibus qui
I-counsel without guile you suburbans together all who
assistitis, ut suscipiatis noviter electum comitem Willelmum
stand-by that you-receive the-newly chosen count William
et a rege comitatu donatum in dominum et consulem
and by the-king with-the-countship endowed as lord and consul
vobis. Ceterum et si quid est quod suae potestatis jure
for-you moreover and if anything there-is which of-his power by-right
donari poterit, sicut teloneum et census terrae, libenter
to-be-given shall-be-able as the-toll and the-rent of-the-land willingly
vobis condonari teloneum volentibus simul et censum
to-you to-be-remitted the-toll to-those-willing together and the-rent
mansionum vestrarum infra suburbium, me ipso denuntiante
of-dwellings your within the-suburb I myself announcing
ex parte regis et comitis novi, condonabit absque dolo
from part of-the-king and of-the-count new he-shall-remit without guile
et malo ingenio.» Auditis ergo litteris et voce litterarum
and evil device heard therefore the-letters and the-voice of-the-letters
latoris, cives procrastinaverunt responsum de receptione
bearer the-citizens put-off the-answer about the-receiving
seu electione novi consulis concedenda sibi, ut, accitis
or the-electing of-the-new consul to-be-granted to-themselves that summoned
Flandrensibus, cum quibus eligendi sacramenta constituerant,
the-Flemings with whom of-electing the-oaths they-had-established

simul aut concessionem facerent aut legationis regiae
together either the-grant they-might-make or of-the-embassy royal
litteras refutarent, et quia tenuerant diem sermonum longis
the-letters refuse and because they-had-held the-day of-speeches with-long
protractibus, reversi sunt cives a loco oratorio, ex
draggings-out returned have the-citizens from the-place of-speaking by
communi consilio mandantes pro Flandrensibus tota illa
common counsel sending-word for the-Flemings whole that
nocte, ut electionem in persona novi consulis factam
night that the-election in the-person of-the-new consul made
concederent aut reprobarent.
they-should-grant or reject

53 · THE ELECTION AGREED

The citizens agree with the Flemings and the men of Ghent to meet the king's envoys at Raverschoot on Holy Saturday. The king brings the new count to Lille, where homage is done, and on to Deinze to await the men of Ghent, who are to receive him.

Pridie kal. aprilis, feria quinta, postquam
on-the-day-before the-kalends of-April on-the-day fifth after
convenerunt cives cum Flandrigenis, ex communi consilio
came-together the-citizens with the-Flemings by common counsel
consenserunt, ut in sabbato sancto Paschae XX. milites et
they-agreed that on Saturday holy of-Easter 20 knights and
XII. e civibus seniores et prudentiores exirent obviam
12 from the-citizens the-elder and more-prudent should-go-out to-meet
nuntiis regis apud Rauenschot oppidum ad colloquium,
the-messengers of-the-king at Raverschoot the-town for a-parley
ibique Gendenses expectarent adventum nostrorum. Nam
and-there the-men-of-Ghent should-await the-arrival of-ours for

ex civitatibus Flandriae et castris burgenses stabant in
from the-cities of-Flanders and the-castles the-burghers stood in
eadem securitate et amicitia ad invicem, ut nihil in
the-same assurance and friendship to each-other that nothing in
electione nisi communiter consentirent aut contradicerent.
the-election except in-common they-should-agree-to or oppose
Qua in re burgenses nostri non sine Gendensium
which in matter burghers our not without of-the-men-of-Ghent
consilio agebant, qui a latere sibi vicinius assederant.
the-counsel acted who on the-side to-them nearer had-sat
Ibant itaque, sicut preordinaverant, in eodem sabbato sancto.
they-went and-so as they-had-arranged on the-same Saturday holy
Rex quoque, sicut in Atrebato preordinaverat, cum noviter
the-king also as at Arras he-had-arranged with the-newly
electo comite descendit apud Insulas, ubi hominia facta sunt
chosen count came-down to Lille where homages made were
comiti, sicut in Atrebato, et inde descendit in villam
to-the-count as at Arras and thence came-down into the-village
nomine Dinsa in itinere, quo iturus erat Gandavum. In
by-name Deinze on the-road by-which about-to-go he-was to-Ghent in
eadem vero villa expectabat rex Gendenses, qui reciperent
the-same but village awaited the-king the-men-of-Ghent who should-receive
novum comitem secundum preceptum suum et electionem
the-new count according-to command his and the-election
primorum terrae. Igitur concorditer actum est inter
of-the-first-men of-the-land therefore in-concord done it-was between
nostros et Gendenses de receptione novi electi, ut
ours and the-men-of-Ghent about the-receiving of-the-new chosen-one that
susciperent eum in consulem et terrae totius advocatum.
they-should-take-up him as consul and of-the-land whole advocate

On Good Friday Haket escapes from the tower to Lissewege. On Holy Saturday the men of Bruges and Ghent choose William as count and do him homage, and Gervase is made castellan of Bruges, a reward short of his merit, for on the day of the murder he alone began the vengeance. On Easter the traitors take communion in the tower and shoot at passers-by.

Kal. aprilis, feria sexta, in die Parasceve, castellanus
on-the-kalends of-April on-the-day sixth on the-day of-Good-Friday the-castellan
Hacket a turri evasit solus, et transivit apud Liswega,
Haket from the-tower escaped alone and crossed to Lissewege
et ibi latuit cum filia sua, quam ibidem duxerat olim
and there lay-hidden with daughter his whom there had-married once
miles magni generis et divitiarum plenus; expectabat enim
a-knight of-great lineage and of-riches full was-awaiting for
ille fugitivus quid deinceps ageret.
that fugitive what thereafter he-should-do
Quarto nonas aprilis, in sabbato sancto Paschae, quidam
on-the-fourth nones of-April on Saturday holy of-Easter certain
cives nostri et Gendenses qui a colloquio reversi
citizens our and the-men-of-Ghent who from the-parley returned
sunt, elegerunt Willelmum in comitem sibi et
have chose William as count for-themselves and
patriae, hominia, fidem et securitatem facientes comiti
for-the-fatherland homages faith and assurance making to-the-count
secundum morem predecessorum suorum comitum. Eodem
according-to the-custom of-predecessors his the-counts on-the-same
die Gervasius constitutus est castellanus in castro nostro
day Gervase appointed was castellan in castle our
Brudgensi a rege et comite novo, cui suum meritum
of-Bruges by the-king and the-count new to-whom his merit

nondum per hoc in totum recompensatum est, cum tot
not-yet through this in whole repaid was since so-many
et tanta in obsidione egisset, quae memoriae diligenter
and so-great-things in the-siege he-had-done which to-the-memory diligently
commendo lectorum. Nam in ipsa hora, qua tradebatur
I-commend of-readers for in the-very hour in-which was-being-betrayed
comes Karolus, ipse flendo et crines vestesque discerpendo,
count Charles he weeping and hair and-clothes tearing
complosis manibus, clamabat discurrens in castro haec:
with-clapped hands cried running-about in the-castle these-things
«Heu! Heu! quod solus vindicare non possum dominum
alas alas that alone to-avenge not I-can lord
meum et aequissimum principem terrae nostrae, quem etiam
my and most-equitable prince of-land our whom even
nullus hominum defensare aut vindicare presumit.» Ibique
no-one of-men to-defend or to-avenge presumes and-there
principium vindictae ipse solus Gervasius constituit, et
the-beginning of-vengeance he alone Gervase set and
postmodum, secum Deo ipso pugnante, feliciter consummavit.
afterward with-him God himself fighting happily he-completed
Tertio nonas aprilis, dominica sancta Paschae, in Theodosiae
on-the-third nones of-April on-Sunday holy of-Easter on of-Theodosia
virginis, littera dominica B, in expectatione suspensus erat
the-virgin the-letter dominical B in expectation suspended was
et clerus et populus pro adventu regis et comitis
both the-clergy and the-people for the-arrival of-the-king and of-the-count
apud nos. Quo die illi traditores pessimi communicaverunt
among us on-which day those traitors most-wicked communicated
se corpori et sanguini Christi, nescitur tamen per
themselves with-the-body and blood of-Christ it-is-not-known yet by
quem sacerdotum hoc factum fuerit. Eodem die sagittis
which of-the-priests this done had-been on-the-same day with-arrows

infestabant in castro transeuntes obsessi et pessimi traditores
harassed in the-castle the-passers-by the-besieged and most-wicked traitors
nullius fidei et reverentiae, tantummodo sub expectatione
of-no faith and reverence only under expectation
turpissimae mortis sibi futurae vitam continuantes.
of-most-shameful death to-themselves about-to-be life continuing

55 · THE KING AND THE COUNT RECEIVED; THE CHARTER SWORN

On 5 April the king and the new count are received at Bruges with relics and procession. The next day, before the shrines, the charter of Saint Donatian's free election of its provost and the count's grant remitting the toll and house rent are read and sworn, the men of Aardenburg's demands are granted, and the count promises never to let the traitors' heirs hold land in Flanders.

Non. aprilis, feria tertia Aqua sapientiae, in crepusculo
on-the-nones of-April on-the-day third Water of-wisdom at the-twilight
noctis, rex simul cum noviter electo consule Willelmo,
of-night the-king together with the-newly chosen consul William
Flandriarum marchione, Bruggas in suburbium nostrum
of-the-Flanders marquis to-Bruges into suburb our
venit, cui obviam processerant canonici Sancti Donatiani,
came to-whom to-meet had-gone-forth the-canons of-Saint Donatian
reliquias sanctorum afferentes, et in sollempni processu regio
the-relics of-the-saints bringing and in solemn procession in-royal
more regem et comitem novum cum gaudio suscipientes.
manner the-king and the-count new with joy receiving
Octavo idus aprilis, feria quarta, convenerunt rex et
on-the-eighth ides of-April on-the-day fourth came-together the-king and
comes cum suis et nostris militibus, civibus et Flandrensibus
the-count with their and our knights citizens and Flemings

multis in agrum consuetum, in quo scrinia et reliquiae
many into the-field accustomed in which the-shrines and relics
sanctorum collatae sunt. Et silentio indicto, lecta est charta
of-the-saints brought were and silence proclaimed read was the-charter
libertatis ecclesiae et privilegiorum beati Donatiani coram
of-the-liberty of-the-church and of-the-privileges of-blessed Donatian before
universis in presentia regis et comitis, ut contra ea
all in the-presence of-the-king and of-the-count that against those-things
quae privilegiorum paginis conscripta et a catholicis Romanis
which of-the-privileges in-the-pages written and by catholic Roman
pontificibus sancita, et a nemine catholicorum regum et
pontiffs sanctioned and by no-one of-catholic kings and
comitum corrupta constiterant, rex in sua persona simul
counts corrupted had-stood the-king in his person together
et comes nullo temerario ausu se opponeret, sed potius
and the-count with-no rash daring himself should-oppose but rather
regiae dignitatis prerogativa veneraretur sancita et
of-the-royal dignity by-the-prerogative should-venerate the-sanctioned-things and
suae potentiae corroboraret imperio. Libertatem vero eligendi
of-his power should-strengthen with-command the-liberty but of-choosing
canonice et sine simonia prepositum ex concessione domini
canonically and without simony a-provost by grant of-the-lord
papae, sicut privilegii sui inscriptione contentum est, se
pope as of-privilege his in-the-inscription contained is themselves
habere protestati sunt fratres ejusdem ecclesiae, quem quidem
to-have protested have the-brothers of-the-same church whom indeed
prepositum rex, si presens afforet, canonice et sine simonia
provost the-king if present he-were canonically and without simony
electum potestative officii sui ministerio et dignitate
chosen by-power of-office his with-the-ministry and with-the-dignity
prelationis sublimaret et in locum prelationis subrogaret;
of-the-prelacy should-raise and into the-place of-the-prelacy should-substitute

quod si rex non afforet, comes ejusdem potestatis
that if the-king not were-present the-count of-the-same power
officio functus, concessionem canonice electi prepositi
with-the-office having-discharged the-grant canonically of-the-chosen provost
et in locum subrogationis et in propria persona et suorum
and into the-place of-substitution both in own person and of-his-men
faceret secundum predecessorum suorum catholicorum
should-make according-to of-predecessors his catholic
principum morem. Lecta est quoque chartula conventionis
princes the-custom read was also the-little-charter of-the-agreement
inter comitem et cives nostros factae de teloneo condonato
between the-count and citizens our made about the-toll remitted
et censu mansionum eorundem, quatenus pro pretio electionis
and the-rent of-the-dwellings of-them that for the-price of-the-election
et susceptionis personae novi consulis, reciperent a
and of-the-taking-up of-the-person of-the-new consul they-should-receive from
comite libertatem hujuscemodi, ne teloneum aut censum
the-count freedom of-this-kind lest the-toll or rent
deinceps ipsi aut successores loci nostri comiti vel ejus
thereafter they or the-successors of-place our to-the-count or his
successori solverent, sed perpetua illa libertate donati, sicut
successor should-pay but with-perpetual that freedom endowed as
in charta conventionis conscriptum erat, ad confirmandam
in the-charter of-the-agreement written was for confirming
libertatem eandem juramentum a rege simul et a
freedom the-same an-oath from the-king together and from
comite expostulatum susciperent, scilicet ne rex aut comes
the-count demanded they-should-receive namely lest the-king or the-count
amplius per se vel per ministros pro solvendo teloneo et
further by himself or by servants for paying the-toll and
censu cives nostros aut ipsorum in loco nostro successores
rent citizens our or their in place our successors

inquietaret, sed bono animo et sine malo ingenio et non
should-disturb but with-good mind and without evil device and not
subtracto, tam privilegia canonicorum quam condonationem
withdrawn as-much the-privileges of-the-canons as the-remission
teloneorum et census inviolabiliter conservaret. Sub hac
of-the-tolls and of-the-rent inviolably should-keep under this
ergo conditionis compositione juraverunt rex et comes
therefore of-condition settlement swore the-king and the-count
super sanctorum reliquias in audientia cleri et populi.
upon of-the-saints the-relics in the-hearing of-the-clergy and of-the-people
Subsequenter quoque cives juraverunt fidelitatem comiti,
next also the-citizens swore fealty to-the-count
sicut moris erat, et hominia fecerunt ei et securitates,
as the-custom was and homages made to-him and assurances
sicut prius predecessoribus suis naturalibus principibus terrae
as before to-predecessors his natural princes of-the-land
et dominis. Ut igitur benevolos sibi comes cives nostros
and lords that therefore well-disposed to-himself the-count citizens our
redderet, superaddidit eis, ut potestative et licenter
might-make he-added to-them that by-power and freely
consuetudinarias leges suas de die in diem corrigerent et in
customary laws their from day to day they-might-correct and for
melius commutarent secundum qualitatem temporis et loci.
the-better they-might-change according-to the-quality of-time and of-place
Tandem sacramento jusjurandorum confirmatis omnibus,
at-last with-the-sacrament of-oaths confirmed all-things
reversi sunt rex et consul in hospitium, ubi delatae sunt in
returned have the-king and the-consul to the-lodging where brought were in
omnium audientia litterae hujusmodi ab iis qui obsidionem
of-all the-hearing letters of-this-kind from those who the-siege
fecerant in Reddenburg primatibus: «Nos quoque hujus
had-made at Aardenburg from-the-chief-men we also of-this

obsidionis exactores electum novum Flandriarum consulem
siege the-carriers-out the-chosen new of-the-Flanders consul
electuri erimus ex nostra parte, sub hac conditione
about-to-choose shall-be on our part under this condition
quidem, ut inconsultas expeditiones, insuper pravas principum
indeed that ill-advised expeditions besides wicked of-the-princes
exactiones et telonea nova, quae doloso consilio Lamberti
exactions and tolls new which by-guileful counsel of-Lambert
in Reddenburg noviter et preter jus consuetudinarium
at Aardenburg newly and beyond right customary
terrae instituta sunt, a nobis et a nostris viciniae
of-the-land established were from us and from our of-the-neighborhood
incolis amplius amota damnes et destruas, et libertatem
inhabitants further removed you-condemn and destroy and the-freedom
obtineant rustici nostri exeundi et depascendi pecudes suas
may-obtain peasants our of-going-out and of-grazing herds their
super terram quae dicitur Mor sine coemptione prava
upon the-land which is-called Moer without levy wicked
instituta a Lamberto. Insuper de coemptione gravissima
established by Lambert besides about the-levy most-heavy
mansionum in Erdenburg, volumus quoddam medium regem
of-dwellings at Aardenburg we-wish a-certain middle the-king
et comitem ponere, ut per duodecim nummos tantummodo
and the-count to-set that by twelve pennies only
redimatur unusquisque nummorum illorum, quos secundum
be-redeemed each of-pennies those which according-to
positionem mansionum hactenus sedecim nummis redimebant
the-placing of-the-dwellings hitherto with-sixteen pennies redeemed
filii post mortem patrum suorum. Nobis ipsis quidem
the-sons after the-death of-fathers their for-us ourselves indeed
legem statuimus, ut si expeditio ex parte comitis nostri
a-law we-establish that if an-expedition from part of-count our

fuerit indicta, ille qui excusationem non habuerit
shall-have-been proclaimed he who an-excuse not shall-have-had
legitimam, emendabit comiti viginti solidos. Super iis
lawful shall-make-amends to-the-count twenty shillings upon these
omnibus assensum tuum, domine rex, et concessionem
all assent your lord king and the-grant
et confirmationem comitis novi expostulamus, quatenus
and confirmation of-the-count new we-demand that
juramento confirmet omnia, quae in hac charta conscripsimus
by-oath he-confirm all-things which in this charter we-have-written
et in audientia omnium promulgata constant. Monemus et
and in the-hearing of-all promulgated stand we-warn and
obsecramus tam regis quam comitis personam et ejus
beseech as-much of-the-king as of-the-count the-person and his
omnipotentiam, ut Bertulphum prepositum et ejus fratres
omnipotence that Bertulf the-provost and his brothers
Ulfricum Cnop, Hacket castellanum, Robertum puerum,
Wulfric Cnop Haket the-castellan Robert the-boy
Lambertum ex Reddenburg cum filiis ipsorum, Borsiardum,
Lambert of Aardenburg with sons their Borsiard
et reliquos traditores numquam heredes fore permittant
and the-remaining traitors never heirs to-be they-allow
deinceps in comitatu Flandriae». Cumque perlecta fuisset
thereafter in the-countship of-Flanders and-when read-through had-been
charta hujusmodi in conspectu universorum, juravit comes
charter of-this-kind in the-sight of-all swore the-count
novus se confirmare et concedere bono animo et sine
new himself to-confirm and to-grant with-good mind and without
malo ingenio et non subtracto omnia quae expostulaverant
evil device and not withdrawn all-things which they-had-demanded
ab ipso. Ac deinceps per totum reliquum diei tempus
from him and thereafter through all the-remaining of-the-day time

hominia fecerunt consuli illi qui feodati fuerant prius a
homages made to-the-consul those who enfeoffed had-been before by
Karolo comite piissimo, suscipientes nunc similiter feoda sua
Charles the-count most-pious receiving now likewise fiefs their
et officia et quaecumque obtinuerant ante jure et legitime.
and offices and whatever they-had-held before by-right and lawfully

56 · HOMAGE

On 7 April the vassals do homage, each declaring himself the count's man, kissing him, swearing on the relics, and receiving investiture with his rod. Eustace of Steenvoorde is killed and burned at Saint Omer, and Baldwin of Aalst is rewarded. The king's attempt to reconcile William of Ypres fails, and the count, setting out for Saint Omer, turns back for want of trusted men.

Septimo idus aprilis, feria quinta, iterum hominia facta
on-the-seventh ides of-April on-the-day fifth again homages made
sunt comiti, quae hoc ordine suae fidei et securitatis
were to-the-count which in-this order of-his faith and assurance
termino consummata sunt. Primum hominia fecerunt ita:
by-the-term completed were first homages they-made thus
comes requisivit, si integre vellet homo suus fieri, et ille
the-count asked if wholly he-wished man his to-become and he
respondit: Volo, et junctis manibus, amplexatus a manibus
answered I-wish and with-joined hands embraced by the-hands
comitis, osculo confederati sunt. Secundo loco fidem dedit
of-the-count with-a-kiss bound-in-alliance they-were in-the-second place faith gave
is qui hominium fecerat prolocutori comitis in iis verbis:
he who homage had-made to-the-spokesman of-the-count in these words
«Spondeo in fide mea me fidelem fore amodo comiti Willelmo,
I-promise on faith my myself faithful to-be henceforth to-count William

et sibi hominium integraliter contra omnes observaturum
and to-him the-homage wholly against all about-to-keep
fide bona et sine dolo;» idemque super reliquias sanctorum
in-faith good and without guile and-the-same upon the-relics of-the-saints
tertio loco juravit. Deinde virgula, quam manu consul
in-the-third place he-swore then with-the-little-rod which in-hand the-consul
tenebat, investituras donavit eis omnibus qui hoc pacto
held investitures he-gave to-them all who by-this pact
securitatem et hominium simulque juramentum fecerant.
assurance and homage and-together oath had-made
Eodem die Eustachius ex Stenvordia in Sancto Audomaro
on-the-same day Eustace of Steenvoorde at Saint Omer
prius interemptus a civibus et postea in conflagrationem
first slain by the-citizens and afterward into the-burning
illius domus qua subfugerat injectus, in cineres combustus
of-that house into-which he-had-fled thrown into ashes burned
est; ipse enim sub nota traditionis talem perpeti mortem
was he for under the-mark of-betrayal such to-suffer death
promeruit. Eadem die in Brugis comes dedit Baldwino ex
deserved on-the-same day at Bruges the-count gave to-Baldwin of
Alst quadringentas libras preter viginti, eo quod ipsius
Aalst four-hundred pounds besides twenty by-this that by-his
viribus et consilio maxime post regem in comitatu valuerit.
strength and counsel most after the-king in the-countship he-had-prevailed
Sexto idus aprilis, feria sexta, similiter hominia facta
on-the-sixth ides of-April on-the-day sixth likewise homages made
sunt comiti.
were to-the-count
Quinto idus aprilis, sabbato, rex ibat apud Winendala,
on-the-fifth ides of-April on-Saturday the-king went to Wijnendale
locutum Willelmo illi Iprensi, adulterino comiti, pro concordia
to-speak to-William that of-Ypres adulterine count for concord

facienda inter ipsum et verum novumque comitem. At
to-be-made between him and the-true and-new count but
illi adulterino comiti indignum fuit supra modum inire
to-that adulterine count unworthy it-was beyond measure to-enter
concordiam cum vero Flandriarum consule vel aliquam pacis
concord with the-true of-the-Flanders consul or any of-peace
compositionem se facturum, quia eum despectui habebat.
settlement himself about-to-make because him in-contempt he-held
Rex igitur aegre ferens superbiam et contemptum adulterini
the-king therefore ill bearing the-pride and contempt of-the-adulterine
Iprensis comitis ipsumque dedignatus, ad nos usque reversus est.
of-Ypres count and-him disdaining to us right-up returned has
Quarto idus aprilis, dominica, comes noster, secundum
on-the-fourth ides of-April on-Sunday count our according-to
consilium regis et principum, iturus fuerat apud
the-counsel of-the-king and of-the-princes about-to-go had-been to
Sanctum Audomarum, sed quia paucos habebat secum in
Saint Omer but because few he-had with-him on
via in quibus confideret, nocte ad nos rediit.
the-way in whom he-might-trust by-night to us he-returned

William of Ypres, eager to mend his name, gets the provost into his hands. Dragged nearly naked through Ypres, he is hanged on the gibbet by his arms with his head through it, and when he answers William's question about his accomplices, "You know as well as I," William has him stoned. Men who have come to buy fish tear him with hooks; dying, he blames his guide, Walter of Zarren, and a dog's entrails are wound around his neck.

Tertio idus aprilis, feria secunda, prepositus Bertulphus
on-the-third ides of-April on-the-day second the-provost Bertulf
traditus est in manus illius adulterini comitis, qui ideo
handed-over was into the-hands of-that adulterine count who for-this-reason
magis studuerat et labore assiduo perquisierat, quo loco
more had-striven and with-labor constant had-searched-out in-what place
latuisset, ut, captivato eo, et divulgato quod prepositum
he-had-lain-hidden that captured him and spread-abroad that the-provost
Brudgensem cepisset, suae potestatis famam precipue
of-Bruges he-had-taken of-his power the-fame chiefly
emendaret, si de eo vindictam fecisset gravem. Nam, sicut
he-might-mend if on him vengeance he-had-done heavy for as
prescripsimus, in maturitate traditionis ab Ipra mandaverat
we-have-written-above in the-ripeness of-the-betrayal from Ypres he-had-sent
eidem preposito apertam salutationem et suis, in quo
to-the-same provost open greeting and to-his-men in which
famam suam turpissimam et traditiosam reddiderat per
fame his most-shameful and treacherous he-had-made through
omnes regnorum fines. Igitur cum cepisset eum profugum
all of-the-realms the-bounds therefore when he-had-taken him a-fugitive
et exulem in patria et inter parentes, tamen non satis
and exile in the-fatherland and among kinsmen yet not enough
poterat excogitare, quo mortis supplicio perderet, cujus
could-he to-devise by-what of-death punishment he-should-destroy of-whose

conscius traditionis dicebatur. Et quamvis ille adulterinus
privy of-the-betrayal he-was-said and although that adulterine-one
calliditatis et astutiae talibus argumentis videretur probare
of-craft and cunning by-such arguments seemed to-prove
innocentiam suam, tamen Deus, cui nihil resistit, cujus
innocence his yet God whom nothing resists whose
auctoritate dictum est: nihil occultum, quod non reveletur,
by-authority said it-is nothing hidden which not shall-be-revealed
hanc inhumanam turpitudinem et tanti principis sui
this inhuman foulness and of-so-great prince their
traditores fidelibus suis manifestavit, damnavit, proscripsit,
the-traitors to-faithful his made-manifest condemned proscribed
precipitavit. Tantus erat tumultus, clamor et concursus
cast-headlong so-great was the-tumult shouting and running-together
Iprensium et totius viciniae circa captivum unum
of-the-men-of-Ypres and of-all the-neighborhood around captive one
hominem, ut non possimus aequiparare eum. Et sicut aiunt,
man that not we-can to-equal it and as they-say
saltando, choros ducendo, diversis applausibus preibant et
by-leaping dances by-leading with-various applauses they-went-before and
consequebantur prepositum, trahentes eum funibus longioribus
followed the-provost dragging him with-ropes rather-long
a dextris ejus et sinistris, ita ut ordo trahentium in
on the-right his and left so that the-line of-those-dragging in
longum et ab invicem in latum procederet, ut sic ab
length and from each-other in breadth went-forward that thus by
omnibus olim vir ille dignus et potentissimus verecunde et
all once man that worthy and most-powerful shamefully and
ignominiose derideretur; nudus prorsus preter braccas, luto
ignominiously should-be-mocked naked utterly except the-breeches with-mud
et lapidibus obrutus, trahebatur. Preter clerum et paucos
and stones overwhelmed he-was-dragged except the-clergy and a-few

qui dudum religiosum virum cognoverant, nemo miseratus est
who long-since the-devout man had-known no-one pitied has
illum. At ille tot injuriis fatigatus totque opprobriis
him but he by-so-many wrongs wearied and-by-so-many reproaches
et tunsionibus lesus, mortis suae supplicium eminus
and beatings hurt of-death his the-punishment from-afar
expectabat, ante cujus mentis faciem poterant ad memoriam
awaited before whose of-mind face could to memory
merito reduci omnia quae egerat, si aliquod vivendi
deservedly be-brought-back all-things which he-had-done if some of-living
spatium turba in ejus mortem corruens prestitisset. Poterat
space the-crowd into his death rushing had-allowed he-could
quidem reminisci, si debuit, quomodo violenter intrusus,
indeed to-remember if he-ought how violently intruded
et viventi preposito Ledberto, viro honesto et propter
and over-the-living provost Ledbert a-man honorable and for
Deum omnia patienti, superpositus injuste, et contra Deum
God all-things suffering set-over unjustly and against God
in templo Dei prelationem usurpasset, prebendulas simoniaca
in the-temple of-God the-prelacy he-had-usurped little-prebends by-simoniacal
heresi commutasset, nepotes suos stipendiis ecclesiae in
heresy had-traded nephews his with-the-stipends of-the-church for
omne facinus armasset, et nunc tandem catholicum et de
every crime had-armed and now at-last the-catholic and from
regum stirpe progenitum nobilissimum principem Karolum
of-kings stock begotten most-noble prince Charles
suo aut assensu aut consilio morti tradiderit, qui sicut inter
by-his either assent or counsel to-death had-handed who as amid
sui supplicii angustias profitebatur, si voluisset, defendisse
of-his punishment the-straits he-professed if he-had-wished to-have-defended
a traditione poterat. Ante mentis quidem oculos prefixisse
from the-betrayal he-could before of-mind indeed the-eyes to-have-set

poterat, quantam in clero gratiam quantumque honorem,
he-could how-much in the-clergy favor and-how-much honor
famam, divitias, vires, reverentias, Deus ultro contulisset,
fame riches strength reverences God freely had-bestowed
cujus dispensatricis Dei gratiae, dum eam quasi propriam
of-whose dispensing of-God grace while it as-if own
et naturalem possideret, penitus non est recordatus; namque
and natural he-possessed utterly not he-has remembered for
sic fuerat trigenta sex annis implicitus omnibus predictis
thus he-had-been for-thirty six years entangled in-all aforesaid
virtutibus et vitiis, ut nullo modo explicari posse
virtues and vices that in-no way to-be-disentangled to-be-able
videretur. Si quis velit audire multiplicitatem sui generis et
he-seemed if anyone wishes to-hear the-manifoldness of-his lineage and
magnitudinem factorum, mirabilem magis pugnam Dei et
the-greatness of-the-deeds wonderful rather the-fight of-God and
manum ejus, quam contra ipsos destruendos exercuit, credere
the-hand his which against them to-be-destroyed he-exercised to-believe
liquet. Et quamquam locum genealogiae ejus describendae hic
is-clear and although the-place of-the-genealogy his to-be-described here
obtinere videar, tamen videor mihi satis operae inceptae
to-hold I-may-seem yet I-seem to-myself enough of-work begun
labore sufficere et ejus descriptionibus supersedere, in qua
by-the-labor to-suffice and his descriptions to-pass-over in which
eventum obsidionis et non adulterinum exordium generationis
the-outcome of-the-siege and not the-adulterine beginning of-the-generation
prepositi et suorum proposui me executurum. Proinde ibat
of-the-provost and of-his-men I-proposed myself about-to-follow accordingly went
vir ille, olim gloriosus nunc ignominiosus, olim venerabilis
man that once glorious now ignominious once venerable
nunc turpis, inmoto vultu et oculis in coelum directis,
now foul with-unmoved face and eyes to heaven directed

et, nisi fallor, Deum miseratorem, humanae conditionis
and unless I-am-mistaken God the-pitier of-human condition
qua ipse indutus in regno mundi homines regit,
with-which he clothed in the-realm of-the-world men rules
invocabat sine strepitu vocum, sed in secreto mentis sibi
he-called-upon without din of-words but in the-secret of-mind for-himself
invocaverat, semper adjutorem. Tunc unus persecutorum,
he-had-called-upon always as-helper then one of-the-persecutors
percusso capite ejus fuste, ait: «O superbissime hominum,
struck the-head his with-a-cudgel says O proudest of-men
cur indignaris respicere et loqui principibus et nobis, qui
why do-you-disdain to-look-at and to-speak to-the-princes and to-us who
habent potestatem perdendi te?» At ille nec respicere curabat
have power of-destroying you but he not-even to-look-at cared
eos, et suspensus est in medio fori Ipresium
them and hanged he-was in the-middle of-the-market of-the-men-of-Ypres
juxta supplicia furum et latronum in patibulo, et braccas
beside the-punishments of-thieves and robbers on a-gibbet and the-breeches
detraxerunt ei, ut illa verecundiora corporis apparerent.
they-drew-off from-him that those more-shameful-parts of-the-body might-appear
Nihil turpe vel ignominiosum erat quod in ejus supplicium
nothing foul or ignominious was-there which into his punishment
non inferrent. In quo patibulo brachia in crucem extensa et
not they-brought in which gibbet the-arms in a-cross stretched and
manus insertae sunt, et caput transjectum per foramen
the-hands inserted were and the-head thrust through the-hole
ejusdem patibuli, ita ut reliquum corpus viri predictis suis
of-the-same gibbet so that the-remaining body of-the-man by-aforesaid his
membris suspensum quasi alienis laqueis suffocatum moreretur.
limbs hung as-if by-strange nooses choked might-die
Cumque primo loco suspenderetur, et in ipso instrumento
and-when first in-place he-was-hanged and on the-very device

patibuli adhuc vir ille pedum articulis summatim sustentaret
of-the-gibbet still man that of-the-feet with-the-joints at-the-top was-sustaining
corpus, ut saltem sic vitae miserandae prolongaret spatium,
the-body that at-least thus of-life pitiable he-might-prolong the-space
venit ad eum inter tot millia lapidantium et jacturam
came to him among so-many thousands of-those-stoning and throwing
facientium ille adulterinus comes Willelmus, et indixit
of-those-making that adulterine count William and he-enjoined
omnibus silentium et ait: «Dic ergo mihi, o preposite, per
on-all silence and says tell therefore to-me O provost by
salutem animae tuae te obtestor, dic, inquam, quaeso, qui
the-salvation of-soul your you I-adjure tell I-say I-pray who
sunt preter te et Isaac et preter apertos traditores, adhuc
are besides you and Isaac and besides the-open traitors still
latenter nocentes et culpabiles in morte domini mei Karoli
secretly harmful and guilty in the-death of-lord my Charles
comitis?» Et ille coram universis respondit: «Aeque tu, sicut
the-count and he before all answered equally you as
et ego, nosti.» Tunc furore arreptus Willelmus ille, praecepit
also I know then by-fury seized William that ordered
lapides et lutum jacere in prepositum illum et interfici. Et
stones and mud to-throw at provost that and to-be-killed and
ecce! qui pro piscibus emendis in foro convenerant,
behold those-who for fish to-be-bought in the-market had-come-together
uncis ferreis, fustibus et sudibus corpus viri dissipabant,
with-hooks iron with-cudgels and with-stakes the-body of-the-man tore-apart
nec in eo instrumenti adminiculo, quo pedum articulis
nor on that of-the-device in-the-support by-which of-the-feet with-the-joints
se sustentabat, sinebant diutius sustentari, sed propulso eo
himself he-sustained they-allowed longer to-be-sustained but pushed-off him
a sustentaculo, suspendium et vitae dispendia sub acerrimae
from the-support hanging and of-life the-loss under of-most-bitter

mortis tenebris inferebant. At ille moriens conquestionem
death the-darkness they-brought-on but he dying a-complaint
fecit pro traditione, qua ipsum Walterus, miles ex Sarran
made about the-betrayal by-which him Walter knight of Zarren
et homo suus, tradiderat in eandem mortem, qua jam
and man his had-betrayed into the-same death by-which already
emoriebatur; qui cum ducatum prestitisse debuit, decepit.
he-was-dying who when guidance to-have-furnished he-ought deceived
Iprensium igitur turba, furens in mortem prepositi, canis
of-the-men-of-Ypres therefore the-crowd raging into the-death of-the-provost of-a-dog
viscera contorserat circa collum ejus, et os canis
the-entrails had-twisted around neck his and the-mouth of-the-dog
ad os ejus jam vitalem spiritum expirantis opposuerunt
to mouth his already the-vital spirit breathing-out they-set
aequiparantes cani ipsum et facta ipsius.
likening to-a-dog him and the-deeds his

Guy, a knight married to the provost's niece, is challenged by Herman the Iron. Unhorsed and borne down, Herman lies still until Guy feels safe, then seizes him beneath his mail and throws him, and Guy cries out that he is beaten. The count from Ypres hangs him beside the dead provost, their bodies set on a wheel in a mock embrace. The besieged hear and despair.

Eodem tempore Wido, miles famosus et fortis, qui de
at-the-same time Guy knight famous and strong who of
consilio comitum Flandriae precipuus fuerat, in eandem
the-counsel of-the-counts of-Flanders chief had-been into the-same
traditionem conspiraverat, eo quod neptem prepositi uxorem
betrayal had-conspired by-this that the-niece of-the-provost as-wife
duxisset, scilicet sororem Isaac. Unde quidam Hermannus
he-had-taken namely the-sister of-Isaac whence a-certain Herman
Ferreus, miles fortis, statim occiso Karolo consule, in
the-Iron knight strong at-once slain Charles the-consul in
presentia illius Iprensis adulterini comitis, ad singulare bellum
the-presence of-that of-Ypres adulterine count to single combat
Widonem evocavit, quia dominum suum nequiter tradidisset.
Guy called-out because lord his wickedly he-had-betrayed
At Wido paratum se defendere de superimposita traditione
but Guy ready himself to-defend about the-imputed betrayal
semper fore prosilivit. Et determinatus est eis dies,
always to-be leapt-forth and fixed was for-them the-day
quo predictus prepositus mortis suae etiam pertulerat
on-which the-aforesaid provost of-death his also had-endured
tormenta. Statimque mortuo preposito, omnes qui affuerant
the-torments and-at-once dead the-provost all who had-been-present
reversi sunt ad curtem, in qua bellum indictum fuit inter
returned have to the-court in which the-combat proclaimed was between

Hermannum Ferreum et Widonem, et ubi pugnatum est
Herman the-Iron and Guy and where fought it-was
acriter ab utrisque. At Wido dejecerat equo adversarium
fiercely by both but Guy had-thrown from-horse adversary
suum, et lancea resurgere conantem, quoties voluit, stravit.
his and with-the-lance to-rise trying as-often-as he-wished laid-low
Tunc adversator ille propius accursitans, equum Widonis
then adversary that nearer running-up the-horse of-Guy
gladio trajiciens evisceravit; de equo tandem lapsus Wido,
with-sword piercing disemboweled from the-horse at-last slipped Guy
extracto gladio impetiverat adversarium. Erat quidem occursus
drawn sword had-attacked the-adversary was indeed the-clash
alternis ictibus mucronum continuus et acerrimus, donec
with-alternate strokes of-the-blades continual and most-fierce until
fatigati pondere et sarcina armorum, uterque rejectis clipeis
wearied by-the-weight and burden of-arms each thrown-away shields
luctaminis viribus pugnae victoriam accelerarent. Et cecidit
of-wrestling by-the-strength of-the-fight the-victory they-hastened and fell
ille Hermannus Ferreus in terra prostratus, cui Wido
that Herman the-Iron on the-ground prostrate on-whom Guy
incumbebat maniculis ferreis ora et oculos contundens
lay with-gauntlets iron the-mouth and eyes battering
militis. At ille prostratus, sicut legitur de Antheo, a
of-the-knight but he prostrate as is-read of Antaeus from
frigiditate terrae vires paullatim resumpsit, et callide dum
the-coldness of-the-earth strength little-by-little took-back and cunningly while
quiesceret Widonem de victoria securum reddidit. Interim
he-lay-still Guy of victory secure made meanwhile
manum suavius subducens usque ad inferiores loricae oras,
the-hand more-gently sliding-under right-up to the-lower of-the-mail the-edges
in qua parte non fuerat Wido premunitus, raptum per
in which part not had-been Guy fortified seized(-him) by

testiculos, collectis viribus ad puncti unius momentum a
the-testicles gathered strength for of-a-point one the-moment from
se propulit, in quo rapticio pulsu tota de subtus natura
himself he-thrust in which snatching push the-whole from beneath nature
corporis rupta, ita prostratus defecit Wido, ut victum et
of-the-body broken so prostrate fainted Guy that conquered and
mortuum se fore exclamaret. Tunc comes volens per
dead himself to-be he-cried-out then the-count wishing through
omnia famae suae in hoc bello consulere, jussit eundem
all-things for-fame his in this combat to-consult ordered the-same
Widonem juxta prepositum suspendi in eodem patibulo
Guy beside the-provost to-be-hanged on the-same gibbet
jam mortuum, ut, sicut pares fuerant in tradendo, ita
now dead that as equal they-had-been in betraying so
pares morerentur in tormento. Post haec vero utrorumque
equal they-might-die in torment after these-things but of-both
corpora virorum rotae plaustri superposita, in malo
the-bodies of-the-men on-the-wheel of-a-wagon set-upon on a-mast
altissima fixae, videnda universis transeuntibus proposuerunt,
very-high fixed to-be-seen by-all passers-by they-set-forth
brachiaque mutuis quasi amplexibus ad colla flectentes,
and-the-arms with-mutual as-if embraces to the-necks bending
imaginem tradendi et consulendi de morte domini et
the-image of-betraying and of-taking-counsel about the-death of-the-lord and
gloriosi ac piissimi consulis Karoli, illis jam per tres dies
glorious and most-pious consul Charles they already for three days
mortuis, insignibant. Venit itaque ad nos et in presentia
dead they-marked came and-so to us and in the-presence
regis armiger unus, qui eodem die intererat et
of-the-king squire one who on-the-same day had-been-present and
viderat utrosque suspensos in Ipra prepositum et Widonem,
had-seen both hanged at Ypres the-provost and Guy

adnuncians eventus eorum. Acclamatum est statim illis
announcing the-outcome of-them shouted it-was at-once to-those
qui in turri obsessi sunt, quomodo captus et mortuus
who in the-tower besieged are how captured and dead
fuerit dominus illorum prepositus, et quia amodo nihil
had-been lord their the-provost and that henceforth nothing
restaret eis, nisi quod se redderent regi
remained for-them but that themselves they-should-surrender to-the-king
tractandos secundum quod nequiter egerant. Igitur dolor
to-be-dealt-with according-to what wickedly they-had-done therefore grief
et anxietas et luctus et suspiria vexabant miseros illos
and anxiety and mourning and sighs vexed wretched those
et omni spe vitae destitutos; fortius quam principes
and of-all hope of-life bereft more-strongly than the-princes
obsidionis obsederant eos metus et desperatio.
of-the-siege had-besieged them fear and despair

Gervase has a beam of the old siege tower made into a ram. An archer of the besieged drops his bow, which the knights read as an evil omen. A citizen who breaks the ban to reclaim goods from his brother-in-law in the tower is seized by Gervase's knight, the citizens attack the count's house, Gervase offers to resign his office, and both sides make peace before the king.

Eodem die Gervasius jusserat carpentariis turrim ligneam
on-the-same day Gervase had-ordered the-carpenters the-tower wooden
disjungere quae erecta erat ad invadendos muros prius et
to-take-apart which raised had-been for attacking the-walls before and
nunc inutiliter stabat; cujus trabem fortissimam specialiter
now uselessly stood whose beam most-strong specially
separatam ab aliis preparari jusserat et arietem fieri,
separated from the-others to-be-prepared he-had-ordered and a-ram to-be-made
quo pertunderetur paries templi. At obsessorum sagittarii
by-which might-be-pierced the-wall of-the-temple but of-the-besieged the-archers
sagittas mittendas cum ex percussione nervorum arcubus
arrows to-be-sent when from the-striking of-the-strings with-bows
curvatis intentarent operariis ab arce turris in qua
bent they-aimed at-the-workmen from the-top of-the-tower in which
degebant, arcus et sagitta imposita eo ipso tractu,
they-were-living a-bow and an-arrow set-on by-that very pull
quo trahere festinabat, decidit a manibus trahentis.
with-which to-draw he-hastened fell from the-hands of-the-one-drawing
Quod factum inspicientes milites, qui scutati presentes et
which deed seeing the-knights who shielded present and
oppositi in omni opere artificum astiterant, protegentes illos
set-opposite in every work of-the-craftsmen had-stood-by protecting those
artificiose operantes machinas rerum, sicut sunt arietes, sues,
artfully working the-machines of-things as are rams sows

jactatoria, scalae et consimilia, quibus muros et lapideas
catapults ladders and the-like with-which walls and stone
compositiones destruere solent, eventum pessimum fore
structures to-destroy they-are-wont an-outcome most-evil to-be
vaticinati sunt ex casu arcus et sagittae obsessorum.
prophesied have from the-fall of-the-bow and arrow of-the-besieged
Eodem die ad vesperum, gravis tumultus obortus est
on-the-same day toward evening a-heavy tumult arisen was
inter Gervasium et suos et cives nostros; nam ex imperio
between Gervase and his-men and citizens our for by order
regis et precepto eorum principum obsidionis, qui cito
of-the-king and command of-those princes of-the-siege who quickly
perditionem obsessorum accelerare tentabant, quique sumptus
the-ruin of-the-besieged to-hasten tried and-who expenses
magnos omni obsidionis tempestate expenderant, vigiliis
great through-all of-the-siege the-time had-spent with-watches
et impugnationibus assidue laboraverant, ex communi,
and attacks constantly had-labored by common
inquam, ipsorum consilio et edicto regio universale decretum
I-say their counsel and edict royal a-universal decree
confirmatum erat, ne aliquis auderet e tota obsidentium
confirmed was lest anyone should-dare from the-whole of-the-besiegers
multitudine accedere ad turrim et loqui obsessis, ne
multitude to-approach to the-tower and to-speak to-the-besieged lest
forte intimaretur eis quo ingenio caperentur. Lex
perhaps it-be-made-known to-them by-what device they-would-be-taken a-law
quoque posita est propter transgressores talis, ut, si quis
also set was on-account-of transgressors such that if anyone
contra hoc decretum faceret, in captivitatem projiceretur,
against this decree should-act into captivity be-would-be-thrown
et communi principum judicio plecteretur. Igitur unus
and by-the-common of-the-princes judgment be-punished therefore one

e civibus, qui sororem cujusdam militis obsessi duxerat,
of the-citizens who the-sister of-a-certain knight besieged had-married
clanculo accessit ad turrim, requirens ab illo genero
secretly approached to the-tower asking from that brother-in-law
suo vasa et vestes quas sibi prestiterat, et ille quae
his the-vessels and clothes which to-him he-had-lent and he which
habuit, reddidit vasa. Cum in reditu civis ille transiret
he-had gave-back vessels when on the-return citizen that was-crossing
per forum, miles Gervasii unus qui preceptum regis et
through the-market a-knight of-Gervase one who the-command of-the-king and
principum et domini sui susceperat, et potestatem etiam
of-the-princes and of-lord his had-received and the-power also
capiendi transgressores precepti, persecutus est civem illum,
of-taking the-transgressors of-the-command pursued has citizen that
et tentum violenter captivumque reduxit secum usque
and held violently and-a-captive brought-back with-him right-up
ad domum comitis. Continuo tumultus infinitus factus est
to the-house of-the-count forthwith a-tumult endless made was
inter cives, et prosilientes ad arma, invaserunt domum
among the-citizens and leaping-forth to arms they-attacked the-house
comitis et familiam Gervasii, quae se ab intus fortiter
of-the-count and the-household of-Gervase which itself from within strongly
defendebant. Clamaverunt enim se numquam velle
defended they-cried for themselves never to-be-willing
pati dominium cujuspiam, imo in sua potestate staret
to-suffer the-lordship of-anyone nay in their power it-stood
hoc malefactum corrigere. Cumque diutius tumultuassent,
this misdeed to-correct and-when longer they-had-rioted
Gervasius in medium eorum protulit haec verba: «Nostis, o
Gervase into the-midst of-them brought-forth these words you-know O
cives et amici mei, quod secundum vestram petitionem et
citizens and friends my that according-to your petition both

rex et comes jam constituerunt me vicecomitem loci
the-king and the-count already have-appointed me viscount of-place
vestri, et secundum regis et principum decretum actum
your and according-to of-the-king and of-the-princes the-decree done
est, quod miles meus jam civem et vicinum vestrum ceperit
it-is that knight my now a-citizen and neighbor your has-taken
decreti transgressorem, meamque personaliter dignitatem
of-the-decree a-transgressor and-my personally dignity
contempsistis in hoc facto, domum comitis et familiam
you-have-scorned in this deed the-house of-the-count and household
meam invasistis in ea, et tandem sine ratione, armata
my you-have-attacked in it and at-last without reason with-armed
manu, in presentia regis prosiluistis. Nunc ergo, si vultis,
hand in the-presence of-the-king you-have-leapt-forth now therefore if you-wish
vicecomitatum, caussa injuriae mihi illatae omitto, fidem
the-viscountship for-the-sake of-the-wrong on-me brought I-give-up the-faith
et securitatem inter nos firmatam dissolvo, ut pateat
and assurance between us confirmed I-dissolve that it-may-be-plain
omnibus vobis, quia dominium super vos obtinere non quero.
to-all you that lordship over you to-hold not I-seek
Si ergo placet, coram rege, sepositis armis. conveniamus,
if therefore it-pleases before the-king set-aside arms let-us-come-together
ut judicetur inter nostros et vestros.» Cumque finisset
that it-be-judged between ours and yours and-when he-had-finished
orationem, ascenderunt simul coram rege, et compositi sunt
the-speech they-went-up together before the-king and reconciled were
iterum fide et amicitia ad invicem sicut prius.
again in-faith and friendship to each-other as before

The king inspects the dormitory beside the church to plan the breach. The besieged have walled themselves in the gallery and tower with chests, benches, and mattresses, keeping a candle at the count's head and their stores around his tomb. Robert begs from a window to be judged by the princes, and though no one dares tell the angry king, many weep for him.

Secundo idus aprilis, feria tertia, rex in dormitorium
on-the-second ides of-April on-the-day third the-king into the-dormitory
fratrum cum prudentioribus et consiliariis suis conscendit
of-the-brothers with the-more-prudent and counselors his went-up
considerate prenotare, in qua parte ingeniose aggressum
deliberately to-note in what part ingeniously an-assault
presignarent in templum. Erat namque dormitorii domus
they-might-mark-out on the-temple was for of-the-dormitory the-house
adjuncta templo, ita ut ingeniorum instrumenta prepararentur
joined to-the-temple so that of-engines the-devices might-be-prepared
in illa, quibus parietem templi pertunderent et ingrederentur
in it with-which the-wall of-the-temple they-might-pierce and might-enter
ad obsessos. Namque cum illi miseri inferiora templi
to the-besieged for when those wretches the-lower-parts of-the-temple
obtinere non poterant, gradus quibus in solarium ascenderetur
to-hold not could the-steps by-which into the-gallery one-ascended
lignis et lapidibus obstruxerant, ut nullus ascendere vel
with-timbers and stones they-had-blocked so-that no-one to-ascend or
ipsi descendere possent, tantummodo sese a solario et
they to-descend could only themselves from the-gallery and
turribus templi defendere conantes. Inter columpnas quippe
towers of-the-temple to-defend trying between the-columns indeed
solarii specula et status suos ex scriniorum aggeribus et
of-the-gallery look-outs and stations their from of-chests heaps and

cumulis scamnorum prostituerant, e quibus lapides, plumbum
piles of-benches they-had-set-up from which stones lead
et rerum moles dejicerent super invasores templi. In
and of-things masses they-might-throw-down upon the-invaders of-the-temple in
turri quoque consequenter prae foribus fenestrarum tapeta
the-tower also consequently before the-openings of-the-windows tapestries
et culcitras suspenderant, ne funda et arbalistis forsitan
and mattresses they-had-hung lest by-sling and by-crossbows perhaps
percuterentur intrinsecus, cum turris a foris aggrederetur.
they-be-struck within when the-tower from without should-be-attacked
In suprema quidem turrium arce stabant fortiores juvenes
on the-highest indeed of-the-towers top stood the-stronger youths
obsessorum, qui molares lapides sternerent super discurrentes
of-the-besieged who millstone stones should-strew upon those-running-about
in curtem castri. Atque sic inordinabiliter in templo Dei
in the-court of-the-castle and thus disorderly in the-temple of-God
ordinatis rebus suis, expectabant mortis suae finem, nihil
arranged things their they-awaited of-death their the-end nothing
reverentiae et honoris conferendo beato funeri, quod in
of-reverence and of-honor bestowing on-the-blessed funeral which in
solario inter ipsos sepultum jacebat, preter hoc solum, quod
the-gallery among them buried lay except this only that
vix dominum suum recognoscentes quem tradiderant, ejus
scarcely lord their recognizing whom they-had-betrayed his
ad caput cereum prefigerent, qui assidue in honorem boni
at head a-candle they-set which constantly in honor of-the-good
consulis arderet a die obsidionis primo usque ad diem
consul burned from the-day of-the-siege first right-up to the-day
quo introgressum est violenter ad ipsos. Nam farinam
on-which entered it-was violently to them for flour
et legumina circa tumbam comitis reposuerant, quibus
and legumes around the-tomb of-the-count they-had-stored with-which

cotidie in usus suos assumptis vitam continuabant. Cumque
daily for uses their taken life they-continued and-when
rex et sui studiosius exquirerent et presignarent locum
the-king and his-men more-studiously sought and marked-out the-place
pertundendi templum, Robertus puer per unam fenestrarum
of-piercing the-temple Robert the-boy through one of-the-windows
templi caput efferens, loquebatur militibus regis, obsecrans
of-the-temple the-head putting-out spoke to-the-knights of-the-king beseeching
eos, ut internuntii ejus forent ad regem, humiliter
them that go-betweens his they-should-be to the-king humbly
inquiens omne judicium principum terrae et baronum
saying every judgment of-the-princes of-the-land and of-the-barons
domini sui regis velle subire, ut in lege ipsorum merito
of-lord his the-king to-wish to-undergo that in law their by-merit
suae excusationis aut vivere promereretur aut supplicio
of-his excuse either to-live he-might-deserve or by-the-punishment
dampnationis, si se non excusaret, exterminari. Nec
of-condemnation if himself not he-should-excuse to-be-wiped-out nor
ullus hominum ausus est internuntiorum verba in regis
any of-men dared has of-the-go-betweens the-words into of-the-king
presentiam proferre, tam graviter indignatus est rex
the-presence to-bring-forth so heavily indignant was the-king
illos traditores vel etiam videre. Ceterum cives nostri et
those traitors or even to-see moreover citizens our and
milites regis et universi qui audierant, quam humili
the-knights of-the-king and all who had-heard with-how humble
oratione exorasset juvenis dominum regem, in lacrimas fusi
speech had-entreated the-youth the-lord king into tears poured
condoluerunt ei, imprecantes pro eo domini misericordiam.
felt-sorrow for-him imploring for him of-the-Lord the-mercy

The besieged spread the lie that Borsiard is dead, and the king attacks the church. At Saint Christopher's he finds only relics, for the gold cup and silver flagon that the provost had given the church were carried out hidden among the relics and kept by the simple priest Eggard. Later the king has Robert flogged to name who holds the treasure.

Idus aprilis, feria quarta, confinxerant mendacium
on-the-ides of-April on-the-day fourth had-made-up a-lie
obsessi de morte Borsiardi, quatenus exorta lite inter
the-besieged about the-death of-Borsiard that arisen a-quarrel between
Robertum puerum et ipsum, gladio occubuisset trajectus,
Robert the-boy and him by-sword he-had-fallen pierced
existimantes per hoc animos principum a severitate
reckoning through this the-minds of-the-princes from severity
mitigari, ne tanto furore invaderent deinceps, sicut
to-be-softened lest with-so-great fury they-should-attack thereafter as
prius, et a turri evocabant mortem Borsiardi, quam
before and from the-tower they-called-out the-death of-Borsiard which
mendose diffamabant; alii eum evasisse asserebant. Quo
falsely they-spread others him to-have-escaped asserted which
audito, rex percepit obsessos illos jam diffidere sibi,
heard the-king perceived besieged those now to-distrust themselves
timore et anxietate deficere, constantique animo edixit, ut
by-fear and anxiety to-fail and-with-constant mind proclaimed that
milites sui se armarent et invaderent templum. Quod
knights his themselves should-arm and should-attack the-temple which
ideo factum est, ut in congressu illo deficientes et
for-this-reason done was that in encounter that failing and
lassati, in posterum obsessi illi non valerent toties tot
wearied in the-future besieged those not might-be-able so-often so-many

assultus et invasiones sustinere, sed magis cedere et locum
assaults and attacks to-sustain but rather to-yield and the-place
victoriae christianae catholico regi Ludewico et militibus
of-victory christian to-the-catholic king Louis and to-knights
suis dare. Erat quidem in obruendo lapides et immittendo
his to-give was indeed in hurling stones and sending
jacula utrimque gravis aggressus a meridie usque in
javelins on-both-sides a-heavy assault from noon right-up to
vesperam. Quo die rex accepit claves a decano Helia de
evening on-which day the-king received the-keys from the-dean Elias of
sanctuario ecclesiae beati Christofori, eo quod accusatus
the-sanctuary of-the-church of-blessed Christopher by-this that reported
ei fuerat thesaurus comitis Karoli in eodem sanctuario
to-him it-had-been the-treasure of-count Charles in the-same sanctuary
fuisse repositus. Et cum introisset rex, nihil preter
to-have-been laid-up and when had-entered the-king nothing except
sanctorum reliquias invenit. Verum quippe fuit cuppam
of-the-saints the-relics found true indeed it-was a-cup
auream cum suo operculo et cannam, scilicet argenteum vas
golden with its lid and a-can namely silver vessel
vinarium, prepositum de rapina comitis a nepotibus suis
for-wine the-provost from the-plunder of-the-count from nephews his
quasi pro dono in partitione rapinae accepisse, et eadem
as-if for a-gift in the-sharing of-the-plunder to-have-received and the-same
vasa pro salute animae suae ad operam ecclesiae Deo
vessels for the-salvation of-soul his for the-work of-the-church to-God
obtulisse. Cum ergo obsidio fieret, et fratres reliquias et
to-have-offered when therefore the-siege was-made and the-brothers the-relics and
feretra sanctorum a castro efferrent, in quodam scrinio illa
biers of-the-saints from the-castle carried-out in a-certain chest those
duo vasa secreto et sub simulatione reliquiarum sanctarum
two vessels secretly and under the-pretense of-relics holy

imposita extulerant pariter cum ceteris reliquiis sanctorum,
placed had-carried-out together with the-other relics of-the-saints
atque custodiendum illud scrinium commendavit decanus
and to-be-guarded that chest entrusted the-dean
prefatus cuidam simplici presbitero Eggardo in ecclesia
aforesaid to-a-certain simple priest Eggard in the-church
domini Salvatoris, signatum sub veneratione dignissimarum
of-the-Lord Savior sealed under the-veneration of-most-worthy
reliquiarum. Quod quidem scrinium quam devote ille
relics which indeed chest how devoutly that
simplex sacerdos susceperit, et posito eo in sanctuario
simple priest received and placed it in the-sanctuary
preces effuderit, atque animae suae salutem depoposcerit,
prayers poured-out and of-soul his the-salvation besought
testantibus compresbiteris ejusdem ecclesiae, manifestum fuit,
witnessing (his)-fellow-priests of-the-same church plain it-was
omnique nocte candelas, cereos et luminaria et lampades
and-every night candles of-wax and lights and lamps
accensas preposuit, non satis se venerari reliquias illas
lit he-set-before not enough himself to-venerate relics those
potuisse credens. Revera satis sacerdos ille promeruerat,
to-have-been-able believing truly enough priest that had-deserved
ut, cum novo comiti redderentur vasa sua, semel aut plus
that when to-the-new count were-returned vessels his once or more
ex eisdem vasis presbiter ille bonum vinum bibisset.
from the-same vessels priest that good wine should-have-drunk
Hunc igitur thesaurum rex querens, circumquaque miserat
this therefore treasure the-king seeking round-about had-sent
investigatores et insidiatores, qui latenter thesaurum Karoli
trackers and spies who secretly the-treasure of-Charles
comitis recolligerent, nihilque super hoc profecit. Unde rex
the-count might-gather-back and-nothing upon this he-gained whence the-king

etiam Robertum puerum, secundo die ante discessum suum
also Robert the-boy on-the-second day before departure his
apud Franciam, flagellis cesum coegit, ut si quid de
to France with-scourges beaten forced that if anything about
thesauro meminisset, quis partem aliquam possideret regi
the-treasure he-remembered who part any possessed to-the-king
intimaret. Cujus accusatione eodem die comes novus
he-should-make-known whose by-accusation on-the-same day the-count new
et rex obtinuerunt vasa predicta, sicut in subsequenti
and the-king obtained the-vessels aforesaid as in what-follows
dicturi sumus. Alii obsessorum denunciaverunt Borsiardum
about-to-say we-are others of-the-besieged announced Borsiard
aufugisse, ut sub illo mendacio parcius impugnarentur.
to-have-fled that under that lie more-sparingly they-might-be-attacked

62 · THE RAM PREPARED

The ram is brought into the dormitory against the church wall beside the count's tomb, on broad stairs under wicker shelters, and the knights swing it on ropes, battering the wall from noon until after evening.

Decimo octavo kal. maii, feria quinta, aries, qui
on-the-tenth and-eighth kalends of-May on-the-day fifth the-ram which
instrumentum factus est ad pertundendum parietem templi,
as-a-device made was for piercing the-wall of-the-temple
adductus est in fratrum dormitorio in eadem septa
brought was into of-the-brothers the-dormitory at the-same partition
extrinsecus, juxta quam intrinsecus corpus boni consulis
outside beside which inside the-body of-the-good consul
sepulturae commendatum Deo suo jacebat. Statimque
to-burial commended to-God his lay and-at-once

artifices arietis ascensoria graditiva erexerant in altum, et
the-craftsmen of-the-ram stairways stepped had-raised on high and
ablato pariete ligneo dormitorii, qui propinquior templo
removed the-wall wooden of-the-dormitory which nearer to-the-temple
steterat, summitatem ascensoriorum ibidem subduxerant,
had-stood the-top of-the-stairways there they-had-brought-up
quatenus usque ad murum et parietem templi gradatim
so-that right-up to the-wall and partition of-the-temple step-by-step
possint armati progredi quicumque auderent. Nam fenestra,
could armed-men to-advance whoever should-dare for a-window
in aedificio templi primo, ex ordine antiqui operis illo
in the-building of-the-temple first in the-row of-the-old work there
patuit, quo jam artifices ascensoria direxerant. Sed paulisper
lay-open where already the-craftsmen the-stairways had-directed but a-little
inferius temperabant instrumentorum aditus, ita ut subtus
lower they-tempered of-the-devices the-approach so that beneath
fenestram percussiones arietis preordinarent, et pertuso
the-window the-strokes of-the-ram they-pre-arranged and pierced
pariete lapideo, eandem fenestram quasi pro ostio libere
the-wall stone the-same window as-if for a-door freely
ingressuri obtinerent, erantque gradus latissimi, in quorum
about-to-enter they-might-hold and-there-were steps very-broad in whose
fronte decem milites simul in latum ad pugnandum starent.
front ten knights together in breadth for fighting might-stand
Quibus preordinatis, trabem maximam funibus suspensam in
which pre-arranged a-beam very-great by-ropes hung on
eadem parte super gradus illos ad perforandum templum
the-same side over steps those for piercing the-temple
direxerant et laqueos eidem innexos et simul armatos
they-had-directed and nooses to-the-same tied and together armed-men
juxta laqueos, quibus trahere retrorsum a templo in altum
beside the-nooses by-which to-draw backward from the-temple on high

reductam, et in virtute et fortitudine retractam ad parietem
brought-back and in strength and might drawn-back against the-wall
templi percutere callide et argumentose constituerant.
of-the-temple to-strike cleverly and ingeniously they-had-arranged
Super capita quoque ascendentium tegmina ex virgis inserta
over the-heads also of-those-climbing coverings of withes inserted
trabibus et connexa fuerant, ut, etiam si tectum dormitorii
in-the-beams and joined had-been that even if the-roof of-the-dormitory
aliquo ingenio ab obsessis infringeretur, sub contextura
by-some device by the-besieged should-be-broken under the-weaving
virgarum securi agerent arietis impulsores, et parietes ligneos
of-withes secure might-act of-the-ram the-pushers and walls wooden
simul ante se proposuerant ad defensionem sui,
also before themselves they-had-set for defense of-themselves
ne jaculorum et sagittarum percussionibus ab intrinsecus
lest of-javelins and of-arrows by-the-strokes from within
lederentur. Igitur retro a muro et pariete templi reducto
they-be-hurt therefore back from the-wall and partition of-the-temple drawn-back
per laqueos ariete, quantum extensis brachiis suspensi
by the-nooses the-ram as-far-as with-outstretched arms hanging
possent, uno impetu et uno clamore arietis ruinam
they-could with-one rush and one shout of-the-ram the-crash
et casum valde ponderosum, virium suarum fortitudine
and fall very weighty of-strength their by-the-might
et maximo conatu templo appulere: ex cujus singula
and with-the-greatest effort to-the-temple they-drove from whose single
percussione maximus lapidum cumulus in terram corruit,
striking a-very-great of-stones heap to the-ground fell
donec tota maceries et paries in eo loco quo contusus
until the-whole masonry and wall in that place where battered
est perforaretur. In capite ejus quoque arietis ferramenta
it-was was-pierced on the-head of-it also of-the-ram iron-fittings

solidissima trabem premunierant, ita ut nullo ingenio
most-solid the-beam had-fortified so that by-no device
offensam aliam pateretur quam illam quae vi molis et
harm other it-should-suffer than that which by-the-force of-mass and
roboris sui sibi a se ingereretur. Longus igitur labor
of-strength its to-itself from itself was-dealt long therefore the-labor
tundendi fuit a meridie inceptus, et post vesperam finitus.
of-battering was from noon begun and after evening finished

63 · THE BREACH

The besieged throw burning coals onto the dormitory roof and hurl stones, but the wall, rotten since the old fire, is breached. The attackers pour through the hole, piling over one another, and take the church with God's help, and the martyr can at last be mourned.

Interim obsessi illi, presentientes debilitatem parietis et
meanwhile besieged those foreseeing the-weakness of-the-wall and
perfossionem citius futuram, quid agerent dubii et
the-piercing sooner to-be what they-should-do doubtful and
inconstantes, tandem intus ardentes composuerant carbones,
unsteady at-last within burning they-had-prepared coals
pice et cera et butiro delinitos, quos tecto dormitorii
with-pitch and wax and butter smeared which on-the-roof of-the-dormitory
injecerant. At in momento carbones adherentes tegulis,
they-had-thrown but in a-moment the-coals clinging to-the-tiles
flammas vento flante vibrabant, ita ut maximae flammae
flames with-the-wind blowing brandished so that very-great flames
concitatae circumquaque tectum corriperent. A superiori
roused round-about the-roof seized from the-upper
itaque turri jaciebant molares lapides super tectum dormitorii,
and-so tower they-threw millstone stones upon the-roof of-the-dormitory

in ea parte qua aries pertundebat templum, ut utrumque
in that part where the-ram pierced the-temple that each
et ignem injectum tecto ne quis extingueret defenderent,
both the-fire thrown on-the-roof lest anyone should-put-out they-might-defend
et lapidibus obrutis et de alto precipitatis super perfossores
and with-stones hurled and from on-high cast-headlong upon the-piercers
templi a periculo introitus sese observarent. Tot et
of-the-temple from the-danger of-entry themselves they-might-guard so-many and
tanti lapides obruti non impediebant exactores arietis. Cum
so-great stones hurled not hindered the-workers of-the-ram when
igitur super capita sua ignis flammas vibrantes conspexissent
therefore over heads their of-fire the-flames brandishing they-had-seen
milites, unus ex illis tectum ascendit, et inter tot jactus
the-knights one of them the-roof climbed and among so-many throws
lapidum et jaculorum, ignem vix extinxerat. Patuit igitur
of-stones and of-javelins the-fire scarcely had-put-out lay-open therefore
post tot percussiones arietis foramen maximum in pariete
after so-many strokes of-the-ram an-opening very-great in the-wall
templi, qui citius satis quam credebatur perfossus est,
of-the-temple which sooner quite than was-believed pierced was
eo quod a tempore antiquae exarsionis templi, pluvia
by-this that from the-time of-the-old burning of-the-temple by-rain
et inundatione imbrium totum aedificium ecclesiae quasi
and flooding of-showers the-whole building of-the-church as-if
putridum staret, quia hactenus sine tecto ligneo nudum fuit.
rotten stood because hitherto without roof wooden bare it-was
Tunc clamor infinitus elevatus est extrinsecus, et universi
then a-shout endless raised was from-outside and all
qui in foribus impugnaverant obsessos et in choro inferius
who at the-doors had-attacked the-besieged and in the-choir below
et undique, per fenestras et in omni parte, qua accessum
and on-all-sides through the-windows and in every part where access

poterant sibi prestitisse, rescito eo quod perfossum
they-could for-themselves to-have-furnished learned by-this that pierced
fuisset templum, acriori animo et cupidissima victoriae
had-been the-temple with-sharper mind and most-eager of-victory
audacia decertarunt; qui quidem omnes a meridie usque in
daring contended who indeed all from noon right-up to
vesperam constanter utrimque aggressi sunt, pene deficientes
evening steadily on-both-sides attacked have almost failing
labore pugnae et armorum ponderositate. Sed jam
with-the-labor of-the-fight and of-arms the-weight but now
intellecta arietis perfossione, recreati et animositate confortati,
understood of-the-ram the-piercing refreshed and with-boldness strengthened
quasi jam ad arma proruissent primum, infestare ceperunt
as-if now to arms they-had-rushed first to-harass began
obsessos et sine simulatione persequi. At miseri obsessi,
the-besieged and without pretense to-pursue but the-wretched besieged
cum numero fuissent pauci, satis pauciores erant in pugna,
since in-number they-had-been few enough fewer were in the-fight
qui simul in uno loco pugnandi non habuerant gratiam, sed
who together in one place of-fighting not had the-advantage but
ad omnes accessus, scilicet in foribus, fenestris, choro et in
to all approaches namely at the-doors windows choir and in
eo maxime loco, quem aries jam possederat, incommoda vitae
that most place which the-ram now had-possessed the-troubles of-life
perpessi, jam divisim undique repugnantes, ab inimicis suis
having-suffered now separately on-all-sides fighting-back from enemies their
dispendium et perditionem deinceps suspiciebant. Illi quidem
loss and ruin thereafter they-suspected those indeed
qui in templo contra arietis exactores lapides, sagittas,
who in the-temple against of-the-ram the-workers stones arrows
contos, sudes et universi generis tela contorserant, timidiores
pikes stakes and of-every kind missiles had-hurled more-fearful

ideo fuerant quod pauci essent, et quod complices
for-this-reason had-been that few they-were and that accomplices
illorum divisim et pene deficientes prae labore diutino, contra
their separately and almost failing for labor long against
tam gravem exercitum pugnarent, insuper armorum egentes,
so heavy an-army fought besides of-arms in-want
unde se tuerentur non haberent; quantum tamen
with-which themselves they-might-protect not they-had as-much-as yet
ausi sunt, obsteterunt. At quidem illi exactores arietis et
dared they-had they-withstood but indeed those workers of-the-ram and
ceteri milites regis et nostri loci juvenes armati et audaces
the-other knights of-the-king and of-our place youths armed and bold
avidique pugnae, cum ex adverso inspexissent obsessos, jam
and-eager for-fight when from opposite they-had-seen the-besieged now
animos revocaverant suos, prae oculis cordis habentes quam
spirits had-recalled their before the-eyes of-the-heart having how
egregie pro patre et patria moriendum foret, et quam
excellently for father and fatherland to-be-died it-would-be and how
honesta victoria vincentibus proposita esset, quamque scelesti
honorable a-victory to-the-conquerors set-before was and-how criminal
et facinorosi fuissent traditores illi, qui de templo Christi
and villainous had-been traitors those who of the-temple of-Christ
speluncam sibi fecissent, et quod magis videbatur,
a-den for-themselves had-made and what more seemed
quam avide et cupide propter thesauri et pecuniae domini
how greedily and eagerly for of-the-treasure and of-the-money of-the-lord
consulis rapinam irruerent super obsessos ipsi, et idcirco
consul the-plunder they-rushed upon the-besieged they and for-that-reason
solummodo festinabant. Sed cujuscumque animi fuissent,
only they-hastened but of-whatever mind they-had-been
sine ordine, sine pugna, absque omni respectu armorum
without order without fight without any regard of-arms

sese uno impetu per medium foramen precipitaverunt, ita
themselves in-one rush through the-middle-of the-opening they-cast-headlong so
ut simul irruentes locum et tempus auferrent obsessis
that together rushing-in the-place and the-time they-took-away from-the-besieged
pugnandi vel aliquos interficiendi. Non enim cessabant ruere,
of-fighting or any of-killing not for they-ceased to-rush
donec sine interruptione quasi pontem se ipsos fecissent,
until without interruption as-if a-bridge them themselves they-had-made
et quod mira Dei gratia dispensatum est, sine
and what by-wonderful of-God grace arranged was without
vitae suae periculo mortali ingressi sunt, alii ruendo, alii
of-life their danger mortal entered have some by-rushing others
offendendo, alii intrusi violenter, alii surgere conantes a
by-stumbling others thrust violently others to-rise trying from
casu prosternentes, alii, sicut solet fieri in tanto tumultu,
the-fall throwing-down others as is-wont to-be-done in so-great a-tumult
sine ordine irruentes, vocibus et clamoribus atque cursuum
without order rushing-in with-voices and shouts and of-runnings
et ruinae armorumque stridore et fragore non solum
and of-falling and-of-arms with-the-grating and crash not only
templum, sed omne castrum et viciniam ejus replentes
the-temple but all the-castle and neighborhood its filling
introrsum, sicut exterius Deum laudantes et benedicentes
within as without God praising and blessing
pro victoria, qua victores suos honestavit, regem et
for the-victory with-which the-victors his he-honored the-king and
suos sublimavit, super omnia majestatis suae Deus nomen
his-men he-raised above all of-majesty his God the-name
glorificavit, ecclesiamque suam ab inquinatoribus in parte
glorified and-church his from the-defilers in part
mundavit, et gloriosum illum martirem suum consulemque
cleansed and glorious that martyr his and-consul

bonorum tunc primum deflendum pia veneratione et
of-the-good-men then first to-be-wept-for with-pious veneration and
oratione fidelium suorum circumfultum donavit.
with-prayer of-faithful his surrounded he-endowed

64 · FROMOLD AT THE TOMB; THE TOWER

Fromold the younger, after forty-four days, may at last pray at his lord's tomb. The besieged retreat into the tower, whose stairs the king's knights block, while the canons set watches over the tomb, and the altars are found untouched. In the tower the besieged keep sounding horns, given over to a reprobate mind.

Quod igitur prius non licuit, tunc tandem Fromoldo
what therefore before not was-permitted then at-last to-Fromold
juniori licuit, ex longo desiderio et ardenti animo
the-younger was-permitted from long desire and with-burning mind
vota Deo pro salute domini sui consulis offerre, lacrimis
vows to-God for the-salvation of-lord his the-consul to-offer with-tears
et cordis contritione sacrificium mactare et gaudio gaudere
and of-heart contrition sacrifice to-slay and with-joy to-rejoice
pro inspectatione loci, in quo dominus suus humatus
for the-viewing of-the-place in which lord his buried
quiescebat, et tunc primum exequias preparabat domino suo,
rested and then first rites he-prepared for-lord his
quem per tot dies sepultum, id est quadraginta quatuor,
whom for so-many days buried that is forty four
videre non poterat. Neque enim corpus ejus, sed solum
to-see not he-could nor for the-body his but only
vidit a foris sepulchrum, optabat quidem et oris et
he-saw from without the-tomb he-wished indeed and of-mouth and
cordis oratione deprecabatur, ut Deus in die resurrectionis
of-heart with-prayer he-besought that God on the-day of-resurrection

communis inter rectores fideles et summos suae presentis
common among the-rulers faithful and highest of-his present
ecclesiae principes, concederet sibi tandem dominum suum
church princes should-grant to-him at-last lord his
Karolum principem duplici gloria sublimatum videre, et cum
Charles the-prince with-double glory raised to-see and with
ipso manere et in gloria contemplacionis Trinitatis sanctae
him to-remain and in the-glory of-the-contemplation of-the-Trinity holy
cum illo perenniter beatificari. Reputaverat igitur pro grandi
with him everlastingly to-be-blessed he-had-reckoned therefore as a-great
dono, quod juxta tumbam domini sui liceret sibi mortem
gift that beside the-tomb of-lord his it-was-permitted to-him the-death
deflere, casum totius patriae conqueri et quem viventem
to-weep-for the-fall of-the-whole fatherland to-lament and whom living
dilexerat, jam traditum a servis summa dilectione exequi.
he-had-loved now betrayed by serfs with-highest love to-attend
Non sine lacrimis quidem hoc faciebat. O Deus! quot
not without tears indeed this he-did O God how-many
eo die tibi vota tuorum fidelium dignabaris suscipere, et
on-that day to-you vows of-your faithful you-deigned to-receive and
quicquid intermissum fuerat in eadem ecclesia culturae divinae,
whatever left-off had-been in the-same church of-worship divine
nimirum recompensatum fuit ea hora magnitudine et
surely made-good it-was at-that hour by-the-greatness and
multiplicitate justorum votorum. Stabat itaque cereus ardens ad
manifoldness of-just vows stood and-so a-candle burning at
caput consulis, quem posuerant in honorem et venerationem
the-head of-the-consul which had-set in honor and veneration
domini sui traditores illi. Postquam ergo irruerant in
of-lord their traitors those after therefore they-had-rushed into
templum super obsessos et clamor concitatus est fugiendo,
the-temple upon the-besieged and a-shout raised was by-fleeing

retraxerant se tam a pertusione quam a foribus et
had-drawn-back themselves as-much from the-breach as from the-doors and
a propugnaculis suis pessimi hominum, conscensaque turre
from the-bulwarks their the-worst of-men and-climbed the-tower
ad se defendendos in gradibus resistebant persequentibus.
for themselves to-be-defended on the-steps resisted the-pursuers
Igitur victores, christianissimi milites regis Franciae, gradus
therefore the-victors most-christian knights of-the-king of-France the-steps
obstruere et intercludere festinabant, lapidibus et lignis,
to-block and to-shut-off hastened with-stones and timbers
scriniis et trabibus et ceteris supplementis, ita ut nullus
chests and beams and other supplies so that none
obsessorum descendere posset in solarium, in quo consul
of-the-besieged to-come-down could into the-gallery in which the-consul
jacebat. Et ascendens rex in templum, planxit mortem
lay and going-up the-king into the-temple lamented the-death
nepotis sui Karoli, et apposuit custodiam, quae cautius
of-nephew his Charles and set a-guard which more-carefully
observaret turrim; alternis ergo vigiliis regis milites
should-watch the-tower by-alternate therefore watches of-the-king the-knights
observabant turrim cum obsessis. Quicquid igitur inventum
watched the-tower with the-besieged whatever therefore found
est in solario illo quod rapi potuit, omnium preda fuit.
was in gallery that which to-be-seized could of-all the-booty was
Tandem canonici ejusdem templi per scalas a choro in
at-last the-canons of-the-same temple by ladders from the-choir into
solarium conscendentes, ordinaverunt quosdam de fratribus,
the-gallery climbing appointed some of the-brothers
qui singulis noctibus vigilias circa sepulchrum comitis
who on-each night watches around the-tomb of-the-count
agerent. Cumque, confractis utensilibus templi, nihil in
should-keep and-when broken the-utensils of-the-temple nothing in

priori statu permansisset, circumspexerunt altaria et mensas
former state had-remained they-looked-round the-altars and tables
altaris Deo custode permansisse inmota, et congaudentes
of-the-altar God guarding to-have-remained unmoved and rejoicing
congaudio fratres quicquid deinceps obtinuerunt, non jure
with-joint-joy the-brothers whatever thereafter they-obtained not by-right
vel merito, sed pro solo Dei dono obtinuerunt. Conclusit
or by-merit but for the-sole of-God gift obtained closed
ergo Deus diem illum in conclusionem inimicorum suorum
therefore God day that in the-shutting-in of-enemies his
et in victoriam fidelium, exaltando nomen imperii sui
and in the-victory of-the-faithful exalting the-name of-rule his
in omnes terrarum fines. Non tamen desistebant obsessi
to all of-the-lands the-bounds not yet ceased besieged
illi vigilias suas sibi in turre instituere, cornibus
those watches their for-themselves in the-tower to-set with-horns
canere, et quasi adhuc aliquid domini obtinuissent, in tam
to-sound and as-if still anything of-lordship they-had-held in so
arcto imperiose agere, se ipsos non recognoscentes
narrow-a-strait imperiously to-act them themselves not recognizing
fuisse miserrimos; dati enim fuerant in reprobum
to-have-been most-wretched given for they-had-been to a-reprobate
sensum. Quicquid ergo deinceps egerunt, nec Deo nec
sense whatever therefore thereafter they-did neither to-God nor
hominibus probabile fuit, sed reprobatum et odiosum.
to-men approvable was but reproved and hateful

The men of Bruges beg the king on their knees to free Robert, and the next day the castellan of Ghent pleads for him too. The king agrees only so far as his honor and the princes' counsel allow.

Decimo septimo kal. maii, feria sexta, convenerunt
on-the-tenth and-seventh kalends of-May on-the-day sixth came-together
Brugenses coram rege, proni in terram, et adoraverunt ejus
the-men-of-Bruges before the-king prone to the-ground and worshiped his
dignitatem, quatenus pro precum et servitiorum suorum meritis
dignity that for of-prayers and of-services their the-merits
Robertum puerum exeundi ab obsessis libertate donaret
Robert the-boy of-going-out from the-besieged with-freedom he-should-endow
et ejus innocentiae purgationem legitimam susciperet. At ipse
and of-his innocence the-clearing lawful should-receive but he
rex petitiones eorum se facturum assensit, salvo honore
the-king petitions their himself about-to-do assented saving the-honor
et gratia propriae personae simulque principum terrae,
and favor of-his-own person and-together of-the-princes of-the-land
sine quorum consilio nihil super eo acturum statuerat.
without whose counsel nothing about him about-to-do he-had-determined
Sexto decimo kal. maii, sabbato, castellanus Gandensium
on-the-sixth and-tenth kalends of-May on-Saturday the-castellan of-the-men-of-Ghent
cum Arnoldo ex Grandberga et collectis proceribus viciniae
with Arnold of Grembergen and gathered the-nobles of-neighborhood
suae antevenit, regem obsecrans omni modo pro liberatione
his came-before the-king beseeching in-every way for the-release
Roberti pueri. Cui rex ait, nihil cum honore suo
of-Robert the-boy to-whom the-king says nothing with honor his

posse eis consentire absque principum communi consilio,
to-be-able to-them to-consent without of-the-princes common counsel
alioquin contra fidem et juramentum suum ageret.
otherwise against faith and oath his he-would-act

66 · THE COUNT RECEIVED AT SAINT OMER

At Saint Omer the boys come out with bows to ask the count for their customary right to hunt birds and squirrels in the woods, and he grants it gladly. The citizens and clergy receive him with song, and homage is done.

Decimo quinto kal. maii, dominica Surrexit pastor bonus,
on-the-tenth and-fifth kalends of-May on-Sunday Has-risen the-shepherd good
nunciatum est regi comitem novum Flandriae in Sancto
announced it-was to-the-king the-count new of-Flanders at Saint
Audomaro cum honore, more predecessorum comitum
Omer with honor in-the-manner of-the-predecessors counts
terrae, gratanter susceptum. Nam obviam processerant pueri,
of-the-land gladly received for to-meet had-gone-forth boys
arcus et sagittas ferentes, ad occursum comitis agiles et
bows and arrows carrying to the-meeting of-the-count nimble and
velociores, turmatim procedentes, quasi per pugnam resistere
swifter in-troops advancing as-if by fight to-resist
simulantes, succincti et preparati arcubus intensis et nervis,
pretending girded and prepared with-bows strung and strings
quibus, si expediret, sagittando invaderent comitem
with-which if it-should-be-expedient by-shooting they-might-attack the-count
et suos. Viso ergo puerorum occursu, consul et sui
and his-men seen therefore of-the-boys the-meeting the-consul and his-men
quidnam sibi voluissent per internuntium requisivit.
what to-themselves they-had-wanted through a-go-between asked

Et acclamaverunt comiti quatenus feodum, quod a
and they-cried to-the-count that the-fief which from
predecessoribus suis semper pueri nostri obtinuerant: «Hoc
predecessors his always boys our had-held this
a te obtinere juris erat nostris, circa nemorum saltus in
from you to-obtain right it-was for-ours around of-the-woods the-glades on
festis sanctorum et aestatis tempore licenter vagari, aviculas
the-feasts of-the-saints and of-summer in-the-time freely to-roam little-birds
capere, spiriolos et vulpes sagittare et hujusmodi puerilia
to-catch squirrels and foxes to-shoot and of-this-kind boyish-things
recreando satagere. Haec ergo licenter egimus hactenus
by-recreating to-busy-ourselves these therefore freely we-have-done hitherto
et volumus eadem a te licentia ludorum nostrorum
and we-wish the-same from you with-the-leave of-games our
mores deinceps renovare.» Proinde succedenter cives
the-customs thereafter to-renew thereupon next the-citizens
obviam armata manu processerant, expectantes puerorum
to-meet with-armed hand had-gone-forth awaiting of-boys
suorum reditum et comitis novi adventationem. Igitur comes
their the-return and of-the-count new the-arrival therefore count
Willelmus, qui aetate juventae pubescebat, puerilia vix
William who in-age of-youth was-growing-up boyish scarcely
tempora excedens, jucundo animo ludicra pueris morose
times passing with-glad mind the-games to-the-boys indulgently
concessit, et plausu et adjocatione cum pueris, vexillum
granted and with-applause and joking with the-boys the-banner
et signum puerorum arripiens, jocundabatur. Cui laudes
and ensign of-the-boys seizing was-merry to-whom praises
canere et tripudiorum voces personare ceperant, cum
to-sing and of-dances the-sounds to-resound they-had-begun when
cives eminus prospicientes viderunt a pueris sollempniter
the-citizens from-afar looking-out saw by the-boys solemnly

comitem susceptum et cum plausu et pacis veneratione
the-count received and with applause and of-peace veneration
circumfultum, ad ipsos usque descendentem. Igitur postquam
surrounded to them right-up coming-down therefore after
simul convenerant et comes et populus, cum processione
together had-come both the-count and the-people with procession
clerus loci ejus honoris ac gloriae sublimatione obviam
the-clergy of-place that of-honor and of-glory with-exaltation to-meet
venit in thure et cereis, sicut mos est in susceptione
came with incense and candles as the-custom is in the-reception
comitatum noviter obtinentium, vocum jubilatione et melodum
the-countship newly of-those-holding of-voices with-jubilation and of-melodious
consonantiis personantes, omnibus civibus applaudentibus,
harmonies resounding all the-citizens applauding
susceperunt, et usque infra ecclesiam eadem melodiarum
they-received and right-up within the-church with-the-same of-melodies
suavitate sollempniter perduxerunt. Ubi debitum orationis
sweetness solemnly they-led where the-due of-prayer
Deo obsequium catholice electus devote obtulit, simulque
to-God service catholicly the-chosen-one devoutly offered and-together
pro eo populus et clerus, ut ipso administrante comitatum,
for him the-people and clergy that he administering the-countship
Deus ita regeret et protegeret, quatenus deinceps pace et
God so might-rule and protect that thereafter peace and
salute et comiti et Deo sua redderent. Post suceptionem
salvation both to-the-count and to-God theirs they-might-render after the-reception
vero hominia et securitates fecerunt. A Teruannorum urbe
but homages and assurances they-made from of-Thérouanne the-city
quidem descenderat in Sanctum Audomarum.
indeed he-had-come-down to Saint Omer

Hugh Champ-d'Avène and Walter of Vladslo attack William of Ypres at Aire, one of the many Flemish castles he has seized, claiming the county as a bastard of the comital line. Baldwin of Aalst and the men of Ghent besiege Oudenaarde, held by the count of Mons, who claims Flanders by right of kinship.

Illa quoque tempestate Hugo Campus-Avenae et Walterus ex
at-that also time Hugh Champ-d'Avène and Walter of
Frorerdeslo cum suis apud Ariam castrum insultum fecerant,
Vladslo with their-men at Aire the-castle an-assault had-made
ubi Willelmus ille adulterinus comes Iprensium intus se
where William that adulterine count of-the-men-of-Ypres within himself
et suos receperat, et locum et castrum premunierat. Ipse enim
and his-men had-received and the-place and castle had-fortified he for
comitatum arripuerat, violenter obtinuerat Flandriarum castra
the-countship had-seized violently had-held of-the-Flanders the-castles
et munitiones adhuc plures, scilicet Ipram castrum, Formeselam
and strongholds still many namely Ypres the-castle Voormezele
oppidum, Casletum castellum, Furnum castrum, Ariam castrum
the-town Cassel the-fortress Furnes the-castle Aire the-castle
et omnem viciniam circa castra predicta, et Bergas
and all the-neighborhood around the-castles aforesaid and Bergues
castrum et cetera. Ipse namque de linea comitum spurius
the-castle and the-rest he for of the-line of-the-counts a-bastard
erat atque ea affinitate cognationis comitatum obtinuisse
was and by-that tie of-kinship the-countship to-have-held
existimaverat. Duos igitur milites prefati principes deiecerunt
he-had-reckoned two therefore knights the-aforesaid princes threw-down
et equos quinque lucrati sunt. Eadem tempestate Baldwinus
and horses five gained have at-the-same time Baldwin

ex Alst et Razo cum gravissimo Gendensium exercitu
of Aalst and Razo with a-most-heavy of-the-men-of-Ghent army
obsederant castrum Oldenarda, in quo comes de Montibus
had-besieged the-castle Oudenaarde in which the-count of Mons
se et suos introductos premunierat, ad invadendum regnum
himself and his-men led-in had-fortified for invading the-realm
Flandriarum, quod sibi jure cognationis justius pertinebat.
of-the-Flanders which to-him by-right of-kinship more-justly belonged

68 · THE COUNTS' DESCENT

Galbert traces the counts to Baldwin the Bearded, whose sons flanked his land like wings: Baldwin, who married Richilde of Mons and fathered Baldwin and Arnulf, and Robert, who married Gertrude of Holland and fathered Adela, mother of Charles.

Nam, ut paulo altius retexamus comitum predecessorum
for that a-little higher we-may-unweave of-the-counts predecessors
suorum originem, Baldwinus comes Barbatus principium
his the-origin Baldwin the-count the-Bearded the-beginning
generis subsequentium comitum fuit. Hic vero cum diem
of-the-lineage of-the-following counts was this-man but when the-day
obierat, in Insulis humatus est. Habuit itaque duos filios post
he-had-met at Lille buried was he-had and-so two sons after
se heredes terrae Flandrensis, Baldewinum et Robertum.
himself heirs of-the-land Flemish Baldwin and Robert
Utrosque quidem pater, dum viveret, uxores ducere precepit,
both indeed the-father while he-lived wives to-take commanded
et Baldewinum in Haenau Richildem comitissam de Montibus
and Baldwin in Hainaut Richilde the-countess of Mons
accipere in conjugem fecit, de qua genuit filios duos
to-receive as wife he-made from whom he-begot sons two

vir ejus; alter eorum vocatus est Baldewinus et alter
the-husband her one of-them called was Baldwin and the-other
eorum Arnoldus. Robertus igitur duxit Gertrudem comitissam
of-them Arnulf Robert therefore married Gertrude the-countess
Holdlandensem uxorem, de qua post peractam traditionem
of-Holland as-wife from whom after accomplished the-betrayal
genuit abbatissam Messinis et Gertrudem, matrem Simonis et
he-begot the-abbess of-Messines and Gertrude mother of-Simon and
Gerardi, quae quidem ducissa fuit in Elsatam: Theodericus dux
of-Gerard who indeed duchess was in Alsace Theoderic the-duke
eam duxerat. Genuit etiam matrem Karoli comitis Adalam,
her had-married he-begot also the-mother of-Charles the-count Adela
quae a primo viro soluta, in Salerniam duci nupsit.
who from the-first husband loosed into Salerno to-the-duke was-married
Vir quoque ejus primus, rex Daciae Cnuto, a suis
the-husband also her first the-king of-Denmark Cnut by his-own
traditus, in ecclesia occisus, martirium pro justitia moriendo cum
betrayed in a-church slain martyrdom for justice by-dying with
sanctis possidet. Cumque ille primus pater Barbatus Baldwinus
the-saints possesses and-when that first father the-Bearded Baldwin
viveret, filios suos alterum a sinistra et alterum a dextera, quasi
lived sons his one on the-left and the-other on the-right as-if
duas alas, quibus per omnes terras suas volaret, expanderat;
two wings by-which through all lands his he-might-fly he-had-spread-out
ipse quoque medium, scilicet Flandriam, solus regebat.
he also the-middle namely Flanders alone ruled

Baldwin of Mons makes his brother Robert swear at Bruges to keep faith with his sons, but after Baldwin's death Robert wins over the coast with bribes, using a cleric feigning blindness as his messenger, and invades. His nephew Arnulf is killed in battle by his own serfs. Robert is captured and released and rules Flanders, and the count of Mons, descended from Arnulf's brother, now claims his inheritance, as God visits the fathers' sins unto the fourth generation.

Cumque plenus dierum bonorum obiisset, senior filius ejus
and-when full of-days good he-had-died the-elder son his
Baldewinus comes de Montibus, cum uxore sua Richilde,
Baldwin count of Mons with wife his Richilde
comitatum obtinuit Flandriae. Igitur timens, ne aliqua
the-countship obtained of-Flanders therefore fearing lest some
inquietudo vel traditio per fratrem suum Robertum sibi
disquiet or betrayal through brother his Robert to-himself
fieri posset et filiis, hominium et securitatem a
to-be-done could and to-(his)-sons homage and assurance from
fratre sibi fieri requisivit et filiis suis. Cumque
his-brother to-himself to-be-made he-demanded and to-sons his and-when
super hoc, cum principibus consilio habito, utile fore
about this with the-princes counsel held useful to-be
tam patriae quam sibi prenosset, arcessito fratre
as-much for-the-fatherland as for-himself he-had-foreknown summoned brother
suo consule aquatico Roberto, in Brudgis curiam suam
his the-consul of-the-waters Robert at Bruges court his
convocavit, simulque pares et barones totius sui comitatus.
he-called-together and-together the-peers and barons of-the-whole his countship
In quorum omnium presentia promulgavit hujuscemodi verba:
in whose of-all presence he-proclaimed of-this-kind words
«Ego Flandriarum comes Baldewinus, in posterum volens
I of-the-Flanders count Baldwin for the-future wishing

precavere patriae huic et liberis meis, ne a fratre
to-provide for-fatherland this and for-children my lest from brother
meo per dolos et traditiones filii mei et incolae terrae
my through wiles and betrayals sons my and the-inhabitants of-land
meae aliquid injuriae et exheredationis patiantur, obsecro et
my any wrong and disinheritance should-suffer I-beseech and
precipio fratri meo Roberto comiti aquarum, ut fidem et
command brother my Robert count of-the-waters that faith and
securitatem juret filiis meis post mortem meam, ut neque
assurance he-swear to-sons my after death my that neither
fraude vel subtracto vim et dolum inferat filiis meis post
by-fraud or by-withdrawal force and guile he-bring on-sons my after
obitum meum, sed in sua et suorum persona fidem filiis
death my but in his and of-his-men person faith to-sons
meis, scilicet nepotibus suis, jurabit et tenebit, ipso vivente,
my namely to-nephews his he-shall-swear and shall-keep he living
sicut melius sciri poterit; et dabo sibi munera et
as better to-be-known shall-be-able and I-shall-give to-him gifts and
donaria multa sub eadem conditione.» Igitur in ecclesia
presents many under the-same condition therefore in the-church
beati Donatiani in Brudgis juramentum factum est super
of-blessed Donatian at Bruges the-oath made was upon
sanctorum reliquias infinitas, quas afferri comes Baldewinus
of-the-saints relics countless which to-be-brought count Baldwin
preceperat, in presentia omnium, qui eo tempore tam
had-commanded in the-presence of-all who at-that time as-much
pares quam principes erant in terra, et, acceptis donariis
peers as princes were in the-land and received the-presents
consul rediit. Igitur cum Balduinus vir Richildis in Brugis
the-consul returned therefore when Baldwin husband of-Richilde at Bruges
obiisset, filius ejus Arnoldus, cui patria pertinebat,
had-died son his Arnulf to-whom the-fatherland belonged

cum mater versus Montes et viciniam matris rediit,
when (his)-mother toward Mons and the-neighborhood of-his-mother returned
circa Casletum et Sanctum Audomarum et illas partes
around Cassel and Saint Omer and those parts
conversabatur. Nondum enim juvenis ille arma acceperat
he-dwelt not-yet for youth that arms had-taken
sed militiae virtutem arripuerat. Audierat namque Robertus
but of-knighthood the-strength he-had-seized had-heard for Robert
comes Holdlandensis patriam relictam nepotibus suis adhuc
count of-Holland the-fatherland left to-nephews his still
parvulis aetate, et matrem puerorum simul se a confinio
little in-age and the-mother of-the-boys together herself from the-border
circa Bruggas jacente subtraxisse: habuit occasionem per
around Bruges lying to-have-withdrawn he-had an-occasion through
hoc et principium oportunitatemque traditionis. Misit latenter
this and the-beginning and-the-opportunity of-betrayal he-sent secretly
et in dolo ad principes et majores viciniae circa mare,
and in guile to the-princes and greater-men of-the-neighborhood around the-sea
scilicet in Isendica, Ostburg, Reddenburg et Brugis, et ad
namely at IJzendijke Oostburg Aardenburg and Bruges and to
Flandrenses marinos, et pretio et sponsionibus confederavit
the-Flemings of-the-sea and by-price and by-promises he-allied
sibi eos, quatenus ipse per illos patriae comitatum
to-himself them that he through them of-the-fatherland the-countship
obtineret, nepotesque qui parvuli et inutiles extitissent
might-obtain and-the-nephews who little and useless had-been
propelleret. Habuit quendam clericum in familia sua, qui
might-drive-out he-had a-certain cleric in household his who
internuntius hujus traditionis fidelis fuit; qui cum toties
go-between of-this betrayal faithful was who when so-often
Bruggas veniret et circa confinia Flandriae, cepit rumor
to-Bruges he-came and around the-borders of-Flanders began a-rumor

diffamari, quod clericus ille traditionis internuntius esset.
to-be-spread that cleric that of-the-betrayal the-go-between was
Tunc ille subterfugiens alio tempore iterum mandata
then he slipping-away at-another time again the-commands
domini sui deferens principibus, simulaverat se fuisse
of-lord his carrying to-the-princes had-pretended himself to-have-been
cecum, et preeunte duce suo, ipse subsequebatur suspensis
blind and going-before guide his he followed with-hanging
manibus et palpitans baculo, sicque peregit corde et
hands and groping with-a-staff and-thus accomplished in-heart and
oculis cecus traditionem mortis et cecitatis. Igitur cum
in-eyes blind a-betrayal of-death and of-blindness therefore when
omnium principum patriae animos, fidem et securitatem
of-all the-princes of-the-fatherland the-minds faith and assurance
comes Holdlandiae obtinuisset, navibus insidens cum armata
the-count of-Holland had-obtained on-ships sitting with armed
manu clanculo tantummodo venit in Flandriam, accitisque
hand secretly only came into Flanders and-summoned
omnibus traditoribus clanculo, nocte quadam signum dederunt
all the-traitors secretly by-night a-certain a-signal they-gave
complicibus suis, ut in loco qui dicitur Clipello domum
to-accomplices their that in the-place which is-called Kapelle a-house
incenderent et illic ad signum flammae convenirent.
they-should-burn and there at the-signal of-flame they-should-come-together
Cumque eodem signo omnes convenissent, fuit eorum turba
and-when at-the-same signal all had-come-together was their crowd
multiplex et valida, et abierunt deinceps aperte persequendo
manifold and strong and they-went-off thereafter openly pursuing
puerum Arnoldum, qui eo tempore in Casleto rem
the-boy Arnulf who at-that time at Cassel the-matter
ignorans degebat cum paucis, qui etiam conscii traditionis
not-knowing was-living with a-few who also privy of-the-betrayal

puerum dominum suum exhortabantur, ut cum patruo suo
the-boy lord their urged that with uncle his
traditore bellum iniret, et quia juste resisteret ei,
the-traitor battle he-should-enter and because justly he-resisted him
victoriam ei promittebant a Deo concedendam. Igitur
victory to-him they-promised by God to-be-granted therefore
puer Arnoldus animatus ad bellum cum militibus admodum
the-boy Arnulf roused to battle with knights very
paucis occurrit, quem in ipso tumultu belli ipsi servi
few ran-to-meet whom in the-very tumult of-battle the-very serfs
sui qui eum armaverant et armorum celaturas prenoverant,
his who him had-armed and of-the-arms the-engravings had-foreknown
quasi extranei et alii essent quam servi, dejecerunt puerum
as-if strangers and others they-were than serfs threw-down the-boy
dominum suum et gladiis jugulaverunt, traditoque domino
lord their and with-swords slaughtered and-betrayed lord
suo, universi, qui in parte pueri pugnaverant, in fugam
their all who on the-side of-the-boy had-fought into flight
conversi, alii interfecti, ibidem exspiraverunt, alii lethaliter
turned some slain there expired others mortally
vulnerati, mortem in paucis vitae flatibus perpessi sunt.
wounded death in a-few of-life breaths suffered have
Multi quidem mortui, multi vulnerati multique capti sunt.
many indeed dead many wounded and-many captured were
Securus ab hoste comes Robertus cum exercitum suum
secure from the-enemy count Robert when army his
pererraret, quidam Wilfricus Rabel, qui fidelis adhuc
he-was-roaming-through a-certain Wulfric Rabel who faithful still
permanserat cum puero, quem interfectum ignoraverat, in
had-remained with the-boy whom slain he-had-not-known in
virtute et cum potentia sua cepit Robertum consulem
strength and with power his took Robert the-consul

traditorem illum et conjecit in captivitatem. Sedato ergo
traitor that and threw into captivity calmed therefore
tumultu illius diei, convenerunt omnes pares patriae,
the-tumult of-that day came-together all the-peers of-the-fatherland
et obsederunt undique castellanum illum Wilfricum in
and besieged on-all-sides castellan that Wulfric at
Sancto Audomaro, et coegerunt illum reddere Robertum
Saint Omer and forced him to-give-back Robert
comitem, quem cum reddidisset, in consulem patriae
the-count whom when he-had-given-back as consul of-the-fatherland
restituerunt. Frater igitur Arnoldi traditi pueri, qui
they-restored the-brother therefore of-Arnulf the-betrayed boy who
superstes remansit nomine Baldewinus, heredes post se
surviving remained by-name Baldwin heirs after himself
reliquit de quorum linea iste puer de Montibus comes
left from whose line this boy of Mons count
et miles strenuus, jure patriam obtenturus Flandriarum,
and knight vigorous by-right the-fatherland about-to-hold of-the-Flanders
nunc audita traditione consulis Karoli, pro jure hereditario
now heard the-betrayal of-the-consul Charles by right hereditary
requirit patriam et hereditatem suam Flandriam totam.
claims the-fatherland and inheritance his Flanders whole
Facit igitur quod potest, et novo comiti nostro suum
he-does therefore what he-can and to-the-new count our his
facere parum est; et notandum in hoc facto antiquae
to-do little is and it-must-be-noted in this deed of-the-old
traditionis illud propheticum: Quoniam Deus iniquitates
betrayal that prophetic-saying since God the-iniquities
patrum solet vindictae severitate corrigere in tertiam et
of-the-fathers is-wont of-vengeance with-severity to-correct unto the-third and
quartam generationem.
fourth generation

Robert, his son Robert, Baldwin, and Charles are the four generations, and in Charles's martyrdom, in the church of the oath, God ends the vengeance. The traitors who won Robert the county, slighted, plot his death, but one informs, and they are beheaded or exiled.

Robertus itaque ille, qui nepotem suum tradidit, primus
Robert and-so that who nephew his betrayed first
numeretur, filius quoque ipsius Robertus, qui in Atrebato
let-be-counted the-son also his Robert who at Arras
jacet, secundus et successione et comitatu. Post quem filius
lies second both in-succession and in-countship after whom son
ejus Baldewinus comes, qui in Sancto Audomaro jacet, tertius
his Baldwin count who at Saint Omer lies third
fuit. Post illum vero comes, optimus omnium consulum
was after him but the-count best of-all consuls
consul, terrenae dignitatis sidus et lumen precipuum, quartus
the-consul of-earthly dignity the-star and light chief fourth
fuit, in cujus traditione et martirio Deus antiquae traditionis
was in whose betrayal and martyrdom God of-the-old betrayal
terminavit vindictae correctionem, et pro justitia patriae
ended of-vengeance the-correction and for the-justice of-the-fatherland
occisum transduxit in requiem sanctorum, in eodem loco in
slain led-across into the-rest of-the-saints in the-same place in
quo olim juratum est. Utrumque Deus in secunda traditione
which once sworn it-was both God in the-second betrayal
dispensavit, et antiquae traditionis vindictam exercuit, et
arranged and of-the-old betrayal vengeance exercised and
pro justitia morientem statim inter sanctos martires suscepit.
for justice dying at-once among the-saints martyrs received

Igitur postquam Robertus comes ille, qui nepotem suum
therefore after Robert count that who nephew his
tradiderat, in consulatu sedisset, traditores Flandriae qui sibi
had-betrayed in the-consulship had-sat the-traitors of-Flanders who to-him
comitatum tradiderant, semper suspectos habuit, et ad suum
the-countship had-betrayed always suspected he-held and to his
consilium nullo modo accedere permisit. Igitur videntes se
counsel in-no way to-approach he-allowed therefore seeing themselves
a consule suo contempni et despici, seorsum inierunt
by consul their to-be-scorned and to-be-despised apart they-entered
consilium, ut dolo interficerent consulem, et fratrem Arnoldi
counsel that by-guile they-might-kill the-consul and the-brother of-Arnulf
pueri traditi nomine Baldewinum in consulem susciperent,
the-boy betrayed by-name Baldwin as consul they-might-take-up
sicut justum erat, quia justior heres Flandriarum erat; iterum
as just it-was because more-just heir of-the-Flanders he-was again
sicut olim in desertum locum convenerunt, tractantes mortem
as once into a-deserted place they-came-together treating the-death
inferendam domino suo. Cumque accepta opportunitate tradendi
to-be-brought on-lord their and-when received the-opportunity of-betraying
rediissent, unus militum qui intererat traditioni ad pedes
they-had-returned one of-the-knights who was-present at-the-betrayal at the-feet
comitis provolutus accusavit ceteros nefandae traditionis illius
of-the-count thrown accused the-others of-wicked betrayal that
complices, qui mortem comitis juraverant. Igitur ad bellum
the-accomplices who the-death of-the-count had-sworn therefore to combat
accusati, per consulem evocati et convicti, decollati sunt alii,
the-accused by the-consul called-out and convicted beheaded were some
et alii exilio dampnati, plures quippe proscripti. Tandem
and some to-exile condemned many indeed proscribed at-last
si dignum esset auditu, quod vere non est, sed admiratione
if worthy it-were of-hearing which truly not it-is but with-wonder

sola scribendum, in quarta vel tertia generis linea Deus
only to-be-written in the-fourth or third of-lineage line God
vindicavit consequenter in genere traditorum scilicet antiquam
avenged consequently in the-lineage of-the-traitors namely the-old
traditionem novis periculis, novo genere precipitationis.
betrayal by-new dangers by-a-new kind of-casting-headlong

71 · THE PROVOST'S ANCESTRY

Erembald, knight of the castellan Boldran and his wife's lover, pushed Boldran into the Scheldt by night, married the widow, and bought the viscountship. His sons were the provost Bertulf, Haket, Wulfric Cnop, Lambert Nappin, and Robert, and under Haket, fourth castellan, the drowning is punished by the new fall from the count's battlements, as Exodus says.

Paullo superius igitur principium generis prepositi et
a-little higher therefore the-beginning of-the-lineage of-the-provost and
nepotum suorum recognoscere libet. Boldrannus castellanus
of-nephews his to-recognize it-is-pleasing Boldran castellan
fuit in Brudgis, cujus uxor erat nomine Dedda vel Duva. Hujus
was at Bruges whose wife was by-name Dedda or Duva of-this
Boldranni homo et miles fuit Erembaldus, de Furnis natus.
Boldran man and knight was Erembald of Furnes born
Imperata fuit quaedam expeditio Flandrensibus, et itum est
ordered was a-certain expedition to-the-Flemings and gone it-was
equis et navibus pro defensione patriae usque ad locum
on-horses and ships for the-defense of-the-fatherland right-up to the-place
periculi et insultus terrae. Cum vero navibus perlaberentur
of-danger and of-assault of-the-land when but by-ships they-were-gliding-along
Scaldim fluvium, Boldrannus castellanus et Erembaldus miles
the-Scheldt river Boldran the-castellan and Erembald knight

suus, cui prae ceteris confidebat, ceterique plures omnes
his in-whom beyond the-others he-trusted and-the-other many all
loricas induti et ad pugnam preparati, venit nox, et
coats-of-mail clad and for fight prepared came night and
fixerant anchoram in medio amne, ut diem expectarent.
they-had-fixed the-anchor in the-middle-of stream that the-day they-might-await
At prefatus ille Erembaldus adulterio abutebatur saepe uxore
but aforesaid that Erembald in-adultery abused often the-wife
domini sui castellani. Illa quoque adultera, sicut aiunt,
of-lord his the-castellan she also the-adulteress as they-say
promiserat adultero suo vicecomitatum, si forte vir ejus cito
had-promised to-adulterer her the-viscountship if perhaps husband her soon
moreretur; unde adulter semper domino suo machinabatur
should-die whence the-adulterer always for-lord his plotted
mortem. Facto quoque noctis silentio, dum castellanus ad
death made also of-the-night the-silence while the-castellan for
mingendum in ora stetisset navis, ille Erembaldus retro
urinating on the-edge had-stood of-the-ship that Erembald from-behind
accurrens, longe a navi projectum dominum in profundum
running-up far from the-ship thrown the-lord into the-depth
torrentis aquosi precipitavit. Hoc vero dormientibus ceteris
of-the-torrent watery cast-headlong this but while-sleeping the-others
factum est, et nemo preter adulterum illum sciebat, quo
done was and no-one except adulterer that knew where
devenisset castellanus ille, qui absque liberis submersus erat.
had-come castellan that who without children drowned was
Reversus ergo Erembaldus, adulteram suam duxit uxorem, et
returned therefore Erembald adulteress his married as-wife and
facultatibus opum domini sui emit vicecomitatum. De qua
with-the-means of-the-wealth of-lord his bought the-viscountship from which
uxore genuit prepositum Bertulfum, Haket, Wulfricum Cnop,
wife he-begot the-provost Bertulf Haket Wulfric Cnop

Lambertum Nappin, patrem Borsiardi, Robertum quoque
Lambert Nappin father of-Borsiard Robert also
castellanum post ipsum secundo loco. Post ipsum Robertum,
castellan after him in-the-second place after that Robert
filius ejus Walterus castellanus tertio vicecomitatus loco
son his Walter castellan in-the-third of-the-viscountship place
heres successit. Post hunc, Haket castellanus fuit, sub
heir succeeded after this-man Haket castellan was under
cujus tempore Karolus comes traditus est. In hoc ergo
whose time Charles the-count betrayed was in this therefore
gradu quarto punita est in successores suos antiqua
degree fourth punished was upon successors his the-old
precipitatio Boldranni nova ista precipitatione, quae facta est
casting-headlong of-Boldran by-new this casting-headlong which done was
ab propugnaculis camerae comitis in Brudgis, et forsitan
from the-bulwarks of-the-chamber of-the-count at Bruges and perhaps
dispensante Deo, punitum est in eis peccatum parentum,
arranging-it God punished was in them the-sin of-the-parents
sicut in Exodo legitur, ubi ait Dominus ad Moysen in
as in Exodus is-read where says the-Lord to Moses in
XXXIV. capitulo ejusdem Exodi, ubi leges de universis
the-34th chapter of-the-same Exodus where the-laws about all-things
protulit Deus, dicens: Ego sum dominus Deus tuus fortis
brought-forth God saying I am the-Lord God your strong
zelotes, visitans iniquitatem patrum in filiis, in tertiam
jealous visiting the-iniquity of-the-fathers upon the-sons unto the-third
et quartam generationem eorum, qui oderunt me.
and fourth generation of-those who hate me

The count of Mons routs the men of Ghent at Oudenaarde, many drowning, and takes Ninove. At Bruges a squire slips down from the tower by a rope and is captured.

Revertamur igitur ad describendum in Oldenarda eventum, quia
let-us-return therefore to describing at Oudenaarde the-outcome since
comes de Montibus cum burgensibus ejusdem loci et militiae
the-count of Mons with the-burghers of-the-same place and of-knighthood
impetu irruit super Gendenses, et conversos in fugam
with-the-rush rushed upon the-men-of-Ghent and turned into flight
alios interemit, alios vulneribus infecit et multos cepit. Major
some he-killed others with-wounds stained and many took the-greater
quidem fugientium pars submersa est fluctibus ipsis, qui navibus
indeed of-the-fleeing part drowned was in-the-waves the-very who by-ships
devecti obsidionem preordinaverant; prevaluerant enim comes
carried the-siege had-pre-arranged had-prevailed for the-count
et sui circa fines illos. Castrum quoque Ninive obtinuerat,
and his-men around bounds those the-castle also of-Ninove he-had-gained
et satellites suos in eo posuerat acutiores et fortiores.
and retainers his in it had-placed sharper and stronger
Eodem die in Brugis armiger unus a turre per funem
on-the-same day at Bruges a-squire one from the-tower by a-rope
elapsus est, qui statim captus, trahebatur ad carcerem, et in
slipped-down was who at-once captured was-dragged to prison and into
eo intrusus diem suae perditionis, quamvis nolens, expectabat.
it thrust the-day of-his ruin although unwilling awaited

Angered by the citizens' renewed plea for Robert, the king orders the tower undermined. The besieged, sickened by sour wine, rotten bread, and tasteless water, beg to come out.

Decimo quarto kal. maii, feria secunda, iterum cives nostri
on-the-tenth and-fourth kalends of-May on-the-day second again citizens our
ad genua regis devoluti, deprecabantur pro Roberti liberatione.
at the-knees of-the-king rolled besought for of-Robert the-release
Indignatus vero rex despexit eos, qui toties ipsum vexarent,
indignant but the-king scorned them who so-often him troubled
et iratus, jussit servos suos accelerato ire et ferramentis
and angry ordered servants his with-haste to-go and with-iron-tools
turrim succidere. Statimque ferramentis demoliebantur turrim
the-tower to-cut-under and-at-once with-iron-tools they-demolished the-tower
inferius. Quibus succidentibus, obsessos timor mortalis invasit,
below which cutting-under the-besieged a-fear mortal invaded
ita ut sine modo stupore laborarent, cibus eis et potus
so that without measure with-stupor they-labored food to-them and drink
fastidiret, omnes sensus hebetarent et languerent. Proinde
brought-loathing all senses grew-dull and languished thereupon
macerati esurie et siti, cum sufficienter haberent quo vitam
wasted by-hunger and thirst though sufficiently they-had with-which life
continuarent, evocabant illos quos foras viderant vagantes in
they-might-continue they-called-out those whom outside they-had-seen roaming in
curte castri, qui casum et ruinam turris succisae jam in
the-court of-the-castle who the-fall and ruin of-the-tower cut-under now in
parte expectabant, quia vehementi sitis ariditate arescerent,
part awaited because with-vehement of-thirst dryness they-were-parched
simulque esurie et fame languerent, et mira Dei
and-together with-hunger and famine languished and by-wonderful of-God

dispensatione factum est, ut ipsis traditoribus vinum suum
dispensation done it-was that to-the-very traitors wine their
acidum et sine sapore jam haustum et potatum feteret,
sour and without savor now drawn and drunk stank
frumenta et panes putrida saperent, et aqua insipida eis
the-grain and loaves rotten tasted and the-water tasteless to-them
nihil prodesset, ita ut gustu et odore putrido fastiditi, fame
nothing availed so that by-taste and smell rotten disgusted by-hunger
et siti pene defecissent. Hac igitur egestate coacti, querebant
and thirst almost they-had-failed by-this therefore want compelled they-sought
exeundi a turre licentiam et abeundi in quemcumque
of-going-out from the-tower leave and of-going-away to whatever
alium locum, quo principes decernerent ipsos ituros. Succisores
other place where the-princes should-decide them about-to-go the-cutters
igitur turris jam gradus avulserant, et parumper restabat,
therefore of-the-tower already the-steps had-torn-away and a-little remained
quod in brevi succisum, casum et ruinam gravissimam faceret.
which in short cut-under a-fall and ruin most-grievous would-make

On 19 April, feeling the tower tremble, the besieged surrender to the king, Robert on condition that he not be imprisoned. Twenty-seven come out one by one through a window, the stouter by ropes, and the king entrusts Robert in fetters to the citizens.

Decimo tertio kal. maii, feria tertia, cum intellexissent,
on-the-tenth and-third kalends of-May on-the-day third when they-had-understood
turris majores partes succisas et periculum ruinae
of-the-tower the-greater parts cut-under and the-danger of-ruin
imminere — namque ad singulas malleorum percussiones in
to-hang-over for at each of-the-hammers strokes on
summitate turris senserunt repercussiones et mutationes,
the-summit of-the-tower they-felt the-rebounds and changes
et turrem jam quasi trepidantem et contrementem — timore
and the-tower now as-if trembling and quaking with-fear
infinito timentes, inierunt consilium, ut ante sese regis
endless fearing they-entered counsel that before themselves of-the-king
potestati redderent, quam oppressi in ruina et casu
to-the-power they-should-surrender than crushed in the-ruin and fall
turris suffocarentur. Evocabat ergo Robertus puer se
of-the-tower they-should-be-smothered called-out therefore Robert the-boy himself
et complices suos regi reddendos, illa tamen conditione,
and accomplices his to-the-king to-be-surrendered on-that yet condition
ut ipse Robertus absque carcere teneretur, quamquam et
that he Robert without prison should-be-held although also
ceteri truderentur in carcerem. Habito ergo principum super
the-others should-be-thrust into prison held therefore of-the-princes upon
hoc consilio, rex secundum expostulationem obsessorum
this counsel the-king according-to the-demand of-the-besieged
concessit exeundi libertatem, eo quod utillimum erat
granted of-going-out the-freedom by-this that most-useful it-was

illos sponte se reddere et sine periculo mortis
them of-their-own-accord themselves to-surrender and without danger of-death
obsidentium et turrim succidentium. Exierunt ergo singulus
of-the-besiegers and the-tower of-those-cutting-under went-out therefore one
et singulus usque ad XXVII. versus domum prepositi per
and one right-up to 27 toward the-house of-the-provost through
fenestram in gradibus turris obliquatam; ceterum qui
a-window in the-steps of-the-tower slanting moreover those-who
corpulentiores erant per funes elapsi sunt a majori
more-corpulent were by ropes slipped-down were from the-greater
fenestra ejusdem turris. Robertus puer commendatus est
window of-the-same tower Robert the-boy entrusted was
militibus regis custodiendus in camera comitis superiore,
to-the-knights of-the-king to-be-guarded in the-chamber of-the-count upper
at ceteri omnes in carcerem detrusi sunt. Voluit tandem
but the-others all into prison thrust were wished at-last
pro civibus nostris rex quasi magnum quiddam facere,
for citizens our the-king as-if great something to-do
et commendavit eis Robertum puerum custodiendum in
and entrusted to-them Robert the-boy to-be-guarded in
compede et nervis ea conditione, ut judicio principum
fetter and shackles on-that condition that by-the-judgment of-the-princes
postmodum tractandum regi et comiti redderent.
afterward to-be-dealt-with to-the-king and to-the-count they-should-return
Cives vero pro grandi dono sub predicta conditione
the-citizens but for a-great gift under the-aforesaid condition
susceperunt in custodiam juvenem adhuc ephebum.
received into custody the-young-man still a-youth

God has shrunk the traitors' kin, closing them first in the suburb, then the castle, the tower, and a prison too narrow to sit in. Pale with guilt and hunger they come out, Benkin escapes by a rope to Wulpen, and Gervase takes their stores, but no treasure is found.

Hic vero notandum quomodo Deus traditores illos in
here but it-must-be-noted how God traitors those into
paucitatem redegerit et genere et loco. Ante hoc facinus
fewness reduced both in-lineage and in-place before this crime
quidam fortiores et meliores ejusdem sanguinis predecessores
certain stronger and better of-the-same blood forebears
obierant, quos ex nomine retexere longum esset; ad
had-died whom by name to-unweave long it-would-be at
ultimum isti pessimi relicti sunt, per quos dispensatio
the-last these worst left were through whom the-dispensation
Dei consummata est, traditio completa, patria desolata,
of-God fulfilled was the-betrayal completed the-fatherland desolated
rapina exercitata, manus omnium contra omnes armata. Cum
plunder practiced the-hand of-all against all armed when
igitur impune fecisse existimassent omnia quae traditiose
therefore with-impunity to-have-done they-had-reckoned all-things which treacherously
egerant, et nullus hominum auderet vindictam inferre, soli
they-had-done and no-one of-men dared vengeance to-bring to-alone
Deo relicta est vindicta, qui statim coarctavit eos et timore
God left was vengeance who at-once confined them and with-fear
concussit, ut non auderent extra vicum nostri loci prodire,
shook that not they-dared outside the-quarter of-our place to-come-forth
sed magis consiliati sunt villam et suburbium nostrum sepire
but rather counseled have the-town and suburb our to-fence

et circumfodere, sicut supra memoravimus. Statim die
and to-ditch-round as above we-have-recalled at-once on-the-day
octavo post mortem consulis per obsidionem in castro clausi,
eighth after the-death of-the-consul by the-siege in the-castle shut
deinde cum castrum fuisset invasum a nostris, in turrim
then when the-castle had-been invaded by ours into the-tower
fugati, magis coarctati sunt; deinde in carcerem trusi, in
driven more confined were then into prison thrust so
tantum arctati sunt, ut non possent simul omnes sedere,
much narrowed were that not they-could together all to-sit
nisi tres aut quatuor ad minus stetissent. Tenebrae, calor et
unless three or four at least had-stood darkness heat and
fetor et sudor inficiebant illos, et desperatae vitae horror et
stench and sweat infected them and of-despaired life the-horror and
incertae mortis futurae turpitudo. Maximae eis fuisset
of-uncertain death to-come the-foulness of-the-greatest to-them would-have-been
pietatis quidem donum indultum, si sic mori licuisset
of-mercy indeed a-gift granted if thus to-die it-had-been-permitted
quomodo fures aut latrones suspendio perierunt. Igitur cum
as thieves or robbers by-hanging perished therefore when
in turri sese prepararent exituros, unus juvenum
in the-tower themselves they-were-preparing about-to-go-out one of-the-youths
per fenestram altiorem turris, gladio projecto, prosilire
through the-window higher of-the-tower a-sword thrown to-leap-forth
presumpserat, et sese raptim in cursu animaverat. Quem
had-presumed and himself hastily into a-run had-roused whom
quidem reatus conscientaie condemnaverat, fortis animi sui
indeed the-guilt of-conscience had-condemned of-strong mind his
libertatem corpore exequi paratus erat; in ipso ergo
the-freedom with-the-body to-follow ready he-was in the-very therefore
raptu alii eum retinuerunt, et simul cum ipsis in carcerem
snatch others him held-back and together with them into prison

ire perpessus est. Multi vero ex nostris civibus, viso
to-go suffered has many but of our citizens seen
periculo juvenis et miseria captivorum, flebant, quia sine
the-danger of-the-youth and the-misery of-the-captives wept because without
lacrimis dominos suos captivatos ire in carcerem videre non
tears lords their captured to-go into prison to-see not
poterant. Exierunt tandem pallidi illi miseri, signa traditionis
they-could went-out at-last pale those wretches the-signs of-the-betrayal
in facie portantes, livore et inedia deformiter
in the-face carrying with-livid-color and with-starvation hideously
signati. Tunc quippe in exitu ipsorum concurrentium
marked then indeed at the-going-out of-them of-those-running
in turrim infinitus erat numerus, et omnia quae ibidem
into the-tower endless was the-number and all-things which there
repererant pro preda abstulerunt. Tumultuantibus vero et
they-had-found as booty they-carried-off rioting but and
discurrentibus nostris in turri, Benkin coterellus fune
running-about ours in the-tower Benkin the-mercenary by-a-rope
a turre in terram demisso elapsus est, et latuit qua
from the-tower to the-ground let-down slipped-away was and lay-hidden where
potuit, donec per noctem transfugisset apud insulam in mari
he-could until by night he-had-fled-over to the-island in the-sea
quae dicitur Wulpen. Quem quidem unanimiter requirentes,
which is-called Wulpen whom indeed with-one-mind seeking
etiam in cloacariis et in inmundis locis latuisse
even in privies and in unclean places to-have-lain-hidden
illum crediderant. Spe lucri et obtinendi thesaurum
him they-had-believed by-the-hope of-gain and of-obtaining the-treasure
comitis fere omnes, qui in obsidione tunc aderant, in
of-the-count almost all who in the-siege then were-present into
turrim conscendere satagebant. Tunc Gervasius castellanus
the-tower to-climb were-busy then Gervase the-castellan

milites suos armatos intus posuit, qui tumultuantes et
knights his armed within placed who those-rioting and
ascendere volentes deinceps prohiberent; et obtinuit vinum
to-climb wishing thenceforth should-prevent and he-obtained the-wine
traditorum optimum, etiam coctum vinum quod consulis
of-the-traitors best also cooked wine which of-the-consul
erat, bacones, caseorum pisas viginti duas, legumina, farinam
was flitches of-cheeses weys twenty two legumes flour
triticeam, ferramenta etiam optima quibus panes excoquerent,
of-wheat iron-tools also best with-which loaves they-baked
omnemque supellectilem, et vasa quibus utebantur optima.
and-all furnishing and vessels which they-used best
Tamen de thesauro comitis nihil ibidem repertum est.
yet of the-treasure of-the-count nothing there found was

76 · AARDENBURG; THE CHURCH CLEANSED

The king inspects Lambert's fortress at Aardenburg, and the canons wash and refit the church. A deer hide and a chest are prepared for the count's body.

Duodecimo kal. maii, feria quarta, rex ibat ad
on-the-twelfth kalends of-May on-the-day fourth the-king went to
Reddenburg videre situm loci, et qualiter ille Lambertus
Aardenburg to-see the-site of-the-place and how that Lambert
se circumvallaverat, qui traditionis nota et crimine
himself had-walled-round who of-betrayal with-the-mark and the-crime
culpatus, obsessus erat. Quo die fulgore solis et
blamed besieged was on-which day with-the-brightness of-the-sun and
levitate aeris Deus mundum circa nos renovavit, quia
the-lightness of-the-air God the-world around us renewed because

traditores et templi et ecclesiae coinquinatores expulerat
the-traitors both of-the-temple and of-the-church the-defilers he-had-expelled
a sacro loco, concludens eos in carcerem. Hujus ergo
from the-sacred place shutting them into prison of-this therefore
gratiae Dei donis letificati fratres templi, omnimodis
grace of-God by-the-gifts gladdened the-brothers of-the-temple with-every-kind-of
ablutionibus pavimenta et parietes et altaria templi
washings the-floors and walls and altars of-the-temple
mundando, nihil reliquere quod non abluerent; gradus qui
by-cleansing nothing left which not they-washed the-steps which
succisi fuerant reaedificaverunt, et quasi renovato templo, novis
cut-under had-been they-rebuilt and as-if renewed the-temple with-new
utensilibus et reaedificationibus locum suum exornaverunt.
utensils and rebuildings place their they-adorned
Undecimo kal. maii, feria quinta, consutum est corium
on-the-eleventh kalends of-May on-the-day fifth sewn was the-hide
cervinum, in quo corpus comitis imponeretur, et scrinium
of-deer in which the-body of-the-count should-be-placed and a-chest
quoque fabricatum est, quo imponerent et clauderent.
also made was in-which they-might-place and shut

Seven weeks after the burial the tomb is opened with incense, but the body gives off no stench. It is wrapped in deerskin and carried by the bishop and abbots in procession to Saint Christopher's for the funeral Mass. Benkin, captured, dies bound on a wheel.

Decimo kal. maii, feria sexta, preteritis jam septem
on-the-tenth kalends of-May on-the-day sixth past now seven
hebdomadis primae ejus sepulturae, sepulchrum comitis
weeks of-the-first his burial the-tomb of-the-count
destructum est in solario, et corpus ipsius inde cum
destroyed was in the-gallery and the-body his thence with
thymiamate et thure et pigmentis venerabiliter sublatum
incense-spices and frankincense and perfumes reverently raised
est. Nam fratres illius ecclesiae crediderant corpus comitis
was for the-brothers of-that church had-believed the-body of-the-count
jam fetere, et neminem posse perpeti mortalem fetorem,
already to-stink and no-one to-be-able to-endure the-mortal stench
eo quod per septem hebdomades, a die sepulturae in
by-this that for seven weeks from the-day of-the-burial in
solario factae, in feria sexta primo usque in feriam sextam,
the-gallery made on the-day sixth first right-up to the-day sixth
quae fuit succedenter in decimo kalendas maii, sepulchro
which was next on the-tenth kalends of-May to-the-tomb
commendatum esset. Igitur preordinaverant, ut in sublatione
entrusted it-had-been therefore they-had-pre-arranged that at the-raising
corporis a tumulo, incenso igne, juxta positionem comitis
of-the-body from the-mound kindled a-fire beside the-place of-the-count
thymiamata et thus posita in igne concremarent, et
incense-spices and frankincense put on the-fire they-should-burn and

ita, si quid fetoris a tumulo spiraret, virtute odorum
thus if anything of-stench from the-mound should-breathe by-the-power of-the-scents
salutiferum reprimeretur. Cumque sublato lapide nihil fetoris
salutary it-might-be-checked and-when raised the-stone nothing of-stench
sensissent, corpus in corium cervinum involutum in medio
they-had-felt the-body in a-hide of-deer wrapped in the-middle
chori feretro imposuerunt. Rex ergo, collecta civium et
of-the-choir on-a-bier they-placed the-king therefore gathered of-citizens and
universorum multitudine, in templo expectabat, donec episcopus
of-all the-multitude in the-temple waited until the-bishop
et cum ipso abbates tres ab ecclesia sancti Christophori cum
and with him abbots three from the-church of-saint Christopher with
omni clero procedendo cum scriniis sanctorum Donatiani,
all the-clergy proceeding with the-shrines of-the-saints Donatian
Basilii, Maximi obviam funeri et regi in ponte castri
Basil Maximus to-meet the-funeral and the-king on the-bridge of-the-castle
occurrerent, et in eandem sancti Christophori ecclesiam
should-come and into the-same of-saint Christopher church
cum lacrimis et suspiriis referrent corpus beatum.
with tears and sighs should-carry-back the-body blessed
Ibique episcopus cum omni sacerdotum choro celebravit
and-there the-bishop with all of-priests the-choir celebrated
commendationem et missam omnium fidelium defunctorum
the-commendation and the-mass of-all the-faithful departed
pro salute animae boni comitis. Eodem die captus est
for the-salvation of-the-soul of-the-good count on-the-same day captured was
Benkin coterellus, et in rota malo superinfixa ligatus,
Benkin the-mercenary and on a-wheel on-a-mast fixed-above bound
disperditionem vitae perpessus, omnium spectaculum fuit; apud
the-destruction of-life having-suffered of-all a-spectacle was at
Harenas quidem illo tormento miserabiliter mori promeruerat.
the-Sands indeed by-that torment pitiably to-die he-had-deserved

The king orders Ypres and Staden besieged. Saint Savior's, burned, is consecrated, and Saint Donatian's, its altars intact, is reconciled; the count's body is laid in its choir, Roger is made provost, and the king marches on Ypres.

Nono kal. maii, sabbato, edictum exiit a rege et
on-the-ninth kalends of-May on-Saturday an-edict went-out from the-king and
principibus, ut apud Ipram et Stathan expedirent se
the-princes that at Ypres and Staden should-make-ready themselves
cives et prepararent ad obsidendum.
the-citizens and prepare for besieging
Octavo kal. maii, dominica, consecrata est ecclesia Sancti
on-the-eighth kalends of-May on-Sunday consecrated was the-church of-Saint
Salvatoris in Brudgis; ignis enim conflagratione exusta
Savior at Bruges of-fire for by-burning burned-out
erat illa ecclesia et altaria confracta.
had-been that church and the-altars broken
Septimo kal. maii, feria secunda, quia ecclesiae
on-the-seventh kalends of-May on-the-day second because of-the-church
beati Donatiani altaria non fuerant confracta, episcopus
of-blessed Donatian the-altars not had-been broken the-bishop
reconciliationem celebravit ecclesiae summo mane. Deinde
the-reconciliation celebrated of-the-church very early then
rex et populus, precedente episcopo et abbatibus et omni
the-king and the-people going-before the-bishop and the-abbots and all
clero loci ejus, processit ad ecclesiam Sancti Christophori,
the-clergy of-place that proceeded to the-church of-Saint Christopher
et relato corpore beati consulis, domini et patris nostri
and brought-back the-body of-the-blessed consul of-the-lord and father our
Karoli, ad ecclesiam beati Donatiani, in medio chori
Charles to the-church of-blessed Donatian in the-middle of-the-choir

celebriter Deo suo commendatum corpus tumba decenter
solemnly to-God his commended the-body in-a-tomb fittingly
clauserunt. Exequiis igitur sollempniter completis, rex et
they-shut the-rites therefore solemnly completed the-king and
episcopus introduxerunt in statum prelationis Rodgerum
the-bishop led into the-state of-prelacy Roger
prepositum in medio fratrum ejusdem ecclesiae. Eodem die
as-provost in the-midst of-the-brothers of-the-same church on-the-same day
rex et castellanus noster Gervasius cum magno exercitu
the-king and castellan our Gervase with great army
versus Stathan et Ipram simul cum civibus nostris transierunt.
toward Staden and Ypres together with citizens our crossed
Eodem die festum erat Marci evangelistae. Et notandum, quod
on-the-same day the-feast was of-Mark the-evangelist and it-must-be-noted that
tria maxima dona contulit Deus ecclesiae sancti Donatiani illo
three very-great gifts bestowed God on-the-church of-saint Donatian on-that
die, quoniam reconciliari sibi Deus dignatus est ecclesiam
day since to-be-reconciled to-himself God deigned has church
illam, corpus boni consulis in ea custodiri concessit,
that the-body of-the-good consul in it to-be-kept granted
eidemque ecclesiae in prepositum Rodgerum accommodavit.
and-to-the-same church as provost Roger provided

At Ypres the citizens let the king in at another part of the town while William of Ypres fights at a gate. William is captured and sent to Lille, his men are hunted, the men of Furnes who sided with him lose their goods, and the count takes all he held.

Sexto kal. maii, feria tertia, rex et comes cum
on-the-sixth kalends of-May on-the-day third the-king and the-count with
gravi exercitu obsedit Ipram, et facta est tornatio et
heavy army besieged Ypres and made was a-tourney and
militiae utrimque acriter occursus, quando ille adulterinus
of-knighthood on-both-sides fiercely a-clash when that adulterine
comes Willelmus cum trecentis militibus ad unam portarum
count William with three-hundred knights at one of-the-gates
pugnaret contra comitem novum. Igitur pessimi illi Iprenses,
fought against the-count new therefore most-wicked those men-of-Ypres
sicut seorsum pepigerant cum rege in alia parte villae,
as apart they-had-agreed with the-king on another side of-the-town
introduxerunt regem et ejus exercitum infinitum. Et
led-in the-king and his army endless and
introruentes concitaverunt clamores et incendia domorum ex
rushing-in they-raised shouts and burnings of-houses from
abrupto, rapinam quoque exercuerunt gravissimam quando ille
a-sudden plunder also they-carried-out most-grievous when that
adulterinus comes Willelmus obviam raptoribus occurreret,
adulterine count William to-meet the-plunderers ran
ignorans traditum fuisse castrum, simulque se ipsum et
not-knowing betrayed to-have-been the-castle and-together him himself and
suos; quem igitur comprehendit rex et comes, et captivum
his-men whom therefore seized the-king and the-count and captive
apud Insulas traduxerunt custodiendum. Multi quidem post
to Lille led-across to-be-guarded many indeed after

mortem Karoli consulis ascenderant ad illum, sicut capellani
the-death of-Charles the-consul had-gone-up to him as chaplains
et ministri et solidarii et servi de familia cotidiana
and servants and hired-soldiers and serfs of the-household daily
comitis, eo quod isdem adulterinus comes Iprensis de linea
of-the-count by-this that the-same adulterine count of-Ypres from the-line
comitum progenitus fuisset. Furnenses quoque cum ipso
of-the-counts begotten had-been the-men-of-Furnes also with him
militabant ea de causa, ut si forte perstitisset in consulatu,
served that for reason that if perhaps he-had-held-on in the-consulship
inimicos suos disperderent ejus viribus et potentia. Sed quia
enemies their they-might-destroy his by-strength and power but because
Deus pravorum mentes percutit, in contrarium illis accidit.
God of-the-wicked the-minds strikes to the-contrary for-them it-happened
Nam inimici eorum, audito eo quod Iprensis Willelmus
for enemies their heard this that of-Ypres William
captus fuisset, incursum fecerunt in possessiones et domos
captured had-been an-incursion made into the-possessions and houses
et familias hostiles, et igne et ferro demoliti sunt omnem
and households hostile and with-fire and sword demolished have all
substantiam eorum quos oderant; et ita non fuit miseris illis
the-substance of-those whom they-hated and thus not was for-wretched those
satis, quod capti sunt, quin etiam dispendia rerum suarum
enough that captured they-were but also losses of-goods their
domi paterentur. Ergo et militiae et domi persequebatur
at-home they-should-suffer therefore both in-the-field and at-home pursued
Deus traditores illos, qui cum suo Iprensi consule in
God traitors those who with their of-Ypres consul against
mortem domini et advocati terrae conspiraverant. Omnia
the-death of-the-lord and advocate of-the-land had-conspired all
ergo quae ille Iprensis Willelmus possederat, comes noster
therefore which that of-Ypres William had-possessed count our

obtinuit, milites quoque captivavit, et plures a terra
obtained the-knights also he-captured and many from the-land
fugavit. Victoriose itaque a nostris eo die actum est,
drove victoriously and-so by ours on-that day done it-was
et reversi sunt cum plausu et rapina maxima.
and returned they-have with applause and plunder greatest

80 · BORSIARD'S END; OUDENAARDE BURNED

Borsiard, captured, lives a day and a night bound on a wheel before he dies, and the faithful give thanks. The count burns the suburb of Oudenaarde, and some three hundred perish in its church.

Kal. maii, dominica, relatum est nobis in Insulis
on-the-kalends of-May on-Sunday related it-was to-us at Lille
Borsiardum captum fuisse, et rotae malo superinfixae
Borsiard captured to-have-been and to-a-wheel on-a-mast fixed-above
alligatum, vixisse diem illum et subsecutam noctem, et
bound to-have-lived day that and the-following night and
tunc turpi mortis suae dispendio periisse. Qui equidem
then by-foul of-death his loss to-have-perished who indeed
promeruerat infinite mori, si toties mori potuisset, cum
had-deserved endlessly to-die if so-often to-die he-could-have since
caussa sui sceleris tot post ipsum sint puniti, proscripti,
for-the-sake of-his crime so-many after him have-been punished proscribed
precipitati, suspensi et decollati, de cujus interitu omnes
cast-headlong hanged and beheaded at whose death all
fideles gratias Deo obtulerunt, qui tantum homicidam ab
the-faithful thanks to-God offered who so-great a-homicide from
ecclesia sua exterminare dignatus est. Et bene dispensatum
church his to-wipe-out deigned has and well arranged

est in transacta temporum molestia, cum amenitate
it-was in the-past of-the-times trouble with the-pleasantness
maii mensis gratiam pacis et status terrae nostrae Deus
of-May month the-grace of-peace and the-state of-land our God
restitueret, suspenso Borsiardo et captivatis suis complicibus.
should-restore hanged Borsiard and captured his accomplices
Igitur divertens se rex ibat versus Oldenardam, ubi
therefore turning himself the-king went toward Oudenaarde where
comes ex Montibus infestaverat terram nostram, ibatque
the-count of Mons had-harassed land our and-he-went
per Gandavum. Sed et comes noster precesserat regem,
through Ghent but also count our had-gone-before the-king
et incenderat manu violenta suburbium usque ad turrim
and had-burned with-hand violent the-suburb right-up to the-tower
lapideam; et plures igitur, qui suffugerant in ecclesiam illius
stone and many therefore who had-fled into the-church of-that
loci, simul concremati sunt usque ad trecentos, ut aiunt.
place together burned were up to three-hundred as they-say

The king returns to Bruges and has the captives brought out one by one, as if for mercy, and thrown from the count's tower: Wulfric Cnop first, then Walter, who is allowed to pray, then the knight Eric, who survives the fall long enough to cross himself. Twenty-eight are thrown, some innocent of the betrayal.

Quarto nonas maii, feria quarta, rex absque comite
on-the-fourth nones of-May on-the-day fourth the-king without the-count
rediit Brudgas.
returned to-Bruges
Tertio nonas maii, feria quinta postea, circa meridiem,
on-the-third nones of-May on-the-day fifth afterward about noon
comes rediit ad nos, quem fratres ecclesiae Sancti Donatiani
the-count returned to us whom the-brothers of-the-church of-Saint Donatian
cum processione susceperunt primitus, ubi oratione et
with procession received first where prayer and
oblatione in altari secundum morem predecessorum suorum
offering on the-altar according-to the-custom of-predecessors his
Deo perlata, reversus, in domum comitis Karoli ipse comes
to-God offered returned into the-house of-count Charles he the-count
potenter ascendit, ibique pransus est. Erat tumultus et
powerfully went-up and-there dined he-has there-was a-tumult and
turba maxima circa et infra castrum expectantium, quid de
crowd very-great around and within the-castle of-those-awaiting what about
Roberto et captivis fieret. Igitur rex de hospitio suo
Robert and the-captives would-be-done therefore the-king from lodging his
egressus, pervenit usque ad comitem; quia vero domus plena
gone-out arrived right-up to the-count because but the-house full
fuerat populo et ministris et militibus, descendit comes in
had-been of-people and servants and knights went-down the-count into

plateam et curtem castri, et consecuti sunt eum universi,
the-square and court of-the-castle and followed have him all
qui in aula constiterant. Cumque vidisset domum vacuam,
who in the-hall had-stood and-when he-had-seen the-house empty
sicut preordinaverat, fecit fores obserari domus suae,
as he-had-pre-arranged he-made the-doors to-be-barred of-house his
et assumptis sibi principibus solis reascendit. Tunc
and taken-up with-himself the-princes alone he-went-up-again then
diposuerunt quidem, a qua parte traditores illi a turre
arranged indeed from which side traitors those from the-tower
camerae dejicerentur. Quo preordinato, misit rex et
of-the-chamber should-be-thrown-down which pre-arranged sent the-king and
comes spiculatores ad carcerem, qui callide evocarent primum
the-count guardsmen to the-prison who cunningly should-call-out first
Wulfricum Cnop, fratrem prepositi Bertulphi, et sub
Wulfric Cnop brother of-the-provost Bertulf and under
dissimulatione qui missi fuerant mentiebantur carceratis,
pretense those-who sent had-been lied to-the-imprisoned
quod rex misericorditer acturus foret cum ipsis. Sub illa
that the-king mercifully about-to-act would-be with them under that
ergo misericordiae spe, sine dilatione e carcere egressi
therefore of-mercy hope without delay from prison gone-out
sunt. At non simul egredi captivos permiserant; nam primo
they-have but not together to-go-out the-captives they-had-allowed for first
illum Wulfricum eduxerant, et per intrinsecas vias domus
that Wulfric they-had-led-out and through inner ways of-the-house
usque ad propugnacula turris suprema traductum, ligatis
right-up to the-bulwarks of-the-tower the-highest led-across bound
manibus militis retro dorsum, et sic mortis suae precipitium
the-hands of-the-knight behind the-back and thus of-death his the-precipice
deorsum prospicientem, spiculatores dejecerunt. At ille miser
down looking the-guardsmen threw-down but he wretched

nihil indutus preter solam camisiam et solas braccas, decidit
nothing clad except the-sole shirt and sole breeches fell
in terram toto corpore fractus et destructus, parum vitae
to the-ground in-whole body broken and destroyed little of-life
reservans, qui statim lethaliter expiravit, spectaculum quidem
keeping who at-once mortally expired a-spectacle indeed
factus et opprobrium sempiternum sui generis, imo totius
made and a-reproach everlasting of-his lineage nay of-the-whole
terrae Flandrensis, a nemine defletus, periit. Secundo loco
land Flemish by no-one wept perished in-the-second place
eduxerunt Walterum militem, filium Lamberti ex Reddenburg,
they-led-out Walter the-knight son of-Lambert of Aardenburg
usque ad precipitium, et ligatis manibus illius ante et
right-up to the-precipice and bound the-hands of-him in-front and
non retro, ipso momento voluerunt eum precipitare. At ille
not behind at-that moment they-wished him to-cast-headlong but he
rogabat milites regis qui juxta stabant caussa Dei, ut
asked the-knights of-the-king who beside stood for-the-sake of-God that
spatium sibi Deum orandi preberent, et miserati illum,
space to-himself God of-praying they-should-furnish and pitying him
dimiserunt eum orare. Cumque perorasset, projectus est
they-let him pray and-when he-had-prayed-through thrown was
juvenis elegantioris formae et in terram decidens, suae
the-young-man of-more-elegant form and on the-ground falling of-his
mortis periculum insumpsit et statim expiravit. Subductus est
death the-peril took-on and at-once expired led-up was
quoque miles nomine Eric, et similiter precipitatus, decidit
also a-knight by-name Eric and likewise cast-headlong fell
super ascensorium ligneum, et avulsit gradum ascensorii qui
upon a-stairway wooden and tore-off a-step of-the-stairway which
quinque clavis fixus erat; et mirabile erat, quod de tam
with-five nails fixed was and wonderful it-was that from so

alto precipitatus adhuc sedens in terra, signo sanctae
high cast-headlong still sitting on the-ground with-the-sign of-the-holy
crucis se signavit. Quem cum mulieres vellent palpare,
cross himself he-signed whom when the-women wished to-stroke
unus militum a domo comitis projecit inter illas lapidem
one of-the-knights from the-house of-the-count threw among them a-stone
grandem, et sic prohibuit accessus earum. Non utique totus
great and thus prevented the-approach of-them not indeed wholly
intresecus poterat longius vivere, cui hoc ipsum quod
within could longer to-live for-whom this very that
vixerat post casum, non vita sed miseria moriendi fuit.
he-had-lived after the-fall not life but the-misery of-dying was
Ut igitur enumerandi omiserim ordinem, similiter omnes
that therefore of-enumerating I-may-have-left-out the-order likewise all
reliqui precipitati sunt simul XXVIII, quorum quidam
the-remaining cast-headlong were together 28 of-whom some
speraverant evadere, quia inmunes traditionis extiterant; sed
had-hoped to-escape because free of-the-betrayal they-had-been but
quia fata eos trahebant, imo divina ultio coegit, cum
because the-fates them drew nay divine vengeance forced with
illis qui traditionis rei fuerant, precipitati sunt.
those who of-the-betrayal guilty had-been cast-headlong were

The king leaves Bruges with Robert as his captive. The citizens weep, and Robert asks them to pray for his soul. Outside the castle the king has his feet tied beneath his horse.

Pridie nonas maii, feria sexta, in festo sancti Ioannis,
on-the-day-before the-nones of-May on-the-day sixth on the-feast of-saint John
quando in dolium missus est, rex repatriare incipiens,
when into the-cask put he-was the-king to-return-home beginning
a Brudgis discessit duxitque secum Robertum puerum
from Bruges departed and-led with-him Robert the-boy
captivum. In exitu ergo juvenis illius, burgenses nostri
captive at the-going-out therefore of-young-man that burghers our
prosequebantur illum oculorum lacrimis et planctu gravi,
followed him of-eyes with-tears and lament heavy
quia multum dilexerant illum; non enim propter infamiam,
because much they-had-loved him not for on-account-of the-infamy
viri nostri loci ausi sunt ipsum sequi. Qui respiciens
the-men of-our place dared have him to-follow who looking-back-at
fletum et miserationem civium, ait: «En amici mei, quia
the-weeping and pity of-the-citizens says lo friends my since
vitae meae subvenire non potestis, tandem rogate Deum, ut
life my to-help not you-can at-least ask God that
animae meae dignetur misereri.» Haud longe abierat a
on-soul my he-deign to-have-mercy not far he-had-gone from
castro, quando pedes militis copulari rex jusserat de
the-castle when the-feet of-the-knight to-be-bound the-king had-ordered from
subtus ventrem equi, in quo ascenderat captivus. Postquam
beneath the-belly of-the-horse on which had-mounted the-captive after
ducatum comes regi prebuerat, rediit ad nos in castrum.
escort the-count to-the-king had-furnished he-returned to us into the-castle

The dean Elias unwillingly returns the count's gold cup and silver flagon, left with him by the fleeing provost and revealed, it is said, by Robert under the king's lash. Many marvel that a dean of such show of holiness took the plunder.

Nonis maii, sabbato postea, decanus Helias reddidit
on-the-nones of-May on-Saturday afterward the-dean Elias returned
novo comiti kannam argenteam et cuppam auream Karoli
to-the-new count the-flagon silver and the-cup golden of-Charles
consulis cum operculo aureo, quae prepositus Bertulfus, cum
the-consul with the-lid golden which the-provost Bertulf when
in fugam se daret, decano commendavit. Robertus puer
into flight himself he-gave to-the-dean entrusted Robert the-boy
comiti insinuaverat thesaurum istum, antequam a Brudgis
to-the-count had-hinted treasure that before from Bruges
discessisset, quia, ut aiunt, per flagella rex extorsit ab eo,
he-had-departed because as they-say by scourges the-king wrung from him
ut insinuaret si quid de thesauro comitis repositum novisset.
that he-should-hint if anything of the-treasure of-the-count laid-up he-knew
Super hoc multi admirati sunt simplicitatem decani Heliae,
upon this many wondered have the-simplicity of-the-dean Elias
qui cum cujusdam quasi sanctitatis rigore hactenus degisset,
who when of-a-certain as-if holiness with-rigor hitherto he-had-lived
per susceptionem rapinae hujus nimis declinavit — cum ea
through the-receiving of-plunder this too-much swerved since by-that
auctoritate Dei interdictum sit inmundum ne tetigeris — qua
authority of-God forbidden it-is the-unclean not you-shall-touch by-which
suae sanctitatis ac simplicitatis tenorem simulaverat. Namque
of-his holiness and simplicity the-tenor he-had-feigned for
thesaurum illum invitus comiti reddidit, per hoc satis
treasure that unwilling to-the-count he-returned through this enough

ostendens quantum rapinam illam amaverat. Dicebat quoque
showing how-much plunder that he-had-loved he-said also
prepositum Bertulfum vasa illa ecclesiae Sancti Donatiani pro
the-provost Bertulf vessels those to-the-church of-Saint Donatian for
salute animae suae contulisse, per hoc excusare credens
the-salvation of-soul his to-have-bestowed through this to-excuse believing
innocentiam suam. In hoc quoque omnes aperte cognovimus,
innocence his in this also all openly we-recognized
quod prepositus ille in suum usum vasa consulis in
that provost that for his use the-vessels of-the-consul in
partitione thesauri susceperat, et non valens secum deferre
the-sharing of-the-treasure had-received and not being-able with-himself to-carry
cum fugeret, reliquit illam miserrimam rapinam decano suo.
when he-fled he-left that most-wretched plunder to-dean his

84 · THE PENITENCE OF THE TRAITORS

Borsiard repents on the wheel and begs to have his hands cut off. Isaac, seized among the monks and hanged at Aire by William of Ypres, asks the crowd to stone him and kisses the gallows. The provost had been warned by falling beams and a dream of the gibbet. Robert is beheaded at Cassel, forgiving his executioner.

Licebit subsequenter subfigere de penitentia Borsiardi
it-shall-be-permitted next to-add about the-penitence of-Borsiard
et eorum, qui cum ipso comitem tradiderant Isaac et aliis.
and of-those who with him the-count had-betrayed Isaac and others
Asserunt, quod Borsiardus ille recognosceret peccatum suum,
they-assert that Borsiard that recognized sin his
et pro eo doleret et peniteret, ita ut obsecraret omnes
and for it grieved and repented so that he-besought all
inspectatores patibuli sui, quatenus manus ei truncarent,
the-watchers of-gibbet his that the-hands of-him they-should-cut-off

quibus dominum suum Karolum occiderat. Et exoravit
with-which lord his Charles he-had-killed and he-entreated
omnes, ut saltem deprecarentur et expostularent Deum
all that at-least they-would-pray and petition God
pro salute animae suae, cum nullam in vita ista salutem
for the-salvation of-soul his since no in life this salvation
promeruisset, et Deum omnipotentem, quantum scivit et
he-had-deserved and God almighty as-much-as he-knew and
potuit, sibi propitium fore interpellavit. Ceterum hi qui
could to-himself propitious to-be he-called-upon moreover those who
precipitati sunt, cum in propugnaculis proni despicerent,
cast-headlong were when on the-bulwarks bent-forward they-looked-down
signo sanctae crucis se signabant, et nomen Christi
with-the-sign of-the-holy cross themselves they-signed and the-name of-Christ
Iesu invocando in ipso adhuc casu ruentes vociferabantur.
Jesus by-calling-upon in the-very still fall plunging cried-out
Sed quia statim post facinus peractum excommunicati sunt
but because at-once after the-crime accomplished excommunicated were
traditores illi, propter rigorem justitiae non sunt ante
traitors those on-account-of the-rigor of-justice not were before
perditionem nec post ab episcopo absoluti, et ideo in
the-ruin nor after by the-bishop absolved and therefore at
triviis et locis campestribus extra cemiterium sepulti
crossroads and in-places of-the-fields outside the-cemetery buried
jacent. Isaac ergo cum inter monachos monachali habitu
they-lie Isaac therefore when among the-monks in-monastic habit
lateret, et previdisset irruentem in se turbam, ait
he-lay-hidden and had-foreseen rushing upon himself the-crowd says
abbati: «Domine mi, si animus mihi esset pugnandi, non
to-the-abbot lord my if the-mind to-me were of-fighting not
sine multorum strage capi me permitterem, sed quia
without of-many slaughter to-be-taken myself I-would-allow but because

me reum fateor traditionis, omnia mala et ipsam mortem
myself guilty I-confess of-the-betrayal all evils and the-very death
temporalem amplector, ut in hoc presenti in me puniatur
temporal I-embrace that in this present-(life) on me be-punished
quod in dominum meum graviter peccavi.» Accessit ergo
what against lord my heavily I-have-sinned approached therefore
filius advocati Teruanniae comprehendens Isaac, et in
the-son of-the-advocate of-Thérouanne seizing Isaac and into
vincula projecit, donec adulterinus ille Iprensium comes
chains threw until adulterine that of-the-men-of-Ypres count
adveniret et de eo judicaret. Isaac quoque expectabat
should-come and about him should-judge Isaac also awaited
eundem Willelmum, credens per illum evadere se posse,
the-same William believing through him to-escape himself to-be-able
eo quod traditionis conscius fuisset. At postquam venerat
by-this that of-the-betrayal privy he-had-been but after had-come
comes ille, dissimulans conscientiam suam ream fuisse,
count that dissembling conscience his guilty to-have-been
precepit Isaac suspendi, quia Karolum comitem tradiderat.
ordered Isaac to-be-hanged because Charles the-count he-had-betrayed
Isaac vero in via, qua apud Ariam castrum trahebatur
Isaac but on the-way by-which to Aire the-castle he-was-dragged
ad suspendium, profitebatur aperte, quia tradiderat dominum
to hanging professed openly that he-had-betrayed lord
suum, et rogabat tumultum populi, ut obruerent
his and asked the-tumult of-the-people that they-should-overwhelm
ipsum luto et lapidibus et fustibus, nihil satis penae
him with-mud and stones and cudgels nothing enough of-penalty
credens sibi potuisse inferri in hac vita, qui tantum
believing on-himself to-have-been-able to-be-brought in this life who so-great
facinus perpetrasset. Venerabatur ergo jacturas, ictus, lapides
a-crime had-perpetrated he-venerated therefore the-throws blows stones

et omnes punitores suos, et eis gratias egit, quia
and all punishers his and to-them thanks gave because
dignabantur tam gravem peccatorem disperdere. Tandem cum
they-deigned so heavy a-sinner to-destroy at-last when
pervenisset ad locum suspendii, salutabat stipitem arboris,
he-had-arrived at the-place of-hanging he-greeted the-trunk of-the-tree
et laqueos simulque arborem osculabatur, et ipse suo
and the-nooses and-together the-tree kissed and he-himself to-his
innexuit collo dicens: «In nomine Domini, meae mortis
tied neck saying in the-name of-the-Lord of-my death
supplicium amplector, et precor vos omnes, ut mecum
the-punishment I-embrace and I-pray you all that with-me
exoretis Deum, quatenus ista mortis acerbitate punitum fiat
you-entreat God that by-this of-death bitterness punished be-made
in me, quicquid miser ego in dominum meum deliqui.»
in me whatever wretched I against lord my did-wrong
Sicque laqueo subductus, mori turpiter promeruit. Bertulfus
and-thus by-the-noose drawn-up to-die foully he-deserved Bertulf
prepositus a Deo multa acceperat suae mortis signa. Nam
the-provost from God many had-received of-his death signs for
cum Brudgis custos ecclesiae in camera langueret, introivit
when at-Bruges the-keeper of-the-church in a-chamber lay-sick went-in
prepositus ut visitaret illum, statimque confractae sunt
the-provost that he-might-visit him and-at-once broken were
trabes, quae tectum subrexerant super caput ipsius, ita ut
the-beams which the-roof had-held-up over head his so that
vix evadere a camera se credidisset. Alio quoque
scarcely to-escape from the-chamber himself he-had-believed at-another also
tempore trabs magna domus suae in Brudgis decidit nec ab
time a-beam great of-house his at Bruges fell nor by
homine aut vento impulsa, recte super cathedram et sedilia
man or by-wind pushed right upon the-chair and seats

juxta posita, ubi prepositus potenter et imperiose sedere
near placed where the-provost powerfully and imperiously to-sit
consueverat — ipse vero eodem tempore Furnis erat — et
was-wont he but at-that time at-Furnes was and
funditus confracta sunt omnia, quaecunque in ipsa ruina
utterly broken were all-things whatever in that ruin
comprehensa fuerant. Alio quoque tempore, cum prepositus
caught had-been at-another also time when the-provost
transiret per Ipram juxta patibulum in foro positum, in
was-passing through Ypres beside the-gibbet in the-market placed on
quo postmodum suspensus est, ait militibus suis: «Deus
which afterward hanged he-was he-says to-knights his God
omnipotens! quid est quod hac nocte somniaverim! Vidi ergo
almighty what is-it that this night I-have-dreamed I-saw therefore
per somnium, quod in hoc eodem patibulo fixus starem.»
through a-dream that on this same gibbet fixed I-stood
Derisitque hujusmodi visionem, et pro nihilo eam reputavit.
and-he-mocked of-this-kind vision and for nothing it he-reckoned
De ipsius vero pena et non de penitentia quicquam
about his but penalty and not about penitence anything
audivimus. Robertus puer usque in Casletum ductus, jussu
we-have-heard Robert the-boy right-up to Cassel led by-order
regis decollatus est, sed confessus peccata sua, percussori
of-the-king beheaded was but having-confessed sins his to-striker
suo condonavit, quod eum morti daturus erat.
his he-forgave that him to-death about-to-give he-was

Odger, once the provost's chamberlain, accuses the dean, canons, and others of holding Charles's treasure, lies that many believe, since the dean has already returned the vessels and the church's keeper has made off with a load of it. At Pentecost the count and knights swear the peace.

Duodecimo kal. junii, sabbato, in vigilia Pentecostes,
on-the-twelfth kalends of-June on-Saturday on the-eve of-Pentecost
Eustachius noviter in Furnis a novo consule Flandriae
Eustace newly at Furnes by the-new consul of-Flanders
castellanus constitutus, Oldgerum olim camerarium Bertulfi
castellan appointed Odger once chamberlain of-Bertulf
prepositi secum captivum Brudgas in presentia omnium de
the-provost with-him captive to-Bruges into the-presence of-all of
curia comitis adduxit, ut ille captivus insinuaret comiti,
the-court of-the-count brought that this captive should-hint to-the-count
qui de canonicis vel laicis obtinuissent a preposito Bertulfo
who of the-canons or laymen had-obtained from the-provost Bertulf
thesaurum et predam Karoli consulis, sive a nepotibus
the-treasure and booty of-Charles the-consul or from the-nephews
ejusdem prepositi. Inculpavit ergo decanum Heliam pro
of-the-same provost he-accused therefore the-dean Elias for
trecentis marcis, Litteram canonicum pro ducentis marcis,
three-hundred marks Littera the-canon for two-hundred marks
Robertum custodem ecclesiae pro culcitris et palliis et
Robert the-keeper of-the-church for mattresses and cloaks and
argento, Radulphum magistrum pro sex scyphis argenteis,
silver Ralph the-master for six cups silver
Robertum filium Lidgardis pro centum marcis argenti.
Robert son of-Lidgard for a-hundred marks of-silver

Hujusmodi mendacia confinxerat sibi ille Oldgerus, ut
of-this-kind lies had-made-up for-himself that Odger that
sic gratiam mereretur evasionis suae obtinere. Simile veri
thus the-favor he-might-earn of-escape his to-obtain like the-truth
tamen videbatur multis — eo quod ille decanus Helias jam
yet it-seemed to-many by-this that this dean Elias already
antea per accusationem Roberti pueri reddidisset cannam
before through the-accusation of-Robert the-boy had-returned the-can
argenteam pensae viginti unius marcae, et cuppam auream
silver of-the-weight of-twenty one mark and the-cup golden
cum aureo ejus operculo pensae auri septem marcarum
with golden its lid of-the-weight of-gold seven marks
ipsi comiti — multum argenti adhuc retinere tam decanum
to-the-very count much silver still to-retain both dean
illum quam quosdam ejus canonicos, sicut postmodum patuit.
that and certain his canons as afterward appeared
Nam custos ecclesiae Robertus, introiens et libere exiens ad
for the-keeper of-the-church Robert going-in and freely going-out to
traditores illos in omni tempore obsidionis, accepit ab ipsis
traitors those in all the-time of-the-siege received from them
maximam pecuniam ea conditione ut, si traditores illi
very-great money on-that condition that if traitors those
evasissent, ille presbiter et custos eis redderet quae in
had-escaped that priest and keeper to-them should-return what into
custodiam acceperat. Postquam ergo dampnati sunt miseri illi,
custody he-had-received after therefore condemned were wretches those
voluit custos ille astute dissimulare pecuniam. Finxit igitur
wished keeper that cunningly to-hide the-money he-feigned therefore
se Hierosolimam iturum, et oneravit tres palefridos fortes
himself to-Jerusalem about-to-go and he-loaded three palfreys strong
et dimidium, et abiit a castro nostro summo mane, et
and a-half and went-away from castle our very early and

sic asportavit predam Karoli comitis offerendam Christo in
thus carried-off the-booty of-Charles the-count to-be-offered to-Christ in
Hierusalem. Pro hujus ergo facto, omnium suspicio retorsa
Jerusalem for of-this therefore the-deed of-all the-suspicion turned
est in canonicos illos. Eodem die reddidit Littera tres marcas
was upon canons those on-the-same day returned Littera three marks
argenti ipsi comiti, quas detinuerat ex argento prepositi.
of-silver to-the-very count which he-had-kept-back from the-silver of-the-provost
Undecimo kal. junii, dominica sancta Pentecostes, comes et
on-the-eleventh kalends of-June on-Sunday holy of-Pentecost the-count and
castellanus Gervasius et Walterus ex Frorerdesflo et milites
the-castellan Gervase and Walter of Vladslo and the-knights
Flandriae qui aderant, juraverunt pacem sese pro
of-Flanders who were-present swore peace themselves according-to
posse suo conservaturos per totam terram Flandriarum.
ability their about-to-keep through the-whole land of-the-Flanders

86 · WILLIAM OF YPRES IMPRISONED AT BRUGES

In September the count brings William of Ypres and his brother to Bruges and shuts William in the castle's highest chamber, forbidding him even to look out of the windows.

Post festum sanctae Mariae in nativitate, quod est sexto
after the-feast of-holy Mary in the-nativity which is on-the-sixth
idus septembris, sabbato scilicet, comes noster fecit secum
ides of-September on-Saturday namely count our made with-himself
adduci apud Bruggas Willelmum illum Iprensem, quem
to-be-brought to Bruges William that of-Ypres whom
in invasione Iprae captivaverat, et clausit eum in suprema
in the-invasion of-Ypres he-had-captured and shut him in the-highest

camera castri Bruggensis cum fratre suo Thiebaldo Sorel;
chamber of-the-castle of-Bruges with brother his Thiebald Sorel
qui cum per sex dies commorati sunt concaptivati,
who when for six days stayed they-have captive-together
Thiebaldus commendatus est Everardo militi cuidam ex
Thiebald entrusted was to-Everard knight a-certain from
Gendt ad custodiendum. Moxque prohibitum est Willelmo
Ghent for guarding and-soon forbidden it-was to-William
illi Iprensi, ne per fenestras foras perspiceret, sed intra
that of-Ypres lest through the-windows outside he-should-look but within
domum tantummodo spatiaretur; appositi sunt etiam vigiles
the-house only he-should-walk set were also watchmen
et custodes cum illo, qui cautissime observabant illum.
and guards with him who most-carefully watched him

87 · THE INQUEST

The count makes the best citizens and Gervase swear to name the killers, plunderers, and helpers of the traitors, and those who led any out of the siege. A hundred and twenty-five are accused at Bruges and thirty-seven at Aardenburg.

Decimo sexto kal. octobris, feria sexta, in nocte sancti
on-the-tenth and-sixth kalends of-October on-the-day sixth on the-night of-saint
Lamberti, ex unaquaque vicinia circa nos et ex civibus
Lambert from each neighborhood around us and from the-citizens
Bruggensibus meliores et magis fideles simulque castellanum
of-Bruges the-better and more faithful and-together the-castellan
Gervasium jurare precepit comes pro honore terrae, ut
Gervase to-swear ordered the-count for the-honor of-the-land that
vera assertione profiterentur, quis Karolum comitem occiderit,
by-true assertion they-should-declare who Charles the-count killed

vel quis eos interfecerit qui cum ipso prefato consule
or who those killed who with the-very aforesaid consul
occisi sunt, quis rapinam comitis et secum occisorum vel
slain were who the-plunder of-the-count and with-him of-the-slain or
hominum et familiae comitis rapuerit, quis in auxilium
of-the-men and household of-the-count seized who to the-aid
eorum traditorum post mortem domini totius patriae se
of-those traitors after the-death of-the-lord of-the-whole fatherland himself
associaverit, vel quis cum impiissimis illis ante obsidionem
joined or who with most-impious those before the-siege
vel post permanserit, vel quis illos traditores et eorum
or after stayed or who those traitors and their
complices sine licentia principum, qui castrum et ipsos
accomplices without leave of-the-princes who the-castle and them
infra obsederant, eduxerit, et ideo ab eis pecuniam et
within had-besieged led-out and therefore from them money and
thesaurum comitis Karoli acceperit clanculo, quis illos postea
treasure of-count Charles received secretly who them afterward
detinuerit et auxilium prestiterit, quos rex et comes
kept and aid furnished whom the-king and the-count
communi consilio terrae baronum reos condempnaverant
by-common counsel of-the-land of-the-barons guilty had-condemned
et proscriptioni decreverant. Igitur post conjurationem
and to-proscription had-decreed therefore after the-swearing
consederunt simul in domo comitis, et accusaverunt
they-sat together in the-house of-the-count and accused
apud nos centum viginti quinque, et in Reddenburg cum
among us a-hundred twenty five and at Aardenburg with
Lamberto, quem traditionis reum notaverant, triginta septem.
Lambert whom of-betrayal guilty they-had-marked thirty seven

Pressed by his knights, who held the toll in fief, the count demands it back from the burghers, and ill will grows. The kin of those killed in the siege demand justice against those who smuggled the besieged out, and the count proscribes the accused who had done homage to Charles and aided the traitors, and pardons others.

Decimo quinto kal. octobris, sabbato, in die sancti
on-the-tenth and-fifth kalends of-October on-Saturday on the-day of-saint
Lamberti, comes iturus versus Ipram, requisivit a
Lambert the-count about-to-go toward Ypres demanded from
burgensibus nostris teloneum. At illis ingratus erat comes,
the-burghers our the-toll but to-them unwelcome was the-count
ideo quod de redditibus telonei milites sui feodati
for-this-reason that from the-revenues of-the-toll knights his enfeoffed
fuerant a tempore omnium predecessorum suorum comitum.
had-been from the-time of-all predecessors his the-counts
Vexabant enim consulem milites sui, eo quod Burdgensibus
were-troubling for the-consul knights his by-this that to-the-men-of-Bruges
condonasset teloneum quo ipsi hactenus feodi exstiterant;
he-had-remitted the-toll of-which they hitherto of-the-fief had-been
et illud non potuisse confirmabant comitem juste sine
and that not to-have-been-able they-asserted the-count justly without
suorum militum assensu condonare, nec juste ipsos cives
of-his knights assent to-remit nor justly the-very citizens
ut eis condonaret consulem expostulasse. Unde invidia
that to-them he-should-remit the-consul to-have-demanded whence envy
concitata est inter cives et inter comitem militesque suos.
stirred-up was between the-citizens and between the-count and-knights his
Secundum legem ergo obsidionis, quam principes decreverant,
according-to the-law therefore of-the-siege which the-princes had-decreed

comes et sui post accusationem, agere studuerunt; namque
the-count and his-men after the-accusation to-act strove for
lex et decretum tale statutum fuit: «Quicumque eduxerit
a-law and decree such established was whoever shall-have-led-out
contra assensum principum obsidionis quemquam de obsessis,
against the-assent of-the-princes of-the-siege anyone of the-besieged
quali pena erat mulctandus eductus, tali tormento
with-what penalty was to-be-fined the-one-led-out by-such torment
dampnabitur eductor.» Itaque cum multi fuissent de obsessis
shall-be-condemned the-leader-out and-so since many had-been of the-besieged
clanculo et pro pretio educti, jam parentes illorum qui
secretly and for price led-out already the-kinsmen of-those who
in obsidendo traditores occisi erant, flectebant se ad
in besieging the-traitors slain were bent themselves at
genua comitis, obsecrantes ut sibi ad occidendum vel
the-knees of-the-count beseeching that to-them for killing or
puniendum daret illos, qui clanculo et furtim et
punishing he-should-give those who secretly and stealthily and
traditiose obsessos eduxerant, aut illos seductores a terra
treacherously the-besieged had-led-out or those seducers from the-land
ejiceret. Sicque constrictus ratione consul, accusatos ante
he-should-cast-out and-thus constrained by-reason the-consul the-accused before
se precepit stare, volens ipsos secundum legem obsidionis
himself ordered to-stand wishing them according-to the-law of-the-siege
tractare. At illi responderunt, sese non fuisse legitime
to-deal-with but they answered themselves not to-have-been lawfully
accusatos, sed caussa invidiae et odii et non caussa
accused but for-the-sake of-envy and of-hatred and not for-the-sake
veritatis; summopere tamen rogabant consulem, ut secundum
of-truth earnestly yet they-asked the-consul that according-to
judicium scabinorum terrae ipsos tractaret, tam de
the-judgment of-the-aldermen of-the-land them he-should-deal-with as-much about

nota traditionis quam de cujusque suspicionis respectu.
the-mark of-betrayal as about of-every suspicion the-regard
Plures quidem reconciliati sunt comiti de accusatis, quos
many indeed reconciled were to-the-count of the-accused whom
adhuc persequebantur nepotes et filii et cognati eorum qui
still pursued the-nephews and sons and kinsmen of-those who
in obsidione occisi fuerant, vel quia traditores subduxerant,
in the-siege slain had-been or because the-traitors they-had-withdrawn
qui dominum terrae Karolum simulque patrem ipsorum
who the-lord of-the-land Charles and-together father their
tradiderant; sicut fuerant filii castellani ex Brudburg,
had-betrayed as were the-sons of-the-castellan of Bourbourg
qui in presentia etiam novi comitis appellare festinabant
who in the-presence even of-the-new count to-challenge hastened
Everardum ex Gend, qui obsessos scilicet illos eduxerat
Everard of Ghent who the-besieged namely those had-led-out
caussa pecuniae, qui patrem et fratres occiderant suos simul
for-the-sake of-money who the-father and brothers had-killed their together
cum comite patriae. Audito illo, major pars accusatorum
with the-count of-the-fatherland heard that the-greater part of-the-accused
se subtraxit, quos conscientia mordebat propria. Accepit
themselves withdrew whom conscience bit their-own took
ergo comes consilium, et convocatis baronibus suis decrevit,
therefore the-count counsel and called-together barons his decreed
quatenus illos proscriberet accusatos, qui hominium Karolo
that those be-should-proscribe accused who homage to-Charles
comiti fecerant, et insimul auxilium prebuerant traditoribus
the-count had-made and at-the-same-time help had-given to-the-traitors
obsessi cum ipsis, sed et alios ad satisfactionem susciperet,
besieged with them but also others to satisfaction should-receive
et alios misericorditer sine judicio reciperet in gratia sua.
and others mercifully without judgment should-take-back into favor his

Walter of Vladslo, a peer privy to the betrayal, dies after a fall from his horse. His wife reveals that the son he had married to the provost's niece was a shoemaker's child she had substituted for a stillborn infant, and so God mocked the provost's ambition.

Factum est ergo Dei districto et horribili examine,
done it-was therefore of-God by-the-strict and horrible judgment
quod Walterus ex Frorerdeslo, unus parium terrae, in
that Walter of Vladslo one of-the-peers of-the-land in
quadam militiae expeditione, ex proprio cursu suo ab
a-certain of-knighthood expedition from own course his from
equo precipitatus, totus confractus langueret, et postmodum
horse cast-headlong wholly broken lay-sick and afterward
in paucis diem obierit. Verum quippe fuit, illum conscium
in a-few the-day met true indeed it-was him privy
fuisse traditionis domini sui et patris universae terrae
to-have-been of-the-betrayal of-lord his and father of-the-whole land
Flandrensis. Qui etiam, ut certissima securitate cum
Flemish who also that with-most-certain security with
traditoribus consisteret, adoptivum quendam filium sutoris,
the-traitors he-might-stand an-adopted certain son of-a-shoemaker
quem uxor ejus sibi mentita est filium fuisse, copulavit
whom wife his to-him falsely-said has son to-have-been joined
conjugio nepti prepositi Bertulphi. Crediderat enim verum
in-marriage to-the-niece of-the-provost Bertulf had-believed for true
fuisse sibi filium pater, quem olim fraudulenter mater,
to-have-been to-himself a-son the-father whom once fraudulently the-mother
quasi uxor Walteri prefati, peperisse dissimulabat. At infans,
as-if wife of-Walter aforesaid to-have-borne pretended but the-infant
quem pepererat, statim in ipso partu obierat. Supposuit
whom she-had-borne at-once in the-very birth had-died she-substituted

ergo filium sutoris, qui circa idem tempus genitus fuerat,
therefore the-son of-a-shoemaker who about the-same time born had-been
et emortuum quem pepererat clanculo uxori sutoris
and the-dead-one whom she-had-borne secretly to-the-wife of-the-shoemaker
submisit, dans ei pecuniam, ut fateretur se peperisse
passed giving her money that she-should-confess herself to-have-borne
illum emortuum, et viro suo quod factum erat celaret.
that dead-one and from-husband her what done was should-hide
Cumque crevisset ille furatus et adoptivus filius, et omnes
and-when had-grown that stolen and adopted son and all
crediderant vere filium fuisse illius Walteri, venit prepositus
had-believed truly son to-have-been of-that Walter came the-provost
et dedit neptem suam, filiam filii fratris sui, illi furtivo
and gave niece his the-daughter of-the-son of-brother his to-that stolen
filio uxorem, ut firmiter ad omnem fortunam simul per illud
son as-wife that firmly to every fortune together through that
conjugium consisterent, audaciores, fortiores ac potentiores
marriage they-might-stand bolder stronger and more-powerful
forent. Igitur post mortem ipsius Walteri profitebatur publice
might-be therefore after the-death of-that Walter professed publicly
uxor ejus, puerum illum non esse verum filium suum sed
wife his boy that not to-be true son her but
adoptivum, quem isdem Walterus apud burgensem quendam
adopted whom the-same Walter with a-burgher certain
posuerat in vadimonium pro trecentis libris. Sicque arte
had-placed in pledge for three-hundred pounds and-thus by-the-art
Dei delusa est ars prepositi, qui cum vellet superbe et
of-God mocked was the-art of-the-provost who when he-wished proudly and
gloriose per illud conjugium cognationem suam extollere,
gloriously through that marriage kindred his to-raise
filio sutoris, Dei arte deceptus, eam copulavit. Nemo
to-the-son of-a-shoemaker of-God by-the-art deceived it he-joined no-one

vero ausus fuit manum mittere contra Walterum, quamvis
but dared has a-hand to-lay against Walter although
traditionis conscius fuisset, erat enim par terrae illius,
of-the-betrayal privy he-had-been he-was for a-peer of-land that
alter a comite. At Deus, cui vindicta relinquebatur,
second after the-count but God to-whom vengeance was-left
morte languida a fidelium aspectu exterminavit illum.
by-death languid from of-the-faithful the-sight wiped-out him

90 · WILLIAM OF YPRES MOVED; THE TRAITORS' FEAST

In October the count has William of Ypres moved to Lille for fear the citizens might free him. Galbert recalls that on the night of the count's burial, Borsiard and his accomplices, like pagans and sorcerers, ate and drank on his tomb so that no one would avenge him.

Octavo idus octobris, sabbato ante festum sancti Richarii,
on-the-eighth ides of-October on-Saturday before the-feast of-saint Riquier
jussu comitis abductus est Willelmus ille Iprensis ad Insulas
by-order of-the-count taken-away was William that of-Ypres to Lille
et commendatus castellano illius castri. Timuit cives
and entrusted to-the-castellan of-that castle he-feared the-citizens
nostros et etiam a terra proscriptos, ne aliquo dolo
our and also from the-land the-proscribed lest by-some guile
ejicerent in Brugis a captivitate Willelmum, et vi
they-should-cast-out at Bruges from captivity William and by-force
irruerent in castrum. Notandum quod, occiso comite Karolo,
should-rush into the-castle it-must-be-noted that slain the-count Charles
Borsiardus et sui sceleris participes, more paganorum
Borsiard and of-his crime the-sharers in-the-manner of-pagans
et incantatorum, nocte qua primo sepultus erat comes
and of-enchanters on-the-night on-which first buried was the-count

Karolus, acceperunt sciphum plenum cerevisiae et panem,
Charles took a-cup full of-beer and bread
considentes circa sepulchrum, posuerunt potum illum et
sitting around the-tomb they-set drink that and
panem in mensa sepulchri, edentes et bibentes super beati
bread on the-table of-the-tomb eating and drinking over of-the-blessed
comitis corpus ea fide, ut nullo modo illum quis vindicaret.
count the-body in-that faith that in-no way him anyone should-avenge

91 · BALDWIN OF AALST'S DEATH

Baldwin of Aalst, a peer marked by the betrayal, dies when the blowing of a horn bursts an old wound in his forehead, taking the monastic habit at the end. He and Walter of Vladslo had led the provost and others out of the siege for money and abandoned them in the fields.

Nono kal. novembris, feria secunda ante festum sancti
on-the-ninth kalends of-November on-the-day second before the-feast of-saint
Amandi, Baldewinus ex Alst obiit. Qui unus etiam par
Amand Baldwin of Aalst died who one also peer
parium Flandriae, domini sui Karoli traditionis notatus malo,
of-the-peers of-Flanders of-lord his Charles of-the-betrayal marked with-evil
non longe post, hac vita potitus expiravit leviori occasione
not long after this life having-enjoyed expired by-a-lighter occasion
mortis, dum scilicet cornu flaret, et jam vento arterias
of-death while namely a-horn he-blew and now with-wind the-arteries
intrinsecus turgente, totius capitis sui vires ad flandum
within swelling of-the-whole head his the-powers for blowing
laborarent, ex abrupto medulla cerebri, a naturali loco
labored from a-sudden the-marrow of-the-brain from natural place
concussa, erupta est per vulnus antiquitus factum in fronte.
shaken burst-out was through a-wound long-ago made in the-forehead

Quod cum ventorum et proprii spiritus tumor disruperat,
which when of-the-winds and of-his-own breath the-swelling had-burst-apart
ebullierant medullae quae in cerebro jacuerant, ita ut meatus
had-boiled-out the-marrows which in the-brain had-lain so that the-passages
narium, oculorum et simul gutturis suffocarent, et sic
of-the-nostrils of-the-eyes and together of-the-throat they-choked and thus
mortuus ense Dei plagas mortales sustinuit. Tandem cum
dead by-the-sword of-God blows mortal he-sustained at-last when
suprema vita spiraret, monachilem habitum accepit, et sic
the-last life he-breathed the-monastic habit he-took and thus
more christiani militis a seculo migrabat. Igitur isti duo
in-the-manner of-a-christian knight from the-world he-departed therefore these two
prescripti principes terrae, cum e vicino et interposito
aforesaid princes of-the-land when from near and with-placed-between
intervallo obiissent, omnibus terrae incolis in ore et
interval they-had-died to-all of-the-land the-inhabitants in mouth and
memoria fuerant, ita ut de subita morte eorum tractarent,
memory they-had-been so that about the-sudden death of-them they-treated
quos post mortem domini Karoli Deus tam veloci sententia a
whom after the-death of-lord Charles God by-so swift a-sentence from
vita privaverat, et tam levis causae moriendi ipsis occasionem
life had-deprived and so light of-a-cause of-dying for-them the-occasion
ordinemque disposuerat. Contra morem christianum quidem
and-order had-arranged against custom christian indeed
in obsidione egerant cum preposito et aliis, quos a
in the-siege they-had-acted with the-provost and others whom from
captivitate eduxerant. Nam accepta pecunia a preposito et
captivity they-had-led-out for received money from the-provost and
suis, postquam subductos contra regis et principum decreta
his-men after withdrawn against of-the-king and of-the-princes the-decrees
per devia diverterant, nudos et solos in locis campestribus
by byways they-had-turned-aside naked and alone in places open

dimiserunt, quousque ipsi vagantes et pererrantes campos et
they-left until they wandering and roaming the-fields and
villas, capti sunt et miserrimae mortis exterminio dispersi.
villages captured were and of-most-wretched death by-extermination scattered

92 · DESIDERIUS'S DEATH

Desiderius, Isaac's brother, privy to the betrayal, dies in December. Since the siege he had dared come to court only in secret, and the count had forbidden him to serve as his cupbearer.

Decimo sexto kal. januarii, sabbato, tertia hebdomada finita
on-the-tenth and-sixth kalends of-January on-Saturday the-third week ended
adventus Domini, eodem anno in quatuor temporibus,
of-the-advent of-the-Lord in-the-same year in the-four-Ember days
Desiderius frater Isaac illius predicti traditoris mortuus est,
Desiderius brother of-Isaac that aforesaid traitor dead is
qui traditionis conscius, non promeruit ulterius vitae felicitate
who of-the-betrayal privy not deserved further of-life the-happiness
perfrui. A tempore ergo obsidionis nusquam ausus est
to-enjoy from the-time therefore of-the-siege nowhere dared has
prodire ad curiam comitis, nisi latenter; nam plures fuerant
to-come-forth to the-court of-the-count except secretly for many there-had-been
in comitatu nostro, qui illum appellassent ad bellum et
in county our who him would-have-challenged to combat and
reum traditionis convicissent, si aperte ad curiam exiisset.
guilty of-betrayal would-have-convicted if openly to the-court he-had-gone-out
Insuper interdictum est a comite novo eidem Desiderio,
moreover forbidden it-was by the-count new to-the-same Desiderius

quamquam forte ad curiam ascenderet, ne sibi propinaret;
although perhaps to the-court he-should-go-up lest to-him he-should-pour-drink
nam in curia unus ex propinatoribus ipse constiterat.
for in the-court one of the-cupbearers he had-been

93 · THE FINE ON LILLE

When the count tries to seize a serf of his at the August fair in Lille, the citizens drive him and his Normans out, and he besieges the town and fines it fourteen hundred marks, leaving lasting hatred.

Kal. augusti retro, itaque in festo sancti Petri in
on-the-kalends of-August back and-so on the-feast of-saint Peter in
Augusto, habitis nundinis in Insulis, cum comes voluisset
August held the-fair at Lille when the-count had-wished
quendam de servis suis ibidem in foro capere et jussisset
a-certain of serfs his there in the-market to-take and had-ordered
capi, cives Insulenses ad arma ruebant, comitem et suos
to-be-taken the-citizens of-Lille to arms rushed the-count and his-men
extra suburbium fugaverunt, alios de curia verberantes, et
outside the-suburb they-put-to-flight others of the-court beating and
Northmannos in paludes precipitantes, plures aliis et aliis
Normans into the-marshes casting-headlong many with-other and other
affecerunt lesionibus. Statimque comes obsedit Insularum omnia
they-visited injuries and-at-once the-count besieged of-Lille all
loca, et coegit cives sibi reddere marchas argenti mille
the-places and forced the-citizens to-himself to-give marks of-silver thousand
et quadringentas, si saltem illo modo repacificarentur.
and four-hundred if at-least in-that way they-might-be-pacified-again

Unde concitata est invidia maxima inter cives illos et
whence stirred was envy very-great between citizens those and
comitem, ita ut deinceps sibi suspecti utrimque starent.
the-count so that thereafter to-each-other suspected on-both-sides they-stood

94 · THE REVOLT AT SAINT OMER

In February the burghers of Saint Omer rise against a rapacious castellan the count imposes. Besieged, they bring in Arnulf, Charles's nephew, and in the snow and east wind buy peace for six hundred marks.

Tertio nonas februarii, feria sexta post festum
on-the-third nones of-February on-the-day sixth after the-feast
purificationis matris Domini, insurrexerunt burgenses in
of-the-purification of-the-mother of-the-Lord rose-up the-burghers at
Sancto Audomaro contra comitem, eo quod injuste volebat
Saint Omer against the-count by-this that unjustly wished
comes preferre illis castellanum loci illius, qui violenter
the-count to-set-over them the-castellan of-place that who violently
res et substantiam civium illorum diripuerat et adhuc
the-goods and substance of-citizens those had-plundered and still
rapere satagebat; obsedit quoque Sanctum Audomarum
to-seize was-busy he-besieged also Saint Omer
cum gravi exercitu. At cives subintroduxerant Arnoldum,
with heavy army but the-citizens had-brought-in-secretly Arnulf
nepotem Karoli consulis, et hominia ei fecerant et
nephew of-Charles the-consul and homages to-him had-made and
securitates, ut, si forte perduraret comes novus in injusta
assurances that if perhaps should-persist the-count new in the-unjust
obsidione, ad illum Arnoldum se converterent. Eadem
siege to that Arnulf themselves they-might-turn at-the-same

tempestate nix et glacies et frigus et orientis ventus
time snow and ice and cold and of-the-east wind
simul inhorruerant super faciem terrae, et ideo timebant
together had-bristled over the-face of-the-earth and therefore they-feared
insultum comitis, reddideruntque pro repacificatione sexcentas
the-assault of-the-count and-they-gave for the-repacifying six-hundred
marcas argenti. Unde maxima invidia excitata est inter cives
marks of-silver whence very-great envy stirred was between citizens
illos et comitem, et deinceps facti sunt sibi suspecti.
those and the-count and thereafter made they-were to-each-other suspected

95 · IWAIN'S SPEECH AT GHENT

When the count tries to force a hated castellan on Ghent, Iwain speaks for the citizens: he has broken his oaths on the toll and the peace, oppressed Lille and Saint Omer, and should submit to judgment at Ypres or leave the county. The count, ready to fight Iwain, fills Ypres with knights for the meeting, and Iwain and Daniel renounce their homage and urge the castles of Flanders to join them.

Decimo quarto kal. martii, feria quinta ante
on-the-tenth and-fourth kalends of-March on-the-day fifth before
septuagesimam, insurrexerunt Gendenses contra castellanum
Septuagesima rose-up the-men-of-Ghent against castellan
suum, eo quod injuriose et perverse semper egisset
their by-this that injuriously and perversely always he-had-acted
contra ipsos, qui transtulit se ad consulem, quem ad
against them who transferred himself to the-consul whom for
repacificandum se et cives adduxit. Igitur comes, volens
pacifying-again himself and the-citizens he-brought therefore the-count wishing
opprimere cives et eisdem violenter anteponere castellanum
to-oppress the-citizens and on-them violently to-set-over the-castellan

prefatum, ibidem per aliquot dies expectabat. Tunc cives,
aforesaid there for some days waited then the-citizens
sicut pepigerant cum Daniele principe et Iwanno fratre
as they-had-agreed with Daniel the-prince and Iwain brother
Baldwini, posuerunt comitem ad rationem, et convocatis
of-Baldwin put the-count to account and called-together
universis in Gandavo, Iwan prolocutor civium statutus est,
all at Ghent Iwain spokesman of-the-citizens appointed was
et sic orsus est: «Domine comes, si cives nostros et vestros
and thus begun he-has lord count if citizens our and your
burgenses et nos amicos ipsorum jure volueratis tractasse,
burghers and us friends their rightly you-had-wished to-have-treated
non aliquas exactiones pravas et infestationes debueratis
not any exactions wicked and harassments you-ought
nobis intulisse, imo ab hostibus defendisse et honeste
on-us to-have-brought nay from enemies to-have-defended and honorably
tractasse. Nunc ergo contra jus et sacramenta, quae pro
to-have-treated now therefore against right and the-oaths which for
vobis juravimus de condonato teloneo, de confirmanda
you we-swore about the-remitted toll about to-be-confirmed
pace et de ceteris justitiis, quae homines hujus terrae
the-peace and about the-other rights which the-men of-this land
obtinuerant a predecessoribus bonis terrae consulibus, et
had-obtained from predecessors good of-the-land consuls and
maxime tempore domini Karoli, et a vobis, vos in propria
most in-the-time of-lord Charles and from you you in own
persona fregistis, et fidem vestram et nostram, qui in
person have-broken and faith your and ours who in
idipsum vobiscum conjuravimus, violastis. Manifestum
that-very-thing with-you swore you-have-violated plain
est, quantam violentiam et rapinam in Insulis fecistis,
it-is how-great violence and plunder at Lille you-did

et quantum cives in Sancto Audomaro persecuti sitis
and how-much the-citizens at Saint Omer persecuted you-have
injuste et perverse; nunc quoque in Gandavo cives, si
unjustly and perversely now also at Ghent the-citizens if
potueritis, male tractabitis. Sed cum sitis dominus noster
you-can ill you-shall-treat but since you-are lord our
et totius terrae Flandriae, decet nos vobiscum rationabiliter
and of-the-whole land of-Flanders it-befits us with-you reasonably
agere, non violenter, non perverse. Ponatur curia vestra,
to-deal not violently not perversely let-be-placed court your
si placet, in Ipra, qui locus est in medio terrae vestrae,
if it-pleases at Ypres which place is in the-middle of-land your
et conveniant principes utrimque nostrique compares ac
and let-come-together the-princes on-both-sides and-our peers and
universi sapientiores in clero et populo in pace et sine
all the-wiser in the-clergy and people in peace and without
armis, tranquillo animo et bene considerato, sine dolo et
arms with-calm mind and well considered without guile and
malo ingenio, et dijudicent. Si potueritis comitatum salvo
evil device and let-them-judge if you-can the-countship saving
honore terrae deinceps obtinere, volo ut obtineatis; sin
the-honor of-the-land thereafter to-hold I-wish that you-may-hold if-not
vero tales estis, scilicet exlex, sine fide dolosus, perjurus,
but such you-are namely lawless without faith guileful perjured
discedite a comitatu, et eum nobis relinquite idoneo et
depart from the-countship and it to-us leave fit and
legitimo alicui viro commendandum; nos enim mediatores
lawful to-some man to-be-entrusted we for mediators
sumus inter regem Franciae et vos, ut sine honore terrae
are between the-king of-France and you that without the-honor of-the-land
et nostro consilio nihil in comitatu dignum ageretis. Ecce!
and our counsel nothing in the-countship worthy you-should-do behold

Tam nos, fidejussores vestros apud prefatum regem, quam
as us sureties your with the-aforesaid king as
burgenses totius pene Flandriae perverse tractastis contra
the-burghers of-the-whole almost Flanders perversely you-have-treated against
fidem et jusjurandum, tam ipsius regis quam vestri, et
the-faith and oath as-much of-the-very king as of-yours and
subsequenter nostrorum omnium principum terrae.» Igitur
next of-our all princes of-the-land therefore
comes prosiliens exfestucasset Iwannum, si ausus
the-count leaping-forth would-have-renounced-with-the-rod Iwain if dared
esset prae tumultu civium illorum, et ait: «Volo ergo,
he-had for the-tumult of-citizens those and says I-wish therefore
rejecto hominio quod mihi fecisti, parem me tibi facere,
cast-off the-homage which to-me you-made equal myself to-you to-make
et sine dilatione bello comprobare in te, quia bene
and without delay by-combat to-prove against you that well
et rationabiliter adhuc per omnia in comitatu egerim.» At
and reasonably till-now in all-things in the-countship I-have-acted but
Iwan renuit. Et determinaverunt diem, feria quinta in
Iwain refused and they-fixed a-day on-the-day fifth at
capite jejuniorum, octavo idus martii, quando pacifice in
the-head of-the-fasts on-the-eighth ides of-March when peacefully at
Ipra convenirent. Igitur comes descendit Bruggas, et
Ypres they-should-come-together therefore the-count went-down to-Bruges and
convocatis viciniae illius militibus, precepit ut ad diem
called-together of-the-neighborhood that the-knights ordered that for the-day
positum secum et ad ipsum armata manu festinarent,
set with-himself and to him with-armed hand they-should-hasten
convocatisque civibus in Brudgis, conquestus est eis
and-called-together the-citizens at Bruges complained he-has to-them
quam inhoneste ipsum a terra expelleret Iwan et sui,
how dishonorably him from the-land would-expel Iwain and his-men

si possent, exoravitque eos, ut secum fideliter starent.
if they-could and-he-entreated them that with-him faithfully they-should-stand
At illi annuerunt. Igitur ad diem ascendit comes manu
but they assented therefore for the-day went-up the-count with-hand
armata, et implevit Ipram militibus et coterellis preparatis
armed and filled Ypres with-knights and mercenaries prepared
et ad pugnandum accinctis. Ascendit quoque Iwan et Daniel
and for fighting girded went-up also Iwain and Daniel
juxta Ipram, scilicet in Roslara, et premisit internuntios
near Ypres namely at Roeselare and sent-ahead go-betweens
ad comitem, dicens: «Domine comes, quia dies in sacro
to the-count saying lord count since the-day in the-sacred
jejuniorum tempore positus est, cum pace et sine dolo
of-fasts time set is with peace and without guile
et armis sed rationabiliter venisse debueratis, et non
and arms but reasonably to-have-come you-ought and not
fecistis, imo contra homines vestros pugnaturus presto
you-have-done nay against men your about-to-fight ready
estis, mandant vobis Iwan et Daniel et Gendenses, quia
you-are send-word to-you Iwain and Daniel and the-men-of-Ghent that
dolose ipsos interficere venistis, hominia, quae inviolabiliter
guilefully them to-kill you-have-come the-homages which inviolably
hactenus vobis servaverunt, exfestucare per nos non
hitherto to-you they-have-kept to-renounce-with-the-rod through us not
differunt.» Et exfestucaverunt ex parte dominorum suorum
they-delay and renounced-with-the-rod from part of-lords their
internuntii illi et abierunt. Ante hoc tempus Iwan et Daniel
go-betweens those and went-away before this time Iwain and Daniel
transmiserant per castra Flandriae mandantes salutem:
had-sent through the-castles of-Flanders sending greeting
«Obsides et fidejussores dabimus adinvicem, si vos vultis cum
hostages and sureties we-shall-give to-each-other if you wish with

honore vivere in terra, ut, si violenter velit comes irruere
honor to-live in the-land that if violently should-wish the-count to-rush
super vos vel nos, undique ad mutuam nostram defensionem
upon you or us from-all-sides to mutual our defense
concurramus.» Annueruntque eis id libentissime se
we-may-run-together and-they-assented to-them that most-gladly themselves
facturos, si cum honore terrae et suo comite isto tam
about-to-do if with the-honor of-the-land and their count that so
perverso carere possent, qui nulli rei intenderet, nisi quo
perverse to-be-rid they-could who to-no thing attended except by-what
astu cives suos persequi potuisset. Et adjunxerunt: «Ecce!
cunning citizens his to-persecute he-might-be-able and they-added behold
patet quomodo mercatores et universae terrae Flandriae
it-is-plain how the-merchants and of-the-whole land of-Flanders
negotiatores obsessi sunt caussa comitis istius, quem vos
the-traders besieged are for-the-sake of-count that whom you
in comitatum dignissimi patris Karoli subrogastis, et
into the-countship of-the-most-worthy father Charles substituted and
jam per annum istum consumpsimus substantias nostras,
already through year this we-have-consumed substances our
et insuper quicquid in tempore alio sumus lucrati, aut iste
and besides whatever in time other we-have gained either this
comes abstulit aut nos infra terram istam clausi et obsessi ab
count took-away or we within land this shut and besieged by
inimicis ejus consumpsimus. Videte ergo, qua ratione isto
enemies his have-consumed see therefore by-what means of-that
careamus raptore et persecutore nostro, salvo tamen honore
we-may-be-rid robber and persecutor our saving yet the-honor
terrae et vestro.» Interim comes in Ipra insidiabatur Danieli
of-the-land and yours meanwhile the-count at Ypres lay-in-wait-for Daniel
et Iwanno, congregans sibi universos terrae milites.
and Iwain gathering to-himself all of-the-land knights

Theoderic of Alsace, Charles's kinsman, arrives at Ghent, and Flanders stands ready to receive four lords at once: the Norman count, Arnulf at Saint Omer, the count of Mons, and Theoderic.

Quinto idus martii, dominica prima quadragesimae, fama
on-the-fifth ides of-March on-Sunday first of-Lent a-report
vera nos percellebat, quod juvenis Theodoricus, nepos Karoli
true us struck that the-youth Theoderic nephew of-Charles
consulis, ex Elsatan venisset in Gandavum ibique expectaret,
the-consul from Alsace had-come to Ghent and-there was-waiting
donec, propulso isto comite cum suis Normannis, ipse in
until driven-off this count with his Normans he as
consulem susciperetur. Et valde mirandum est, quod Flandria
consul should-be-taken-up and greatly to-be-wondered-at it-is that Flanders
tot dominos susciperet, et eodem tempore puerum
so-many lords should-take-up and at-the-same time the-boy
de Montibus, et Arnoldum, quem in Sancto Audomaro
of Mons and Arnulf whom at Saint Omer
subintroduxerant, et istum qui jam expectat Gandavi,
they-had-brought-in-secretly and this-one who now waits at-Ghent
et istum nostrum abusivum comitem, se recepturum
and this our abusive count herself about-to-receive
parata foret. Nam istum Normannum, consulem nostrum,
ready she-should-be for this Norman consul our
Theodericus castellanus et ipsius cognati et amici, Arnoldum
Theoderic the-castellan and his kinsmen and friends Arnulf
vero illi in Sancto Audomaro, comitem de Montibus illi
but those at Saint Omer the-count of Mons those

de Atrebato et illis confiniis, Theodoricum istum Iwan et
of Arras and those borders Theoderic this-one Iwain and
Daniel et Gendenses in comitem assumere festinabant.
Daniel and the-men-of-Ghent as count to-take-up were-hastening

97 · BRUGES SHUTS ITS GATES

The citizens of Bruges search the count's house for stores and shut their gates against him. Gervase summons his men to Torhout. The count drives Arnulf out of Saint Omer, and the men of Bruges and the coast swear to stand together.

Decimo septimo kal. aprilis, feria sexta, cives
on-the-tenth and-seventh kalends of-April on-the-day sixth the-citizens
Brugensium corruerunt in castrum, inquirentes si Fromoldus
of-Bruges rushed into the-castle inquiring if Fromold
junior domum comitis implesset frumento et vino et
the-younger the-house of-the-count had-filled with-grain and wine and
ceteris victualibus, ad opus comitis Willelmi observandam.
other victuals for the-use of-count William to-be-held
Eodem die, audito eo quod comes veniret in suburbium
on-the-same day heard this that the-count was-coming into the-suburb
Brudgis, obviam ei si forte venisset, clauserunt portas,
of-Bruges to-meet him if perhaps he-should-have-come they-shut the-gates
nolentes illum deinceps tenere pro comite.
unwilling him thenceforth to-hold for count
Sabbato in quatuor temporibus, jam transacta plena prima
on-Saturday in the-four-Ember days now passed full the-first
jejuniorum hebdomada, in sexto decimo kal. aprilis, Gertrudis
of-the-fasts week on the-sixth and-tenth kalends of-April of-Gertrude
virginis, castellanus Gervasius imperavit sese preparare
the-virgin the-castellan Gervase commanded themselves to-prepare

omnes qui in vicecomitatu ejus habitarent, ut in Toroholt
all who in the-viscountship his dwelt that at Torhout
expediti ad bellum conscenderent feria quarta post sabbatum
ready for battle they-should-go-up on-the-day fourth after Saturday
prescriptum, ibidem expectantes, donec comes noster Willelmus
the-aforesaid there waiting until count our William
ipsos deduceret contra Danielem et Iwan pugnaturos.
them should-lead against Daniel and Iwain about-to-fight
Duodecimo kal. aprilis, in Benedicti abbatis, castellanus
on-the-twelfth kalends of-April on of-Benedict abbot castellan
noster Gervasius a Toroholt in Bruggas rediit cum
our Gervase from Torhout to Bruges returned with
suis, retulitque quod Arnoldus, nepos Karoli comitis, jam
his-men and-related that Arnulf nephew of-Charles the-count now
secunda vice subinductus erat in Sanctum Audomarum
for-the-second time brought-in-secretly had-been into Saint Omer
fraudulenter a quibusdam civium. Quo rescito, comes
fraudulently by certain of-the-citizens which found-out the-count
Flandriae Willelmus cum potentia valida ab Ipra accurrit
of-Flanders William with power strong from Ypres ran-up
in Sanctum Audomarum, ac in ecclesiam Sancti Bertini
to Saint Omer and into the-church of-Saint Bertin
obsessum fugavit, volens incendere ecclesiam, coegitque ut
besieged he-drove wishing to-burn the-church and-forced that
Arnoldus ille abjuraret prorsus Flandriam simulque illi qui
Arnulf that should-forswear utterly Flanders and-together those who
cum ipso obsessi fuerant. Et hoc eodem die reversus est
with him besieged had-been and on-this same day returned has
comes in Ipram, preparans se ut sequente die invaderet
the-count to Ypres preparing himself that on-the-following day he-might-attack
Iwannum et Danielem cum expeditione imperata in Toroholt.
Iwain and Daniel with the-expedition commanded at Torhout

Eodem die, scilicet feria quarta, cives nostri et
on-the-same day namely on-the-day fourth citizens our and
maritimi Flandrenses nostri conjuraverunt, ut simul deinceps
the-maritime Flemings our swore that together thenceforth
starent pro tuendo honore loci et patriae.
they-would-stand for guarding the-honor of-the-place and of-the-fatherland

98 · BRUGES REFUSES THE COUNT

Iwain and Daniel give Bruges until Monday to choose sides. Bruges refuses the count its castle, bars its gates as he passes toward Maldegem, and gains the support of Cono of Vladslo and the knights of Lissewege and Oostkerke.

Decimo kal. aprilis, feria sexta, transmissis litteris, illi
on-the-tenth kalends of-April on-the-day sixth sent letters those
ex Gend simul Iwan et Daniel dicebant nostris burgensibus,
from Ghent together Iwain and Daniel said to-our burghers
ut usque in diem lunae proximum previderent sibi,
that until to the-day of-the-moon next they-should-foresee for-themselves
utrum deliberarent prorsus permanere cum Gendensibus et
whether they-would-decide utterly to-remain with the-men-of-Ghent and
prorsus exfestucare comitem, an prorsus persisterent
utterly to-renounce-with-the-rod the-count or utterly would-persist
cum consule Willelmo, et contradicerent Gendensibus et
with the-consul William and oppose the-men-of-Ghent and
ipsorum dominis ac amicis. Ultra prescriptum diem igitur
their lords and friends beyond the-appointed day therefore
nolebant in ambiguo suspendi cum Brudgensibus.
they-were-unwilling in doubt to-be-suspended with the-men-of-Bruges

Nono kal. aprilis, sabbato Dixit Rebecca, audierant
on-the-ninth kalends of-April on-Saturday Said Rebecca had-heard
Brudgenses, quod comes ex Alstra satageret descendere
the-men-of-Bruges that the-count from Aalter was-busy to-come-down
Bruggas: contradixerunt ei locum et castrum suum.
to-Bruges they-refused him the-place and castle their
Remandaverunt comiti per castellanum Gervasium, ut
they-sent-back-word to-the-count through the-castellan Gervase that
alias se diverteret, donec inimicos suos extirpasset a
elsewhere himself he-should-turn until enemies his he-had-rooted-out from
Flandria, et tunc primum redderent ei et locum et
Flanders and then first they-would-render to-him both the-place and
castrum in Brudgis. Requirebant quoque ab eodem Gervasio
castle at Bruges they-asked also from the-same Gervase
castellano, ut profiteretur ipsis utrum deliberasset, an prorsus
the-castellan that he-should-declare to-them whether he-had-decided either utterly
remanere in fide et securitate eadem cum ipsis, an prorsus ab
to-remain in faith and assurance the-same with them or utterly from
ipsis cum suo consule recedere. Eodem die circa vesperam,
them with his consul to-withdraw on-the-same day about evening
viderunt transitum comitis apud nos versus Maldenghem,
they-saw the-passing of-the-count near us toward Maldegem
statim ad arma prosilientes cives nostri, in exitibus portarum
at-once to arms leaping-forth citizens our at the-exits of-the-gates
restitissent comiti in faciem, si ad Brudgas descendisset,
would-have-withstood the-count in the-face if to Bruges he-had-come-down
et portas undique clauserunt contra illum. Eodem die, Cono
and the-gates on-all-sides they-shut against him on-the-same day Cono
frater Walteri mortui ex Frorerdeslo introivit ad cives nostros,
brother of-Walter dead of Vladslo went-in to citizens our
et in medio fori coram universis jurabat, se cum sua
and in the-middle of-the-market before all swore himself with his

potentia deinceps cum civibus fideliter persistere. Erantque
power thenceforth with the-citizens faithfully to-persist and-there-were
civibus nostris coadjutores milites, Walterus ex Liswega et
to-citizens our as-helpers knights Walter of Lissewege and
sui, et illi ex Ostkerca, Hugo Snaggaerd et fratres sui.
his-men and those from Oostkerke Hugh Snaggaerd and brothers his

99 · THEODERIC'S PROMISES; FLANDERS DIVIDED

Theoderic and the countess of Holland promise Bruges its rights and free trade if he is chosen. Gervase goes to the count at Maldegem, Bruges sends for Daniel, Arnulf seeks the county with English help, and the land is divided among four claimants.

Octavo kal. aprilis, in dominica in annuntiatione sanctae
on-the-eighth kalends of-April on Sunday at the-annunciation of-holy
Mariae, evangelium legebatur Omne regnum in se divisum
Mary the-gospel was-read Every kingdom against itself divided
desolabitur; ad Brudgenses nostros, tam ad clerum quam ad
shall-be-desolated to men-of-Bruges our as-much to the-clergy as to
populum viciniae nostrae mandarunt Hollandiae comitissa
the-people of-neighborhood our sent-word of-Holland the-countess
et frater ejus Theodoricus adoptivus comes Gendensium
and brother her Theoderic adopted count of-the-men-of-Ghent
et nostrorum civium salutem: «Quicquid a predecessoribus
and of-our citizens greeting whatever from predecessors
nostris consulibus legitime possidetis, et per me firmius
our the-consuls lawfully you-possess also through me more-firmly
obtinebitis, si quidem me in comitatum subrogatis.
you-shall-hold if indeed me into the-countship you-substitute
Mercatoribus vestris et totius Flandriae pacem et liberum
to-merchants your and of-the-whole Flanders peace and free

negotiandi prebebo transitum, simulque soror mea comitissa
of-trading I-shall-furnish passage and-together sister my the-countess
idem prebebit, eatenus tamen, ut obsides demus in invicem
the-same shall-furnish so-far yet that hostages we-give to each-other
recipiendi me a vobis et liberam prestandi vobis negotiationem.»
of-receiving me by you and free of-furnishing to-you trade
Statim castellanus Gervasius transivit ad comitem in
at-once the-castellan Gervase crossed to the-count at
Maldenghem, consulens ei ut versus Ipram ascenderet, quia
Maldegem counseling him that toward Ypres he-should-go-up because
in Maldenghem quasi obsessus teneretur, si Gendenses
at Maldegem as-if besieged he-would-be-held if the-men-of-Ghent
in eum excursum forte fecissent. Statimque Brudgenses
against him a-sally perhaps should-have-made and-at-once the-men-of-Bruges
transmiserunt propter Danielem, ut cum sua potentia ad
sent for Daniel that with his power to
ipsos in Bruggas descenderet. Interim cum castellano ex
them to Bruges he-should-come-down meanwhile with the-castellan of
Brudburg Heinrico, Arnoldus quem in Sancto Audomaro olim
Bourbourg Henry Arnulf whom at Saint Omer once
susceperant in comitem, satagebat cum auxilio et consilio
they-had-taken-up as count was-busy with the-help and counsel
regis Angliae, ut comitatum Flandriae obtineret. Itaque
of-the-king of-England that the-countship of-Flanders he-might-obtain and-so
terra Flandriae divisa est, ut alii adhuc fidem conservantes
the-land of-Flanders divided is so-that some still faith keeping
et hominia comiti Willelmo, cum ipso militarent, alii
and homages to-count William with him served others
peroptarent Theodoricum, sicut Daniel et Iwan et Gendenses
greatly-wished Theoderic as Daniel and Iwain and the-men-of-Ghent
ac Brugenses, alii Arnoldum, sicut illi in Sancto Audomaro
and the-men-of-Bruges others Arnulf as those at Saint Omer

et vicinia illa, alii comitem ex Montibus preferendum
and neighborhood that others the-count of Mons to-be-preferred
crederent. Igitur in tanta divisione desolata est terra.
believed therefore in so-great division desolated is the-land

100 · GERVASE TAKES HIS LEAVE

Gervase, still bound by his faith to William, leaves Bruges, promising to plead for the citizens and asking them to keep his family. Iwain and Daniel bring Theoderic to Bruges, where the citizens applaud him.

Septimo kal. aprilis feria secunda, castellanus Gervasius
on-the-seventh kalends of-April on-the-day second the-castellan Gervase
noluit cum Brudgensibus nostris deinceps commanere, eo
was-unwilling with men-of-Bruges our thenceforth to-stay by-this
quod comiti Willelmo contradixissent locum et castrum suum
that to-count William they-had-refused the-place and castle their
et portas obstruxissent contra eum, et superadoptassent
and the-gates had-blocked against him and had-adopted-besides
Theodoricum sibi in consulem. Igitur extra castrum
Theoderic for-themselves as consul therefore outside the-castle
Bruggarum Gervasius mandavit pro melioribus civium, et
of-Bruges Gervase sent for the-better of-the-citizens and
habuit cum eis hujusmodi orationem: «Quia fidem unico
held with them of-this-kind a-speech because faith to-sole
domino meo, comiti Willelmo, adhuc servo, a quo separari
lord my count William still I-keep from whom to-be-separated
secundum legem seculi non potero salvo honore meo, non
according-to the-law of-the-world not I-shall-be-able saving honor my not
potero vobiscum commanendi licentiam habere, qui tantum
I-shall-be-able with-you of-staying leave to-have who so-great

feceritis comiti contemptum. Sed quia vos amo, ibo ad
you-have-done to-the-count contempt but because you I-love I-shall-go to
comitem, perorabo pro vobis, quatenus usque in dominicam
the-count I-shall-plead for you that until to Sunday
proximam induciet de vobis ne aliquam inferat vobis
next he-may-grant-truce about you lest any he-bring on-you
molestiam, ita ut si vos comiti potuero componere,
trouble so that if you to-the-count I-shall-be-able to-reconcile
faciam; sin vero, cautos vos faciam de omni molestia,
I-shall-do(-it) if-not but wary you I-shall-make about every trouble
quam comes inferet vobis, si eam prescire potero. Uxorem
which the-count shall-bring on-you if it to-foreknow I-shall-be-able wife
meam, filios et filias et res meas adhuc infra castrum
my sons and daughters and goods my still within the-castle
habitas, precor, honeste conservetis usque in determinatum
had I-pray honorably you-keep right-up to the-fixed
diem.» Et concesserunt ei omnes cives nostri fideliter
day and granted to-him all citizens our faithfully
sese observaturos. Eodem die Steven ex Boulara introivit
themselves about-to-keep on-the-same day Stephen of Nederboelare went-in
ad nos cum circa XL. militibus. Excursum fecerunt milites
to us with about 40 knights a-sally made knights
nostri ante domum Thancmari. Eodem die Iwan et Daniel
our before the-house of-Thancmar on-the-same day Iwain and Daniel
Bruggas induxerunt Theodoricum ex Elsatan, ut in comitem
to-Bruges brought Theoderic of Alsace that as count
assumeretur; occurrerant ei cives nostri, applaudentes ei.
he-should-be-taken-up had-run-to-meet him citizens our applauding him

Thancmar and his nephews burn their own houses at Straten. Iwain and Daniel have not yet done homage to Theoderic, since they may not choose a count without the duke of Louvain, and they act with the king of England, who backs Arnulf. William of Ypres is released to help William. The Oostkerke knights renounce William by letter.

Sexto kal. aprilis, feria tertia, in mane, Thancmarus
on-the-sixth kalends of-April on-the-day third in the-morning Thancmar
et nepotes ipsius domum et mansiones proprias in Straten
and nephews his the-house and dwellings own at Straten
combusserunt, quia, si hoc non fecissent, Daniel et Iwan
burned because if this not they-had-done Daniel and Iwain
cum suo Theodorico combussissent. Didicimus revera, quod
with their Theoderic would-have-burned we-have-learned in-truth that
Iwan et Daniel illi Theodorico hominium et securitatem
Iwain and Daniel to-that Theoderic homage and assurance
non fecerant adhuc, sed ducendo eum per castra Flandriae
not had-made yet but by-leading him through the-castles of-Flanders
populum et milites commoverent ad eligendum illum in
the-people and knights they-might-stir for choosing him as
consulem. Nam sine licentia et assensu ducis Lovaniae
consul for without leave and assent of-the-duke of-Louvain
electionem facere Iwan et Daniel non poterant; sic enim fidem
the-election to-make Iwain and Daniel not could thus for faith
duci utrique dederant, ne Theodoricum illum in consulem
to-the-duke both had-given lest Theoderic that as consul
eligerent sine consensu ducis. Eodem die audivimus,
they-should-choose without the-consent of-the-duke on-the-same day we-heard
quod Willelmus Iprensis a captivatione productus Cortracum
that William of-Ypres from captivity brought-forth to-Courtrai

venisset, ut consilio et viribus suis et suorum forte juvaret
had-come that with-counsel and strength his and of-his-men perhaps he-might-help
consulem Willelmum, a Bruggis et a Gandavo expulsum.
the-consul William from Bruges and from Ghent driven-out
Quia ergo Iwan et Daniel, duo ex paribus et principibus
because therefore Iwain and Daniel two of the-peers and princes
Flandriae, a rege Angliae donaria plurima susceperant, et
of-Flanders from the-king of-England gifts very-many had-received and
plura erant pro expulsione nepotis sui, scilicet nostri consulis
more were for the-expulsion of-nephew his namely of-our consul
Willelmi, accepturi, nihil absque consilio regis facere
William about-to-receive nothing without the-counsel of-the-king to-do
deliberarant, seu absque consilio ducis Lovaniae, cujus filiam
they-had-decided or without the-counsel of-the-duke of-Louvain whose daughter
rex Angliae et idem dux daturus erat Arnoldo nepoti
the-king of-England and the-same duke about-to-give was to-Arnulf nephew
consulis piissimi Karoli, quem eodem tempore Furnenses
of-the-consul most-pious Charles whom at-the-same time the-men-of-Furnes
et castellanus ex Brodburg in comitem susceperant, et hoc
and the-castellan of Bourbourg as count had-taken-up and this
consilio et auxilio regis Angliae. Interrogabant tandem
by-the-counsel and help of-the-king of-England asked at-last
cives nostri ipsos Iwanum et Danielem: «Cur ergo istum
citizens our them Iwain and Daniel why then this
Theodoricum ad nos usque perduxistis, si fidem, securitatem et
Theoderic to us right-up have-you-brought if faith assurance and
hominia ei vos priores, et nos secundo loco, non fuerimus
homages to-him you first and we in-the-second place not shall-be
facturi?» Responderunt: «Quia cum apud Bruggas veniret,
about-to-make they-answered because when to Bruges he-came
nobiscum venit, et nos cum ipso, ut videret situm loci,
with-us he-came and we with him that he-might-see the-site of-the-place

et temptaret, quo animo eum susciperent Brudgenses, et
and test with-what mind him would-take-up the-men-of-Bruges and
qui cum ipsis stabant amicitia et securitate conjuncti.»
those-who with them stood in-friendship and assurance joined
Quarto kal. aprilis, feria quinta, illi milites ex Ostkercka
on-the-fourth kalends of-April on-the-day fifth those knights from Oostkerke
ex nomine inscriptos pargameno, sese et plures alios
by name written on-parchment themselves and many others
transmiserunt consuli Willelmo in Ipra, et exfestucaverunt
sent to-the-consul William at Ypres and renounced-with-the-rod
fidem et hominia, quae olim fecerant ipsi eidem consuli.
the-faith and homages which once had-made they to-the-same consul

102 · THEODERIC ELECTED

On 30 March, a year after the princes returned from Arras with William's election, Theoderic is chosen count at the Sands. The proscribed may return and clear themselves by judgment, and the citizens may amend their customs. At Ypres a gallery collapses under William and his barons.

Tertio kal. aprilis, feria sexta, expectabant Brugenses
on-the-third kalends of-April on-the-day sixth awaited the-men-of-Bruges
reditum Danielis et Iwani, qui antea exiverant suburbium
the-return of-Daniel and of-Iwain who before had-gone-out-of the-suburb
clanculo cum militibus suis. Nam determinaverant civibus
secretly with knights their for they-had-fixed for-citizens
nostris hunc diem, in quo hominia et securitates facerent
our this day on which homages and assurances they-should-make
Theodorico ex Elsatan, simulque Gendenses et Brudgenses
to-Theoderic of Alsace together the-men-of-Ghent and the-men-of-Bruges
et qui cum ipsis conjuraverant. Haec autem feria sexta
and those-who with them had-sworn this moreover day sixth

hoc anno bissextili, in anno preterito erat feria quarta ante
this year leap in the-year past was the-day fourth before
diem Paschae proxima. Eodem die in vespera reversi sunt
the-day of-Easter next on-the-same day in the-evening returned have
ad nos in Brudgis Iwan et Daniel et Hugo Campus-Avenae.
to us at Bruges Iwain and Daniel and Hugh Champ-d'Avène
Et relatum est, quod Willelmus Iprensis ille captus libertate
and related it-was that William of-Ypres that captured with-freedom
donatus fuerit a consule Willelmo Normannorum. Statim
endowed had-been by the-consul William of-the-Normans at-once
postquam pransi sunt, tam principes quam populus
after dined they-had as-much the-princes as the-people
convenerunt in exitu castri apud Harenas omnes, ibique
came-together at the-exit of-the-castle at the-Sands all and-there
elegerunt Theodoricum ex Elsatan in consulem totius
chose Theoderic of Alsace as consul of-the-whole
Flandriae, feceruntque ei hominia Iwan et Daniel in
Flanders and-made to-him homages Iwain and Daniel in
presentia universorum, lexque data est omnibus, qui pro
the-presence of-all and-a-law given was to-all who for
traditione comitis Karoli proscripti habebantur, revertendi
the-betrayal of-count Charles proscribed were-held of-returning
in curiam hujus novelli comitis, et si auderent, secundum
to the-court of-this new count and if they-dared according-to
judicia principum et feodatorum terrae, si miles erat et
the-judgments of-the-princes and feudatories of-the-land if a-knight he-was and
ad curiam comitis pertinuisset, excusationem facerent; sin
to the-court of-the-count had-belonged excuse they-should-make if-not
vero, secundum judicia scabinorum terrae sese quisque
but according-to the-judgments of-the-aldermen of-the-land himself each
notatus purgaret. Superaddita est a consule principibus suis
marked should-clear added-besides was by the-consul to-princes his

et populo terrae libertas de statu rei publicae
and to-the-people of-the-land freedom about the-state of-the-thing public
et honore terrae meliorandi omnia jura et judicia et
and the-honor of-the-land of-bettering all the-rights and judgments and
mores et consuetudines ipsorum terram inhabitantium. Et
ways and customs of-them the-land inhabiting and
notandum quod in anno preterito, ista eadem feria, reversi
it-must-be-noted that in the-year past this same day returned
sunt principes obsidionis ex Atrebato, qui exiverant a
have the-princes of-the-siege from Arras who had-gone-out from
nobis pro eligendo consule terrae secundum regis Lodewici
us for choosing a-consul of-the-land according-to of-king Louis
consilium ac preceptum, Iwan et frater ejus Baldevinus ex
the-counsel and command Iwain and brother his Baldwin of
Alst, Walterus ex Frorerdeslo et ceteri terrae compares;
Aalst Walter of Vladslo and the-other of-the-land peers
redeuntes ad nos cum alacri animo, denuntiaverunt nobis
returning to us with eager mind announced to-us
sese cum rege Franciae elegisse Willelmum puerum
themselves with the-king of-France to-have-chosen William the-boy
ex Nortmannia libere et legitime in comitem et dominum
from Normandy freely and lawfully as count and lord
universae terrae nostrae. Et notandum quod consule Willelmo
of-all land our and it-must-be-noted that the-consul William
cum baronibus suis considente in Ipra in solario quodam, ut
with barons his sitting at Ypres in gallery a-certain that
consilium acciperet, quid facturus foret contra noviter electum
counsel he-might-take what about-to-do he-was against the-newly chosen
Theodoricum, consulem Gendensium et Brudgensium et
Theoderic consul of-the-men-of-Ghent and of-the-men-of-Bruges and
complicum eorum solummodo, decidit ipsum solarium in
of-accomplices their only fell the-very gallery to

terram, et corruerunt simul considentes in eo, ita ut unus
the-ground and collapsed together those-sitting in it so that one
ipsorum pene casu ipso prefocatus expirasset.
of-them almost by-the-fall itself choked had-expired

103 · HOMAGE TO THEODERIC

Theoderic swears on Saint Donatian's bier, with Iwain and Daniel as hostages, and Ghent and Bruges do homage. He is received in procession and dines in the counts' hall, while some of Gervase's own men plot to set Walter, Haket's son-in-law, over Gervase.

Pridie kal. aprilis, sabbato, iterum clerus et populus
on-the-day-before the-kalends of-April on-Saturday again the-clergy and people
reversi sunt apud Harenas, et super feretrum sancti Donatiani
returned have at the-Sands and upon the-bier of-saint Donatian
juravit comes, sicut prediximus, et dati sunt inter consulem
swore the-count as we-have-said-before and given were between the-consul
et clerum et populum obsides, Iwan et Daniel, illa omnia
and the-clergy and people as-hostages Iwain and Daniel those all-things
consulem adimplere et scienter non fraudare quae juraverit.
the-consul to-fulfill and knowingly not to-defraud which he-had-sworn
Deinde Gendenses fidelitatem jurabant, et deinde Brudgenses
then the-men-of-Ghent fealty swore and then the-men-of-Bruges
consuli et hominia fecerunt. Eodem die Lambertus ex
to-the-consul and homages made on-the-same day Lambert of
Reddenburg venit Brugas, ut se a traditione excusaret.
Aardenburg came to-Bruges that himself from the-betrayal he-might-excuse
Kal. aprilis, dominica Laetare Hierusalem, in medio
on-the-kalends of-April on-Sunday Rejoice Jerusalem in the-middle
quadragesimae, Theodoricus susceptus est in consulem, et cum
of-Lent Theoderic received was as consul and with

processione in ecclesia Sancti Donatiani in Brudgis et more
procession in the-church of-Saint Donatian at Bruges and in-the-manner
predecessorum suorum comitum ascendit, et pransus est in
of-predecessors his the-counts went-up and dined he-has in
aula et domo comitum, et per totum diem Brudgenses
the-hall and house of-the-counts and through all the-day men-of-Bruges
nostri elaborabant pro introducendo castellano Gervasio, quem
our labored for bringing-in the-castellan Gervase whom
fideliter dilexerant. Erant tamen aliqui Brudgensium, homines
faithfully they-had-loved there-were yet some of-the-men-of-Bruges men
quidem ejusdem Gervasii, qui nequiter agebant contra ipsum,
indeed of-the-same Gervase who wickedly acted against him
seorsum inito consilio cum quodam Waltero, genero Haketti
apart entered counsel with a-certain Walter son-in-law of-Haket
castellani, quem superponere Gervasio moliebantur.
the-castellan whom to-set-over Gervase they-were-striving

104 · GERVASE CHANGES SIDES

Gervase comes to Theoderic, renounces his faith to the condemned William, and does homage to the natural lord; the vassals follow, and Theoderic makes peace among old feuds.

Quarto nonas aprilis, quae feria in preterito anno erat
on-the-fourth nones of-April which day in the-past year was
sabbatum sanctum Paschae, modo vero feria secunda, introivit
Saturday holy of-Easter now but the-day second went-in
Gervasius castellanus in castrum Bruggarum ad consulem
Gervase the-castellan into the-castle of-Bruges to the-consul
Theodoricum in multitudine militum suorum et burgensium,
Theoderic in a-multitude of-knights his and of-burghers

qui fideliter ipsum dilexerant, stansque coram universis ait:
who faithfully him had-loved and-standing before all says
«Domine comes Theodorice, si Deus hanc gratiam contulisset
lord count Theoderic if God this grace had-conferred
nobis et patriae, ut vos statim post mortem domini
on-us and on-the-fatherland that you at-once after the-death of-lord
nostri et nepotis vestri Karoli presentem habuissemus,
our and nephew your Charles present we-had-had
neminem in comitatum preter vos suscepissemus. Notum
no-one into the-countship besides you we-would-have-taken-up known
ergo facio omnibus, quod a consule Willelmo prorsus
therefore I-make to-all that from the-consul William utterly
discesserim, hominium et fidem et securitatem, quam
I-have-departed the-homage and faith and assurance which
hactenus sibi servaverim, rejecerim, eo quod pares terrae
hitherto to-him I-have-kept I-have-cast-off by-this that the-peers of-the-land
et omnis populus illum condempnaverint, sine lege, sine
and all the-people him have-condemned without law without
fide, sine justitia Dei et hominum adhuc in terra
faith without justice of-God and of-men still in the-land
errantem, vosque heredem naturalem et dominum terrae
wandering and-you as-heir natural and lord of-the-land
justum cum honore et dilectione susceperint. Volo ergo
just with honor and love have-taken-up I-wish therefore
hominium et fidem vobis facere, sicut domino naturali
homage and faith to-you to-make as to-lord natural
terrae et de cujus conditione nos sumus, officium et feoda,
of-the-land and of whose condition we are the-office and fiefs
quae a predecessoribus vestris hactenus tenui, a vobis
which from predecessors your hitherto I-have-held from you
recipere volo. Si quis vero vicecomitatum contra me impetit
to-receive I-wish if anyone but the-viscountship against me attacks

ex parte Haketti, qui ante me castellanus proxime fuit, in
from part of-Haket who before me castellan next was in
presentia vestra et parium terrae satisfacturus presto ero.»
the-presence your and of-the-peers of-the-land about-to-satisfy ready I-shall-be
Sicque, finita oratione, factus est homo Theodorici consulis.
and-thus ended the-speech made he-was the-man of-Theoderic the-consul
Deinde per reliquum diem fecerunt hominia consuli
then through the-remaining day made homages to-the-consul
omnes, qui feodati fore debuerant in comitatu, et per
all who enfeoffed to-be had-been-bound in the-countship and through
reliquos dies deinceps. Statim pacem ipse consul componere
the-remaining days thereafter at-once peace he the-consul to-compose
festinabat in omni comitatu suo inter illos, qui hactenus
hastened in all countship his between those who hitherto
in invicem discordias et lites gravesque pugnas exercuerant.
against each-other discords and strifes and-heavy fights had-practiced

105 · LAMBERT'S ORDEAL; YPRES' OFFER

Lambert of Aardenburg clears himself of the betrayal by the hot iron before Theoderic. Men of Ypres offer to expel William if Theoderic will come to their aid.

Octavo idus aprilis, feria sexta, Lambertus ex Reddenburg
on-the-eighth ides of-April on-the-day sixth Lambert of Aardenburg
ferro ignito purgabat se in presentia comitis Theodorici
by-iron red-hot cleared himself in the-presence of-count Theoderic
a traditione et morte domini Karoli consulis; Daniel et
from the-betrayal and death of-lord Charles the-consul Daniel and
Iwan non interfuerunt.
Iwain not were-present

Quinto idus aprilis, feria secunda, quidam Iprensium
on-the-fifth ides of-April on-the-day second certain of-the-men-of-Ypres
venerant coram consule Theodorico in lobio domus suae in
had-come before the-consul Theoderic in the-gallery of-house his at
Brudgis, denuntiantes quod idem comes in auxilium veniret
Bruges announcing that the-same count into aid should-come
civibus Iprensibus, ea conditione, ut, si cives consulem
to-the-citizens of-Ypres on-that condition that if the-citizens the-consul
Willelmum ab Ipra expellerent, statim die altero comes
William from Ypres should-expel at-once on-the-day other the-count
Theodoricus in auxilium civium eorundem intraret ad ipsos.
Theoderic in aid of-the-citizens the-same should-enter to them

106 · BRUGES ANSWERS THE KING

Theoderic rides against Oudenburg and Gistel. The king summons eight men of Bruges to Arras; they reply that he took a thousand marks for William's election and may not impose a count on Flanders, whose peers and citizens choose the heir.

Quarto idus aprilis, feria tertia, consul Theodoricus cum
on-the-fourth ides of-April on-the-day third the-consul Theoderic with
feodatis suis et burgensibus Brudgensium excursum fecit
vassals his and the-burghers of-the-men-of-Bruges a-sally made
versus hostes suos, qui in Oldenburg et Gistella consederant,
toward enemies his who at Oudenburg and Gistel had-encamped
et quia undique premuniti erant fortiter ad resistendum,
and because on-all-sides fortified they-were strongly for resisting
comes cum civibus in media via rediit. Eodem die
the-count with the-citizens in the-middle-of the-road returned on-the-same day
misit rex Franciae litteras hujusmodi civibus nostris: «Volo
sent the-king of-France letters of-this-kind to-citizens our I-wish

ut in dominica Palmarum octo viros discretos a vobis
that on Sunday of-Palms eight men discerning from you
mihi in Atrebato transmittatis, de singulis quidem castris
to-me at Arras you-send from each indeed castle
Flandriae totidem sapientiores evocabo, coram quibus et
of-Flanders as-many wiser I-shall-call-out before whom and
universis baronibus meis retractare velim rationabiliter, quid
all barons my to-reconsider I-wish reasonably what
sit questionis et pugnae inter vos et comitem vestrum
be of-question and of-fight between you and count your
Willelmum, et statim laborabo pro pacis conformatione inter
William and at-once I-shall-labor for of-peace the-forming between
vos et ipsum. Si quis de civibus non ausit venire ad me,
you and him if any of the-citizens not dare to-come to me
conductum secure prebebo veniendi et redeundi.» Statim
conduct securely I-shall-furnish of-coming and of-returning at-once
cives super remittendis litteris rationis et consilii studium
the-citizens about to-be-sent-back letters of-reason and of-counsel the-pursuit
inierunt, dicentes: «Quia rex juraverat ante susceptionem
entered saying because the-king had-sworn before the-taking-up
Willelmi comitis, nullam coemptionem vel pretium se
of-William the-count no bribery or price himself
velle et debere accipere pro electione consulis ejusdem, et
to-wish and to-be-bound to-receive for the-election of-the-consul same and
postmodum mille marcas pro pretio et coemptione aperte
afterward thousand marks for price and bribery openly
susceperit, perjurus est. Item quicquid civibus in telonio
he-has-received perjured he-is likewise whatever to-the-citizens in the-toll
condonavit, et quicquid super hoc simul cum rege juravit
he-remitted and whatever upon this together with the-king he-swore
se inviolabiliter conservaturum, violenter fregit. Et cum
himself inviolably about-to-keep violently he-broke and when

obsides dedisset, ipse comes pro confirmatione omnium eorum
hostages had-given he the-count for confirmation of-all those-things
quae civibus condonaverat et dederat, ipsos fefellit obsides.
which to-the-citizens he-had-remitted and had-given them he-deceived the-hostages
Igitur cum tandem apud Ipram diem nobis determinasset et
therefore when at-last at Ypres a-day for-us he-had-fixed and
paribus terrae, ut se componeret nobiscum, sicut omnes
for-the-peers of-the-land that himself he-might-reconcile with-us as all
sciunt terrae incolae, armata manu predictum castrum
know of-the-land the-inhabitants with-armed hand the-aforesaid castle
anticipavit, ut violenter nobiscum ageret, et ad quicquid
he-forestalled that violently with-us he-might-deal and to whatever
vellet, nos constringeret. Itaque sine ratione, sine lege
he-might-wish us he-might-constrain and-so without reason without the-law
Dei et hominum nos in terra hac clausit, ne negotiari
of-God and of-men us in land this he-shut lest to-trade
possemus, imo quicquid hactenus possedimus, sine lucro,
we-could nay whatever hitherto we-have-possessed without gain
sine negotiatione, sine acquisitione rerum consumpsimus;
without trading without acquisition of-goods we-have-consumed
unde justam habemus rationem expellendi illum a terra.
whence just we-have reason of-expelling him from the-land
Nunc ergo justiorem terrae heredem in consulem nobis
now therefore a-juster of-the-land heir as consul for-us
elegimus, filium sororis matris Karoli consulis, virum
we-have-chosen the-son of-the-sister of-the-mother of-Charles the-consul a-man
fidelem et prudentem, secundum morem terrae sublimatum,
faithful and prudent according-to the-custom of-the-land raised
fide et hominio nostro stabilitum, naturam et mores et
by-the-faith and homage our established the-nature and ways and
facta predecessorum suorum digne imitantem. Notum igitur
deeds of-predecessors his worthily imitating known therefore

facimus universis, tam regi quam ipsius principibus,
we-make to-all as-much to-the-king as to-his princes
simulque presentibus et successoribus nostris, quod nihil
and-together to-present and successors our that nothing
pertinet ad regem Franciae de electione vel positione comitis
belongs to the-king of-France of the-election or placing of-the-count
Flandriae si sine herede aut cum herede obiisset.
of-Flanders if without heir or with heir he-should-have-died
Terrae compares et cives proximum comitatus heredem
of-the-land the-peers and the-citizens the-next of-the-countship heir
eligendi habent potestatem, et in ipso comitatu sublimandi
of-choosing have the-power and in the-very countship of-raising
possident libertatem. Pro jure ergo terrarum, quas in
possess the-freedom for the-right therefore of-the-lands which in
feodum tenuerit a rege, cum obierit consul, pro
fief he-may-have-held from the-king when he-shall-have-died the-consul for
eodem feodo dabit successor comitis armaturam tantummodo
the-same fief shall-give the-successor of-the-count armor only
regi. Nihil ulterius debet consul terrae Flandriae regi
to-the-king nothing further owes the-consul of-the-land of-Flanders to-the-king
Franciae, neque rex habet rationem aliquam, ut potestative
of-France nor the-king has reason any that by-power
seu per coemptionem seu per pretium nobis superponat
or by bribery or by price on-us he-should-set-over
consulem, aut aliquem preferat. Sed quia rex et comites
a-consul or any should-prefer but because the-king and the-counts
Flandriae cognationis natura hactenus conjuncti stabant, eo
of-Flanders of-kinship by-nature hitherto joined stood in-that
respectu milites et proceres et cives Flandriae assensum
respect the-knights and nobles and citizens of-Flanders assent
regi prebuerant de eligendo et ponendo illo Willelmo
to-the-king had-furnished about choosing and placing that William

sibi in consulem. Sed aliud est prorsus quod ex
for-themselves as consul but other-thing is utterly what from
cognatione debetur, aliud vero quod antiqua predecessorum
kinship is-owed other but what by-the-old of-the-predecessors
Flandriae consulum traditione ac justitia examinatur instituta.»
of-Flanders consuls tradition and justice is-examined established

107 · GISTEL

Thancmar's nephews taunt Bruges and are driven off. Theoderic gains Lille; William restores twelve altars to the bishop of Noyon, who lays Ghent under interdict.

Tertio idus aprilis, feria quarta, Leonis papae, nepotes
on-the-third ides of-April on-the-day fourth of-Leo pope the-nephews
Thancmari cucurrerunt super Brudgenses apud Harenas,
of-Thancmar ran upon the-men-of-Bruges at the-Sands
evocantes et allicientes cives adhuc vix impransos et
calling-out and enticing the-citizens still scarcely not-having-dined and
comitem Theodoricum et suos milites ad militias faciendas.
count Theoderic and his knights to feats-of-arms to-be-done
Igitur campanas custodes templorum et milites lituos
therefore bells the-keepers of-the-temples and the-knights trumpets
pulsantes, fugabant eos procul a Brudgis. Subsequenter
sounding put-to-flight them far from Bruges next
vero expeditiores militum nostrorum et civium ascenderunt
but the-readier of-knights our and of-citizens went-up
iterum adversus hostes suos in Gistella, et coegerunt
again against enemies their at Gistel and forced
quosdam, ut leti fuissent, si forte liceret eis
some so-that glad they-would-have-been if perhaps it-were-permitted to-them

hominia facere comiti nostro Theodorico et super hoc
homages to-make to-count our Theoderic and upon this
obsides dare, ne unquam fraudem sibi facerent.
hostages to-give lest ever fraud against-him they-should-do
Nono kal. maii, feria secunda post dominicam Paschae,
on-the-ninth kalends of-May on-the-day second after the-Sunday of-Easter
comes noster Theodoricus equitabat ad Insulas, et vicinias
count our Theoderic rode to Lille and the-neighborhoods
illas obtinuit. Interim Lambertus ex Wingihina cum paucis
those gained meanwhile Lambert of Wingene with few
militibus excursum fecit contra Bruggas, et simul cum illo
knights a-sally made against Bruges and together with him
nepotes Thancmari incenderunt domum Fromoldi junioris,
the-nephews of-Thancmar burned the-house of-Fromold the-younger
notarii comitis, quae domus defensabilis steterat in Berenhem.
notary of-the-count which house defensible had-stood at Beernem
At consul Willelmus ad regem Franciae ascenderat eadem
but the-consul William to the-king of-France had-gone-up at-that
tempestate apud Compendium, qui locus est in Francia,
time at Compiègne which place is in France
quatenus a rege acciperet consilium et auxilium, quomodo
that from the-king he-might-receive counsel and help how
Flandriam obtineret. Episcopo nostro Simoni Noviomensis
Flanders he-might-obtain to-bishop our Simon of-Noyon
sedis libere reddidit duodecim altaria, quae in feodum
see freely he-returned twelve altars which in fief
acceperat, ut advocatus et defensor staret ecclesiarum
he-had-received that advocate and defender he-might-stand of-the-churches
Dei, quae in Flandria sunt, eo tenore, quatenus episcopus
of-God which in Flanders are on-that condition that the-bishop
banno et excommunicationis verbo dampnaret omnes
by-ban and of-excommunication by-the-word should-condemn all

quicumque Flandrensis terrae cives suscepissent consulem
whoever of-the-Flemish land citizens had-taken-up the-consul
Theodoricum et ad potentiam consulatus promoverent, atque
Theoderic and to the-power of-the-consulship should-promote and
comiti Willelmo violenter et sine judicio superposuissent.
to-count William violently and without judgment had-set-over
Hoc ergo pacto episcopus misit litteras in Gandavum, et
this therefore by-pact the-bishop sent letters to Ghent and
suspendit inibi ecclesias a divino officio.
suspended there the-churches from the-divine office

108 · LAMBERT KILLED AT OOSTBURG

Lambert besieges his enemies at Oostburg with three thousand men, refusing to delay at Gervase's request, and is killed in a sally. Galbert reflects that God spared the penitent at the ordeal but struck him in his obstinacy, and that those slain had set Theoderic over William, and so are not innocent.

Pridie kal. maii, feria secunda, Lambertus ex
on-the-day-before the-kalends of-May on-the-day second Lambert of
Reddenburg, qui sub nota traditionis fuerat usque dum
Aardenburg who under the-mark of-betrayal had-been right-up until
satisfecisset comiti Theodorico per igniti ferri examen, in
he-had-satisfied count Theoderic through of-red-hot iron the-ordeal at
Ostburg obsederat inimicos suos in validissima manu; etenim
Oostburg had-besieged enemies his with a-most-strong band for
asciverat sibi ex insulis maris circumquaque homines
he-had-summoned to-himself from the-islands of-the-sea round-about men
et amicos cognatosque suos fere tria millia. At contra illum
and friends and-kinsmen his almost three thousand but against him
illi ex Reddenburg collegerant et peditum et equitum
those of Aardenburg had-gathered both of-foot-soldiers and of-horsemen

manum validam. Cum igitur utrimque accessissent illi ad
a-band strong when therefore on-both-sides they-had-approached those for
obsidendum et isti ad liberandum obsessos, intervenit nuntius
besieging and these for freeing the-besieged came-between a-messenger
comitis Theodorici, scilicet castellanus Gervasius, volens differre
of-count Theoderic namely the-castellan Gervase wishing to-put-off
bellum, quousque comitis in presentia pacificarentur. Sed
the-battle until of-the-count in the-presence they-should-be-pacified but
quia pertinaces fuerant Lambertus et sui ad occidendum
because stubborn had-been Lambert and his-men for killing
obsessos, noluerunt aliquo modo differre quin obsessos
the-besieged they-were-unwilling in-any way to-put-off but-that the-besieged
percuterent. Igitur dum insultum tot millia facerent, et
they-should-strike therefore while an-assault so-many thousands made and
obsessi egregie sese defensarent, ex improviso illi milites
the-besieged excellently themselves defended from unforeseen those knights
ex Reddenburg, qui in auxilium obsessorum in alia domo
from Aardenburg who in aid of-the-besieged in another house
eventum belli expectaverant, armati equis et pedibus
the-outcome of-the-battle had-awaited armed on-horses and on-foot
alii et alii, tamen respectu obsidentium pauci, prosiliebant.
some and others yet in-respect-of the-besiegers few leapt-forth
Statimque strepitum et clamores infinitos in aera moventes
and-at-once a-din and shouts endless into the-air moving
illi qui prosilierant, perterritos et prorsus attonitos reddiderunt
those who had-leapt-forth terrified and utterly astonished made
obsidionem facientes in tantum ut fugam inirent, et, clipeis
the-siege making to such-a-degree that flight they-entered and shields
et armis abjectis, ad cursitandum in fuga sese succingerent.
and arms thrown-away for running in flight themselves they-girded
Tunc illi prius obsessi in armorum virtute egressi,
then those before besieged in of-arms strength having-gone-out

simulque et illi ex Reddenburg a tergo persequentes
and-together also those from Aardenburg from behind pursuing
eos qui sese fugae dederant, omnium inimicorum illorum
those who themselves to-flight had-given of-all enemies those
capitales et duces truncabant; ceterum de peditibus quos
the-heads and leaders they-cut-down moreover of the-foot-soldiers whom
voluerunt enecabant. Sed et vulneratorum infinitus erat
they-wished they-killed but also of-the-wounded endless was
numerus et occisorum liberorum virorum numerus erat.
the-number and of-the-slain free men the-number was
In hac ergo pugna notandum, quia Lambertus ille, qui
in this therefore fight it-must-be-noted that Lambert that who
nuper excusaverat se ferro ignito non tradidisse Karolum
lately had-cleared himself by-iron red-hot not to-have-betrayed Charles
consulem, modo occisus est. Nam quamdiu erga Deum
the-consul now slain is for as-long-as toward God
humiliter egit, Deus illi quod in domini sui morte
humbly he-acted God to-him what in of-lord his the-death
egerat indulsit. Igitur post liberationem igniti examinis,
he-had-done forgave therefore after the-release of-the-red-hot ordeal
cum isdem Lambertus et sui sine aliquo respectu
when the-same Lambert and his-men without any regard
misericordiae superbe cum tribus millibus paucos obsedisset,
of-mercy proudly with three thousand a-few had-besieged
et eis obstinatus, quantum in se erat, non parceret, nec
and to-them obstinate as-much-as in him was not he-would-spare neither
propter Deum nec propter sacramentum jurandi, quod comiti
for God nor for the-sacrament of-swearing which to-count
Theodorico fecerat, ut nullam in propria vel suorum persona
Theoderic he-had-made that no in own or of-his-men person
seditionem moveret, voluisset pugnam et stragem obsessorum
sedition he-would-move he-had-wished the-fight and slaughter of-the-besieged

differre, merebatur ipse occidi, oblitus misericordiae Dei
to-put-off he-deserved himself to-be-slain forgetful of-the-mercy of-God
et dispensationis, qua eum reservaverat vitae cum omnibus
and of-the-dispensation by-which him he-had-kept for-life when with-all
occidendus videretur, si tamen dignos penitentiae fructus, sicut
to-be-slain he-seemed if yet worthy of-penitence fruits as
promiserat Deo et ecclesiae, institisset. Cum enim servus
he-had-promised to-God and to-the-church he-had-pursued when for a-servant
humiliter agit cum domino pro suo reatu, dominus indulget
humbly acts with the-lord for his guilt the-lord pardons
servo secundum legem penitentiae agenti. Cum vero homo
the-servant according-to the-law of-penitence acting when but a-man
juste agens in alium hominem perverse egerit, et
justly acting against another man perversely shall-have-acted and
Deus judex inter utrosque adsciscitur, fidem juste
God as-judge between both is-called-in the-faith of-the-one-justly
agentis Deus juvat, injustum hominem a causa prosternens
acting God helps the-unjust man from the-cause laying-low
et in obstinatione sua confundens. Unde fit, ut
and in obstinacy his confounding whence it-comes-about that
in bello alter iniquus prosternatur, in judicio aquae vel
in battle the-one unjust is-laid-low in the-ordeal of-water or
ferri iniquus, penitens tamen, non cadat. Notandum vero,
of-iron the-unjust penitent yet not falls it-must-be-noted but
quod isti occisi in Ostburg, primitus consilio et dolis suis
that these slain at Oostburg first by-counsel and wiles their
Theodoricum comitem in Gandavo et Brudgis prestituerunt
Theoderic as-count at Ghent and Bruges set-over
et Willelmo comiti supposuerunt. Et quamvis Theodoricus
and to-William count substituted and although Theoderic
heres sit naturalis Flandriae et justus comes et pius,
heir be natural of-Flanders and just count and pious

Willelmus vero comes Flandriae sit inhonestus et civium
William but count of-Flanders be dishonorable and of-the-citizens
terrae persecutor, tamen non juste consuluerunt ii qui
of-the-land a-persecutor yet not justly have-counseled those who
nunc miserabiliter jacent occisi, nec a traditione domini sui
now pitiably lie slain nor from the-betrayal of-lord their
poterunt dici innocentes, quorum consilio et violentia
shall-be-able to-be-called innocent whose by-counsel and violence
doli adhuc comes Willelmus errat in terra sua Flandrensi.
of-guile still count William wanders in land his Flemish

109 · GHENT AND WINGENE

The besieged in the count's house at Ghent burn houses and destroy the mangonels, and William's knights at Wingene wound Gervase.

Sexto nonas maii, in nocte feriae quartae, illi qui in
on-the-sixth nones of-May on the-night of-the-day fourth those who at
Gandavo in domo comitis a civibus illis adhuc obsessi
Ghent in the-house of-the-count by the-citizens those still besieged
tenebantur, eo quod in parte Willelmi consulis persisterent,
were-held by-this that on the-side of-William the-consul they-persisted
exierunt et platearum domos plurimas incenderunt. Cumque
went-out and of-the-streets houses very-many burned and-when
cives pro ignis destructione laborarent, securibus exciderunt
the-citizens for of-the-fire the-destruction labored with-axes they-cut-down
jactatoria ingenia, scilicet mangunellas, quibus lapideam
the-hurling engines namely mangonels with-which the-stone
domum et turrim, in qua degebant obsessi, prosternerent.
house and tower in which were-living the-besieged they-might-throw-down
Eodem die, scilicet quarta feria, Gervasius castellanus
on-the-same day namely the-fourth day Gervase castellan

Brudgensis cum militibus obsidere voluit in Wingchina
of-Bruges with knights to-besiege wished at Wingene
in parte comitis Willelmi agentes. At illi strenui milites
on the-side of-count William acting but those vigorous knights
occurrerunt Gervasio, et ipsum illum vulneraverunt, et de
ran-to-meet Gervase and himself him wounded and of
armigeris duos ceperunt, equos et palefridos lucrati sunt.
squires two they-took horses and palfreys gained they-have

110 · THE ANNIVERSARY; ARRAS

A year after the traitors were thrown from the tower, the king summons a council at Arras to decide between the two counts, while the proscribed return under pretense. A sorceress at Lille sprinkles Theoderic with water, sickening him, and is burned. Cono and the men of Wingene plunder the villages around them, while the men of Bruges ditch their town.

Tertio igitur in nonis maii, sabbato, revoluto anno,
on-the-third therefore in the-nones of-May on-Saturday rolled-round the-year
instabat dies anniversarius omnium illorum, qui de turri
was-at-hand the-day anniversary of-all those who from the-tower
precipitati erant pro morte Karoli comitis. Et notandum,
cast-headlong had-been for the-death of-Charles the-count and it-must-be-noted
quod in hac eadem septimana occisi sunt in Ostburch
that in this same week slain were at Oostburg
Lambertus filius Ledewif, et cum ipso plures quorum consilio
Lambert son of-Ledewif and with him many whose by-counsel
et traditione Theodoricus Flandriae superpositus violenter
and betrayal Theoderic of-Flanders set-over violently
est Willelmo Northmannensi. In hac eadem hebdomada
was to-William the-Norman in this same week

satagebat rex Franciae in pridie nonas maii, dominica
was-busy the-king of-France on the-day-before nones of-May on-Sunday
Misericordia Domini, convocare archiepiscopos, episcopos
Mercy of-the-Lord to-call-together archbishops bishops
et omnes synodales personas in clero, et abbates, et
and all synodal persons in the-clergy and abbots and
discretissimos tam in clero quam in populo, comites
the-most-discerning as-much in the-clergy as in the-people counts
et barones ceterosque principes, ut ad se in Atrebatum
and barons and-the-other princes that to him at Arras
convenirent, habiturus consilium de istis duobus
they-should-come-together about-to-hold counsel about these two
consulibus, quem eorum cum regia potentia expelleret aut
consuls which of-them with royal power he-should-expel or
quem stabiliret. Quo tempore Theodoricus in Insulis
which he-should-establish at-which time Theoderic at Lille
et Willelmus errabat in Ipra. Tota vero terra in periculis
and William wandered at Ypres the-whole but land in dangers
agitabatur, in rapinis, incendiis, traditionibus, dolis, ita ut
was-tossed in plunders burnings betrayals wiles so that
nemo discretus viveret securus. Igitur utrobique expectabant,
no-one discerning lived secure therefore on-both-sides they-awaited
quod consilium aut quae sententia daretur in curia et
what counsel or what sentence would-be-given in the-court and
conventu tot prudentum et discretorum virorum, et quae
assembly of-so-many prudent and discerning men and what
pericula in futuro timerent, cum omnia pericula sibi
dangers in the-future they-should-fear since all dangers on-themselves
superventura timerent. Et notandum, quod omnes fere, quibus
about-to-come they-feared and it-must-be-noted that all almost to-whom
terra Flandrensis prohibita erat propter traditionem
the-land Flemish forbidden had-been on-account-of the-betrayal

Karoli consulis, et hoc secundum judicia principum et
of-Charles the-consul and this according-to the-judgments of-the-princes and
baronum terrae, hoc tempore reversi sunt in terram hac
barons of-the-land at-this time returned have into the-land with-this
simulatione et dolo, ut, si quis esset qui eos auderet
pretense and guile that if anyone there-were who them should-dare
interpellare de traditione, ipsi interpellati responderent, vel
to-challenge about the-betrayal they challenged would-answer either
secundum quod miles erat, in curia comitis, vel secundum
according-to that a-knight he-was in the-court of-the-count or according-to
quod inferioris conditionis, coram scabinis et judicibus
that of-lower condition before the-aldermen and judges
terrae. Igitur adhuc nullus interpellatus est nec respondit.
of-the-land therefore till-now no-one challenged was nor answered
Et memorandum, quod cum jam primo comes Theodoricus
and it-must-be-remembered that when now first count Theoderic
in Insulas conscendisset, quaedam incantatrix occurrit illi,
to Lille had-gone-up a-certain enchantress ran-to-meet him
descendens in aquam illam, quam comes transiturus erat per
going-down into the-water that which the-count about-to-cross was by
pontem juxta incarminatricem; at illa conspersit consulem
the-bridge near the-enchantress but she sprinkled the-consul
aquis. Igitur, ut aiunt, comes Theodoricus languebat
with-waters therefore as they-say count Theoderic languished
in corde et visceribus, ita ut comestionem et potum
in heart and bowels so that eating and drink
fastidiret. Cumque milites ejus indoluissent super eo, ceperunt
he-loathed and-when knights his had-grieved over him they-took
incantatricem, et ligatis manibus et pedibus, stipulis et
the-enchantress and bound hands and feet with-straws and
straminibus succensis impositam combusserunt. Ab illo ergo
litter set-on-fire placed-upon they-burned from that therefore

tempore usque in septimum idus maii, Cono ex Frorerdeslo
time right-up to the-seventh ides of-May Cono of Vladslo
in Winendala, et illi qui in Winchina cum Lamberto
at Wijnendale and those who at Wingene with Lambert
arma ferebant contra comitem Theodoricum et suos, non
arms bore against count Theoderic and his-men not
desistebant depredari villas circa se et rusticos simulque
ceased to-plunder the-villages around themselves and the-peasants and-together
cum rebus ipsorum violenter auferre. At Brudgenses fossatis
with goods their violently to-carry-off but the-men-of-Bruges with-ditches
novis circumdederunt se, vigiliis et insidiis suis et
new surrounded themselves with-watches and ambushes their and
suorum militum sese defensabant. Qua tempestate villa
of-their knights themselves defended at-which time the-village
Orscamp depredata est prorsus a militibus Willelmi consulis.
Oostkamp plundered was utterly by the-knights of-William the-consul

111 · FIGHTING AT WINGENE AND OOSTKAMP

The men of Bruges attack Wingene. William besieges the herald in the church at Oostkamp, and the citizens flee in terror, conscious of their guilt toward him; many are taken, some from field ovens, while the herald escapes.

Pridie idus maii, feria secunda, Brudgenses
on-the-day-before the-ides of-May on-the-day second the-men-of-Bruges
impetebant illos in Winchina, et vulnerati sunt utrimque
attacked those at Wingene and wounded were on-both-sides
plurimi, et mortui quidam. Non tamen oppidum illorum
very-many and dead some not yet the-town of-those
obsessorum destructum est.
besieged destroyed was

In idibus maii, feria tertia, Willelmus comes, collectis
on the-ides of-May on-the-day third William the-count gathered
militibus suis, invasit preconem in Osrcamp, et fugavit illum
knights his attacked the-herald at Oostkamp and drove him
in ecclesiam ejusdem ruris, et clausum intus obsedit
into the-church of-the-same countryside and shut within besieged
eum, appositisque ad fores templi ignibus, ipsas fores
him and-set at the-doors of-the-temple fires the-very doors
conflagravit. Interim burgenses nostri occurrerunt ei armati
he-burned meanwhile burghers our ran-to-meet him armed
in Orscamp, et cum perspexissent et consulem et milites
at Oostkamp and when they-had-seen both the-consul and knights
ejus et flammas ignium in templo, perterriti fugerunt, et
his and the-flames of-the-fires in the-temple terrified fled and
plures capti sunt eodem die. Cum ergo in fugando
many captured were on-the-same day when therefore in putting-to-flight
et in persequendo cives nostros comes excurreret, preco
and in pursuing citizens our the-count ran-out the-herald
ex Orscamp cum paucis e templo prosiliebat, et evasit
from Oostkamp with a-few from the-temple leapt-forth and escaped
periculum ignis, et captus est unus militum qui in
the-danger of-fire and captured was one of-the-knights who in
evasione eadem exiverat a templo, burgenses vero nostri
the-escape same had-gone-out from the-temple burghers but our
fugerunt, timore et pavore perterriti, simulque quia conscii
fled by-fear and dread terrified and-together because privy
erant sibi, quod eundem comitem Willelmum injuste
they-were to-themselves that the-same count William unjustly
expulerant et tradiderant; et quidam eorum in furnos
they-had-expelled and they-had-betrayed and some of-them in ovens
campestres latuerunt, de quibus extracti, captivi sunt abducti.
of-the-fields lay-hidden from which dragged-out captives were led-off

Rumor says the king fled from Lille. William attacks Bruges to its gates, seizes peasants at Oostkamp, and fortifies Oudenburg, and no countryman around Bruges is safe.

Duodecimo kal. iunii, feria secunda, fama retulit ex
on-the-twelfth kalends of-June on-the-day second report related from
Lens regem Franciae fugisse ab Insulis, ubi comitem
Lens the-king of-France to-have-fled from Lille where count
nostrum Theodoricum obsederat per quatuor dies. Eadem
our Theoderic he-had-besieged for four days at-the-same
tempestate Gendenses evisceraverant quandam incantatricem,
time the-men-of-Ghent had-disemboweled a-certain enchantress
et stomachum ejus circumferebant circa villam suam.
and stomach her carried-around around town their
Quarto kal. junii, feria tertia, comes Willelmus, collecta
on-the-fourth kalends of-June on-the-day third count William gathered
maxima manu militum et peditum, invasit Bruggas, et usque
a-very-great band of-knights and foot-soldiers attacked Bruges and right-up
in portis et cingulis et infra fossata nostra insultum impetuose
to the-gates and girdles and within the-ditches our an-assault impetuously
et animose inferebat; utrobique alii interfecti, alii perplures
and spiritedly brought on-both-sides some killed others very-many
sunt vulnerati. Tandem in vespera reversus est apud Jadbeca.
were wounded at-last in the-evening returned he-has to Jabbeke
Tertio kal. junii, feria quarta, comes Willelmus rapuit
on-the-third kalends of-June on-the-day fourth count William seized
iterum apud Orscamp rusticos et milites cum armatis, et
again at Oostkamp peasants and knights with armed-men and
violenter abduxit apud Winendala et Oldenburg.
violently led-off to Wijnendale and Oudenburg

Pridie kal. junii, in die Ascensionis Domini,
on-the-day-before the-kalends of-June on the-day of-the-Ascension of-the-Lord
ex Oldenburg misit quendam monachum nomine Basilium
from Oudenburg sent a-certain monk by-name Basil
comes Willelmus, precipiens notario suo Basilio, ut ad se
count William ordering notary his Basil that to him
festinaret, eo quod in presentiam suam berquarii et
he-should-hasten by-this that into presence his the-shepherds and
custodes curtium et reddituum suorum rationem debitorum
keepers of-the-farms and revenues his account of-debts
suorum reddituri venissent. Igitur monachus ille detentus
their about-to-render had-come therefore monk that detained
est in Brudgis per Iwannum et Gervasium castellanum et
was at Bruges by Iwain and Gervase the-castellan and
Arnoldum nepotem Karoli consulis, qui priore die a
Arnulf nephew of-Charles the-consul who on-the-former day from
Brudburg venerat Brugas. Eodem tempore comes Willelmus
Bourbourg had-come to-Bruges at-the-same time count William
Oldenburg circumsepiri et fossatis firmari precepit, ubi
Oudenburg to-be-fenced and with-ditches to-be-strengthened ordered where
se et suos recipere ordinaverat. Igitur nemo ruricola
himself and his-men to-receive he-had-arranged therefore no countryman
circa nos securus erat, sed cum omni supellectile sua aut
around us secure was but with all furnishing his either
ad nemora subterfugerat et latitabat, aut infra Bruggas
to the-woods had-fled and lay-hidden or within Bruges
ascendit, vix ibidem vitae suae aut rerum securus.
went-up scarcely there of-life his or of-goods secure

At Pentecost Theoderic is received at Bruges. William's men betray and kill a knight and seize his house, and Theoderic recovers it. When William's knights burn a house near the castle to draw Theoderic from a siege, Gervase captures Walter, Thancmar's nephew, the cause of the whole feud, and the citizens credit their priest's anathema for the success.

Quarto idus junii, dominica sancta Pentecostes, comes
on-the-fourth ides of-June on-Sunday holy of-Pentecost count
Theodoricus venit Bruggas, conquisitis circumadjacentiis
Theoderic came to-Bruges conquered the-surroundings
villarum circa Gandavum, et in maximo gaudio susceptus
of-the-villages around Ghent and in the-greatest joy received
est a nostris.
was by ours
Tertio idus junii, feria secunda, milites et latrunculi
on-the-third ides of-June on-the-day second knights and petty-thieves
quidam, qui erant in parte Willelmi consulis, ex Jadbeca
certain who were on the-side of-William the-consul from Jabbeke
prodibant, et quasi speciem pacis ferrent, cum milite
came-forth and as-if the-appearance of-peace they-bore with a-knight
quodam ex nostra parte manente sermones et salutationes
certain on our side remaining speeches and greetings
conferebant. Hujus ergo equitis nostri domus defensabilis et
exchanged of-this therefore horseman our the-house defensible and
firmissima stabat, in quam omnes circummanentes et plures
most-firm stood into which all dwelling-around and many
ex civibus Brudgensibus res suas comportaverant, quas ibidem
of the-citizens of-Bruges goods their had-carried which there
tutius salvarent. Interceperunt ergo equitem illum in curte
more-safely they-might-save they-caught therefore horseman that in court

sua secure vagantem, et traditum vulneribus interfecerunt,
his securely roaming and betrayed with-wounds they-killed
et domum, eodem expulso equite, violenter obtinuerunt.
and the-house the-same expelled horseman violently they-held
Statim comes Theodoricus letus cum innumera multitudine
at-once count Theoderic glad with countless multitude
advolans, obsedit eos coegitque eos obsessos, ut sese
flying-up besieged them and-forced them besieged that themselves
redderent. Quos tamen salvis membris abire dimisit, et
they-should-surrender whom yet safe limbs to-go-off he-let and
equitem dominumque illius domus bene in propria domo
the-horseman and-lord of-that house well in own house
restituit, feria tertia, scilicet pridie idus junii.
restored on-the-day third namely on-the-day-before the-ides of-June
Eodem pridie idus junii, audientes milites consulis
on-the-same day-before the-ides of-June hearing the-knights of-the-consul
Willelmi, qui in Oldenburg et Jadbeca et Straten jacuerant
William who at Oudenburg and Jabbeke and Straten had-lain
ut insidias pararent nostro comiti Theodorico et
that ambushes they-might-prepare for-our count Theoderic and
nostris, quod cum tota potentia sua obsidionem Theodoricus
for-ours that with all power his a-siege Theoderic
fecisset extra in remotis villis a Brudgis, accurrentes circa
had-made outside in remote villages from Bruges running-up about
sexaginta precursores, incenderunt domum vicinam castro
sixty forerunners burned a-house near to-the-castle
Brugensi, allicere volentes cives nostros, quos fortassis
of-Bruges to-entice wishing citizens our whom perhaps
sic caperent. Magis vero ideo nos impetebant, ut
thus they-might-take more but for-this-reason us they-attacked that
Theodoricum consulem per ignis fumum et flammas
Theoderic the-consul through of-fire the-smoke and flames

ab obsidione revocarent. Igitur castellanus Gervasius cum
from the-siege they-might-recall therefore the-castellan Gervase with
militibus occurrens ad insultum insidiatorum, cepit duos
knights running-to-meet at the-assault of-the-ambushers took two
milites strenuos, Walterum nepotem Thancmari, per quem
knights vigorous Walter nephew of-Thancmar through whom
occasio et causa seditionis et pugnae totius originem
the-occasion and cause of-the-sedition and of-the-fight whole origin
habuit inter Borsiardum, illum traditorem comitis Karoli, et
had between Borsiard that traitor of-count Charles and
Thancmarum, cepitque alium cum Waltero militem. Sed isdem
Thancmar and-he-took another with Walter knight but the-same
Walterus lethaliter vulneratus erat in captione illa. Cives
Walter mortally wounded was in capture that the-citizens
vero Brudgenses manus prae gaudio complosas conferebant,
but of-Bruges hands for joy clapped brought-together
animi exhilarationem non satis sibi invicem ostendentes
of-mind the-exhilaration not enough to-themselves to-each-other showing
pro tam bono suo successu. Nam tandem post tot mala,
for so good their success for at-last after so-many evils
post tot predas et domorum incendia, et post tot
after so-many plunders and of-houses burnings and after so-many
homicidia in nostros perpetrata, captus est Walterus ille a
homicides on ours perpetrated captured was Walter that by
nostris, qui caput et principium fuit totius mali terrae
ours who the-head and beginning was of-all the-evil of-land
nostrae, pro cujus dolis Karolus consul traditus est, non
our for whose wiles Charles the-consul betrayed was not
quod ipse tradidisset, sed hostes suos Borsiardum et suos
that he had-betrayed but enemies his Borsiard and his-men
ad tradendum compulisset. Haec quoque dico secundum
to betraying he-had-driven these-things also I-say according-to

sensum vulgi et secundum furorem animi illorum,
the-sense of-the-common-people and according-to the-fury of-mind of-those
qui modo captivum Walterum prefatum suspenderent, aut
who now captive Walter aforesaid would-hang or
novo et inaudito mortis fine dissipassent, si comes
by-a-new and unheard-of of-death end would-have-torn-apart if the-count
permisisset. Nam viso igne juxta Bruggas, comes Theodoricus
had-permitted for seen the-fire near Bruges count Theoderic
jam ab obsidione revertens, cum tota multitudine
already from the-siege returning with the-whole multitude
accurrit, sed ante accursum ipsius capti sunt illi duo et
ran-up but before the-running-up of-him captured were those two and
ceteri insidiatores retro fugati. Eodem die Walterus ex
the-other ambushers back put-to-flight on-the-same day Walter of
Somerengem et milites et pedites cum eo, qui quidem ex
Somergem and knights and foot-soldiers with him who indeed on
nostra parte militabant, apud Haltras capti sunt. Eodem
our side served at Aalter captured were on-the-same
die Daniel et Iwan apud Ruplemunda super ducem Lovaniae
day Daniel and Iwain at Rupelmonde from the-duke of-Louvain
quinquaginta milites ceperunt. Auditis his omnibus cives
fifty knights took heard these all the-citizens
Brudgenses successus suos et fortunam suam cuidam suo
of-Bruges successes their and fortune their to-a-certain their
sacerdoti deputaverunt qui anathemate suo sic excommunicasset
priest ascribed who by-anathema his so had-excommunicated
Willelmum consulem et in sua parte agentes. At apud
William the-consul and on his side acting but at
Ipram prepositus quidam Hildfredus excommunicabat quotidie
Ypres the-provost a-certain Hildfred excommunicated daily
omnes qui in parte et adjutorio Theoderici consulis nostri
all who on the-side and the-help of-Theoderic consul our

starent. Sed hac vice, anathema nostri sacerdotis prevaluit nec
stood but this time the-anathema of-our priest prevailed nor
puto nostrum sacerdotem velle ab anathemate cessare donec
I-think our priest to-wish from anathema to-cease until
Willelmum consulem cum suis fautoribus et suo etiam
William the-consul with his supporters and his also
Hildfredo preposito exilio adduxerit. Et mirum est quod
Hildfred the-provost into-exile he-shall-have-led and wonderful it-is that
sacerdos ita Deum incantare possit ut, velit nolit Deus,
a-priest so God to-enchant can that willing unwilling God
Willelmus a comitatu ejiciatur. Eodem die miserunt
William from the-countship should-be-cast-out on-the-same day sent
Iprenses secreto litteras Brudgensibus, quatenus privatim
the-men-of-Ypres secretly letters to-the-men-of-Bruges that privately
et in tuto loco aliquos sapientiores nostros et suos vellent
and in a-safe place some wiser of-ours and of-theirs they-wished
convenire, et de honore comitatus utiliter agere.
to-meet and about the-honor of-the-countship usefully to-deal

On 21 June William, after penance, attacks Theoderic's army besieging Tielt; his hidden troop scatters it, and Theoderic returns to Bruges with ten knights. The priests of Bruges excommunicate William, the archbishop Theoderic.

Quarto decimo et decimo tertio kal. julii, comes
on-the-fourth and-tenth and on-the-tenth and-third kalends of-July the-count
Theodoricus ascenderat cum comite Frederico in Gandavum,
Theoderic had-gone-up with count Frederick to Ghent
et collegit sibi infinitum exercitum de Axla et Buchold
and gathered for-himself an-endless army from Axel and Bouchaute
et Was et confiniis illis; adduxit quoque instrumenta
and Waas and borders those he-brought also engines
jactatoria, quibus dejiceret domos defensales et oppida
for-hurling with-which he-might-throw-down the-houses defensive and towns
inimicorum suorum. Applicuitque cum gravi exercitu ad
of-enemies his and-he-drew-near with heavy army at
Tiled, et obsedit domum Folket militis. Igitur duodecimo
Tielt and besieged the-house of-Folket the-knight therefore on-the-twelfth
kal. julii, feria quarta, Brudgenses occurrerunt comiti
kalends of-July on-the-day fourth the-men-of-Bruges ran-to-meet the-count
cum suo castellano Gervasio et cum infinita Flandrensium
with their castellan Gervase and with an-endless of-Flemings
multitudine, qui cum ipsis conjuraverant. Consederunt ergo
multitude who with them had-sworn they-encamped therefore
foris nocte sequente circa domum predictam. Igitur comes
outside on-the-night following around the-house aforesaid therefore count
Willelmus juxta subsequens exercitum circumspexit, quota
William near following the-army looked-round how-great
foret turba et exercitus, qui militem suum obsederant,
was the-crowd and army which knight his had-besieged

nec parum indoluit de injuria illa et grassanti arrogantia
nor little he-grieved at wrong that and the-raging arrogance
obsidentium. Elegerat namque Willelmus comes prius emori,
of-the-besiegers had-chosen for William the-count rather to-die
quam tantum opprobrium sui sustinere. Igitur undecimo
than so-great disgrace of-himself to-sustain therefore on-the-eleventh
kal. julii, feria quinta et die quarto ante festum
kalends of-July on-the-day fifth and on-the-day fourth before the-feast
sancti Ioannis Baptistae, circa mane, in Oldenburg ab abbate
of-saint John the-Baptist about morning at Oudenburg from the-abbot
illius loci, religioso et prudenti viro, penitentiam suorum
of-that place a-devout and prudent man penitence of-his
peccatorum devotus suscepit, et vovit Deo, ut deinceps
sins devout he-received and vowed to-God that thenceforth
pauperum foret advocatus et ecclesiarum Dei. Similiter
of-the-poor he-would-be the-advocate and of-the-churches of-God likewise
omnes strenui milites ejus voverunt, circumcisisque crinibus
all vigorous knights his vowed and-cut-off the-hair
et rejectis vulgaribus indumentis, camisia et lorica, ceteris
and cast-off the-common garments in-shirt and mail the-other
armis induti sunt, humili voto apud Deum et fortissimo
arms clad were with-humble vow before God and with-most-strong
zelo progredientes ad bellum, veneruntque in vertice montis
zeal advancing to battle and-they-came to the-top of-the-hill
qui eminebat juxta exercitum Theodorici consulis, ibique
which stood-out near the-army of-Theoderic the-consul and-there
preordinabant sese ad bellum. Fecit ergo Willelmus comes
pre-arranged themselves for battle made therefore William the-count
tres turmas equitum, et obtinuit primam suorum aciem,
three troops of-horsemen and held the-first of-his-men line
cujus ipse dux primum insultum facere se constituit.
of-which he the-leader the-first assault to-make himself appointed

Ex adverso itaque Theodoricus comes similiter ordinaverat
from opposite and-so Theoderic the-count likewise had-arranged
acies suas, in quarum una ipse et Gervasius castellanus
lines his in of-which one he and Gervase the-castellan
capita erant, in altera comes Frethericus; curtatisque hastis
heads were in the-other count Frederick and-with-shortened spears
utrimque paullatim sese aggressi sunt in virtute hastae et
on-both-sides little-by-little each-other attacked have in the-strength of-spear and
gladii, cecideruntque infiniti. Comites pugnabant non aliter
sword and-fell countless the-counts fought not otherwise
quam morti se offerrent, in media arma inimicorum
than to-death themselves they-might-offer into the-midst-of the-arms of-the-enemies
corruebant; ante quidem sese prejudicaverant mori in bello,
they-rushed before indeed themselves they-had-prejudged to-die in battle
quam a comitatu expelli. In aggressu enim primo Daniel,
than from the-countship to-be-expelled in the-assault for first Daniel
qui caput erat militiae Theodorici consulis, volebat se
who head was of-the-knighthood of-Theoderic the-consul wished himself
inferre cuneis Willelmi consulis, ibique dejectus est
to-bring-against the-wedges of-William the-consul and-there thrown-down was
comes Fredericus, et contra illum vinctus Riquartus ex
count Frederick and against him bound Richard of
Woldman in priore junctura; plures quippe et infinitae
Woumen in the-earlier clash many indeed and countless
fiebant in invicem juncturae. Tandem gladiis contendebant.
were-made against each-other clashes at-last with-swords they-contended
At pars et cuneus ille, in quo Willelmus comes pugnabat,
but part and wedge that in which William the-count fought
deficere incipiens, retro in fugam se convertit, quem Daniel
to-fail beginning back into flight itself turned whom Daniel
persequebatur cum suis. Cumque utrimque laborarent, illi
pursued with his-men and-when on-both-sides they-labored these

in fugiendo, illi in persequendo, secunda pars cuneorum
in fleeing those in pursuing the-second part of-the-wedges
Willelmi consulis, quae ad insidiandum latebat, prosiluit in
of-William the-consul which for lying-in-ambush lay-hidden leapt-forth into
adversas facies Danielis et suorum; et quia recenti virtute
the-opposing faces of-Daniel and of-his-men and because with-fresh strength
et unanimi consensu exhortati fuerant et instructi ad
and with-unanimous consent exhorted they-had-been and instructed for
bellum, in nullo hesitantes, hastis et gladiis persecutores
battle in nothing hesitating with-spears and swords pursuers
illos interruperunt. Tunc comes Willelmus a fuga velociter
those they-broke-through then count William from flight swiftly
resiliens, sese cum suis recepit, unoque cursu et animo
springing-back himself with his-men took-again and-with-one charge and with-mind
virili ac robore corporum suorum crudelitati armorum
manly and with-the-strength of-bodies their on-the-cruelty of-arms
et dispersioni inimicorum insistebat. Igitur universi qui
and the-scattering of-the-enemies pressed therefore all who
cum consule Theodorico pericula belli sibi inminere
with the-consul Theoderic the-dangers of-battle on-themselves to-hang-over
previderant, in diversa armis disjectis nudique prorsus
had-foreseen in different-directions arms thrown-away and-naked utterly
fugerunt, adeo ut cum comite suo preter decem milites
fled so-much that with count their besides ten knights
nulli commanerent. Willelmus quidem comes et sui
none remained William indeed the-count and his-men
loricas projicientes, leviores equis insidentes, tunc tandem
mail throwing-off lighter on-horses sitting then at-last
victoriae suae fructum consecuti, hostes alios occiderunt, alios
of-victory their the-fruit having-gained enemies some they-killed others
ceperunt. Circa mediam noctem ad Bruggas rediit comes
they-took about the-middle-of night to Bruges returned count

Theodoricus; ceterum quo Willelmus comes redierit, non
Theoderic moreover where William the-count returned not
audivimus. Tunc nostri loci conjuges viros suos, filii patres,
we-have-heard then of-our place the-wives husbands their the-sons fathers
servi et ancillae dominos suos perditos deflebant, casum et
the-serfs and handmaids lords their lost wept-for the-fall and
infortunium belli perquirentes, tota nocte et deinceps
misfortune of-the-battle searching the-whole night and thereafter
fletibus et suspiriis languebant. Summo diluculo igitur cum
with-weepings and sighs they-languished very-early at-dawn therefore when
exirent nostri ad mortuos suos, iterum a militibus Willelmi
went-out ours to dead their again by the-knights of-William
capti sunt. Tam gravis persecutio et multiplex captivitas
captured they-were so heavy a-persecution and manifold captivity
nostrorum nunquam audita est contigisse in nostris partibus
of-ours never heard has to-have-happened in our parts
ante hoc facinus belli. Infinita vero pecunia data est pro
before this deed of-battle endless but money given was for
captivatis nostris redimendis Willelmo comiti et suis, et sic
captives our to-be-ransomed to-William the-count and his-men and thus
quodammodo iterum terra nostra depredata. Tandem audientes
in-some-way again land our plundered at-last hearing
nostrates, quod Willelmus comes ante ingressum belli se
our-people that William the-count before the-entering of-battle himself
Deo humiliter subjecisset, penitentiae remedium insumpsisset,
to-God humbly had-subjected of-penitence the-remedy had-taken
crines et superfluas vestes ipse et omnes sui truncassent
the-hair and superfluous clothes he and all his-men had-cut
post belli infortunia sua, cives nostri simul cum suo
after of-the-battle the-misfortunes their citizens our together with their
consule Theodorico crines et vestes circumciderunt, et ipsi
consul Theoderic hair and clothes cut-off and they

quoque presbiteri nostri ad exemplum inimicorum tandem
also priests our after the-example of-the-enemies at-last
penitentiam predicaverunt, et post tot damna, spolia et
penitence preached and after so-many losses spoils and
captivitates in nostros peractas indixerunt jejunium universale,
captivities upon ours accomplished proclaimed a-fast universal
et ferebant cruces et scrinia sanctorum in ecclesiam beatae
and carried crosses and shrines of-the-saints into the-church of-blessed
Mariae in Brudgis, ibique excommunicaverunt omnes sacerdotes
Mary at Bruges and-there excommunicated all the-priests
Brudgenses ex nomine Willelmum comitem Northmannum,
of-Bruges by name William the-count the-Norman
Thancrannus decanus, Eggardus, Sigebodo, Heribertus,
Thancran the-dean Eggard Sigebod Herbert
Fromoldus senior, Theodoricus presbiteri; feceruntque vovere
Fromold the-elder Theoderic priests and-made to-vow
consulem Theodoricum coram universis, quod, si aliqui ex
the-consul Theoderic before all that if any of
Iprensibus sese ad ipsum converterent, misericorditer
the-men-of-Ypres themselves to him should-turn mercifully
eos susciperet, sive de omni comitatu quicumque se
them he-would-receive or from all the-countship whoever themselves
converterent similiter ad ipsum, non exheredaret eos. Hic
should-turn likewise to him not he-would-disinherit them here
notandum quod excommunicationes a nostris sacerdotibus
it-must-be-noted that the-excommunications by our priests
et contra ab archiepiscopo nostro et ejus suffraganeis
and on-the-other-side by archbishop our and his suffragans
factae ad invicem pugnabant, quia nostri excommunicabant
made against each-other fought because ours excommunicated
Willelmum et archiepiscopi et episcopi eorumdem sacerdotum
William and the-archbishops and bishops of-the-same priests

excommunicabant Theodoricum consulem nostrum. Cum
excommunicated Theoderic consul our since
tamen archiepiscopus et episcopi ejus crederent locum
yet the-archbishop and bishops his believed the-place
Brudgensem in banno a divino suspensum fuisse
of-Bruges under ban from the-divine suspended to-have-been
officio et nostros quoque mortuos sine atrio sancto
office and our also dead without churchyard holy
humatos, nos quidem, contra preceptum metropolitani nostri
buried we indeed against the-command of-metropolitan our
et episcopi nostri, divinum officium peragebamus mortuosque
and of-bishop our the-divine office performed and-the-dead
in bello tumulabamus in sanctis atriis et Willelmum et
in battle we-buried in holy churchyards and William and
fautores ejus ex nomine anathemate percussimus.
supporters his by name with-anathema we-struck

115 · THE CRUCIFIX FALLS

On Saint John's day the crucifix in Our Lady's church twice lifts itself from its socket as if to fall. Simple priests say two priests and a cleric routed Theoderic by spells, though God orders all things.

Octavo kal. julii, dominica, in die sancti Joannis Baptistae,
on-the-eighth kalends of-July on-Sunday on the-day of-saint John the-Baptist
in ecclesia beatae Mariae, crucifixus qui stabat in pavimento ad
in the-church of-blessed Mary the-crucifix which stood on the-floor for
adorandum fidelibus, per se ipsum et Dei virtute a loco,
adoring by-the-faithful by it itself and of-God by-power from the-place
in quo firmiter fixus steterat, sursum levatus decidisset in
in which firmly fixed it-had-stood upward lifted would-have-fallen onto

pavimentum, nisi quidam custodum ecclesiae casum manibus
the-floor unless a-certain of-the-keepers of-the-church the-fall with-hands
preripuisset. Qui quidem custos iterum solito loco infixit
had-snatched-away who indeed keeper again in-the-usual place fixed
crucifixum illum, et cum abiisset, iterum, sicut primitus,
crucifix that and when he-had-gone-away again as at-first
ab infixione levatur, et ruere ceperat idem crucifixus. Tunc
from the-fixing is-lifted and to-fall had-begun the-same crucifix then
omnes, qui ad adorandum stabant, accurrentes iterum infixerunt,
all who for adoring stood running-up again fixed-it
putantes casum illum evenisse ex incuria infigentis.
thinking the-fall that to-have-happened from the-carelessness of-the-one-fixing
Sed circumquaque conspectantes, incuriam nullam hoc
but round-about looking carelessness none this
fecisse probaverunt. Iterum nostri sacerdotes idiote dicebant
to-have-done they-proved again our priests the-simple said
presbyterum ex Artrica et presbyterum ex Cuislara et Odfridum
the-priest of Aartrijke and the-priest of Koekelare and Odfrid
clericum per incantationes fugasse in bello consulem
the-cleric by enchantments to-have-put-to-flight in battle the-consul
Theodoricum et suos, cum Deus omnia disponat et ordinet.
Theoderic and his-men although God all-things arranges and orders

William besieges the herald's house at Oostkamp for six days with engines, but Theoderic and the men of Bruges defend it across the river, and William's attempt to fill the moat is burned. He withdraws, burning Ansbold's houses, and the countryfolk flee into Bruges. The wise who speak the truth there are called traitors, and Galbert grants that Bruges is rightly under ban for setting a count over a count.

Quarto nonas julii mensis, feria quarta, in translatione
on-the-fourth nones of-July month on-the-day fourth on the-translation
Martini episcopi Turonensis ecclesiae, obsedit comes Willelmus
of-Martin bishop of-Tours of-the-church besieged count William
Nortmannensis cum gravi exercitu domum magni preconis in
the-Norman with heavy army the-house of-the-great herald in
villa Orscamp, adducens instrumenta jactatoria, magnellam
the-village Oostkamp bringing engines for-hurling a-mangonel
et pyrrira, quibus dejiceret domum prefatam. Sed
and pyrrira with-which he-might-throw-down the-house aforesaid but
Theodoricus comes cum civibus Brudgensibus et Flandrigenis
Theoderic the-count with the-citizens of-Bruges and the-Flemings
circa Bruggas, et infra fossata et sepes ejusdem domus
around Bruges and within the-ditches and hedges of-the-same house
simulque Arnoldus Wineth sese opposuerunt, utrumque
and-together Arnold Wineth themselves set-against both
vero exercitum fluvius diviserat, qui domum illam predictam
but army a-river had-divided which the-house that aforesaid
orientem versus muniebat. At ex illa parte, in qua Willelmus
on-the-east toward fortified but from that side on which William
insultum fecit, domus illa sepibus et fossatis firma fuit. Multi
the-assault made house that by-hedges and ditches strong was many
igitur in aggressu belli et pugnae in invicem utrimque
therefore in the-assault of-battle and of-fight against each-other on-both-sides

mortui seu vulnerati sunt, sed domus et fossata et sepes
dead or wounded were but the-house and ditches and hedges
ejus firmiter perstiterunt. Tandem turrim ex una et turrim
its firmly held-out at-last a-tower on one and a-tower
ex altera parte oppositam erexerunt, quibus conscensis, acriori
on the-other side opposite they-raised by-which climbed in-sharper
modo pugnaverunt. Tunc exercitus Willelmi, eo quod ventus
manner they-fought then the-army of-William by-this that the-wind
ex occidente duriter perflaret oppositum sibi hostium
from the-west hard blew opposite to-itself of-the-enemies
cuneum, comportari jussit undecunque fenum, herbam, tecta
the-wedge to-be-carried ordered from-everywhere hay grass roofs
domorum, frutecta et omnem materiam, quae subministraret
of-houses brushwood and all material which should-supply
impletionem fossatorum, ut sic intrarent ad hostes
the-filling of-the-ditches that thus they-might-enter to the-enemies
oppositos. At illi de intus ignem pice et uncto veteri
opposite but those from within fire with-pitch and grease old
et cera levius ardentem machinae injecerunt, et ita igne
and wax more-easily burning on-the-machine threw and so by-fire
consumptum est quicquid conjectum fuit. Ejusdem quidem
consumed was whatever thrown-in had-been of-the-same indeed
machinae ardentis fumus, ventorum stridore agitatus, in
machine burning the-smoke of-the-winds by-the-whistling driven into
oculos irruit eorum qui ignem injecerant ab intrinsecus;
the-eyes rushed of-those who the-fire had-thrown from within
hastis et telis et sagittis multi occubuerunt infecti. Sedit
with-spears and missiles and arrows many fell stained sat
igitur Willelmus ille sex dies in obsidione illa, in quibus
therefore William that six days in siege that in which
diebus tot militias, tot tornationes exercitabant milites
days so-many feats-of-arms so-many tourneys practiced the-knights

utriusque exercitus. Nam cum fluvius profundus esset inter
of-each army for since the-river deep was between
utrumque hostem, querebant omni tempore obsidionis milites
each enemy they-sought in-all the-time of-the-siege the-knights
Willelmi vada et transitus fluvii, quibus transire non
of-William fords and crossings of-the-river by-which to-cross not
differebant, avidi pugnae et belli, utpote illi qui fortiores armis
they-delayed eager for-fight and battle as-being those who stronger in-arms
et numerosiores erant multitudine. Sexto ergo die, qui
and more-numerous were in-multitude on-the-sixth therefore day which
erat septimo idus julii, feria secunda, circa vesperam, videns
was on-the-seventh ides of-July the-day second about evening seeing
Willelmus, quod nihil proficeret in obsidione domus illius,
William that nothing he-was-achieving in the-siege of-house that
transire jussit milites quadringentos per vada fluvii, et
to-cross ordered knights four-hundred through the-fords of-the-river and
combusserunt domum Ansboldi militis et domos fratris et
they-burned the-house of-Ansbold the-knight and the-houses of-the-brother and
sororum ejus; tunc exercitus ejus recessit. At nostri fugerunt
sisters his then army his withdrew but ours fled
in Bruggas, et vicini qui circa nos commanebant, cum
into Bruges and the-neighbors who around us dwelt with
omni supellectili sua et pecudibus fugientes, intraverunt ad
all furnishing their and herds fleeing entered to
nos in Bruggas, tremore et pavore attoniti, noctemque illam
us into Bruges by-trembling and fear astonished and-the-night that
insomnem duxerunt. Eadem die monachi Sancti Trudonis
sleepless they-spent on-the-same day of-the-monks of-Saint Trond
et eorundem cellula, juxta Orscamp sita, prorsus depredata
and of-the-same the-little-cell near Oostkamp situated utterly plundered
est, ut nec libri vel calix sacrificii ibidem remaneret.
was so-that not-even books or the-chalice of-the-sacrifice there remained

Notandum quidem, quod nullus sapientum inter nostros
it-must-be-noted indeed that none of-the-wise among our
Brudgenses ausus erat vera profiteri de casu et infortunio
men-of-Bruges dared had true-things to-declare about the-fall and misfortune
et fuga nostra. Quicumque enim aliquid veritatis profitebatur,
and flight our whoever for anything of-truth declared
illum traditorem loci nostri et fautorem Willelmi consulis
him as-traitor of-place our and supporter of-William the-consul
deturpabant, mortemque subito minati sunt. Nec mirum,
they-defamed and-death suddenly threatened have nor wonderful
quia Deus obstinabat corda eorum, ne omnem veritatem
because God hardened the-hearts of-them lest all truth
vellent audire. Tamen cruces et processiones per
they-should-wish to-hear yet the-crosses and processions through
ecclesias a clero delatas subsequentes, magis Deum ad iram
the-churches by the-clergy carried following rather God to wrath
quam ad placationem provocaverunt, quia in obstinatione
than to appeasing they-provoked because in obstinacy
animi in malis et in superbia et pugna contra potestatem
of-mind in evils and in pride and fight against the-power
a Deo ipsis prelatam exiverant. Omni quidem potestati
by God over-them set they-had-gone-out to-every indeed power
omnis anima debet esse subdita, sicut ait apostolus. Igitur si
every soul ought to-be subject as says the-apostle therefore if
in loco illo, unde pessimae traditiones emerserant, infortunia
in place that whence the-worst betrayals had-emerged misfortunes
contingerent, bella, seditiones, homicidia, opprobria sempiterna
should-happen wars seditions homicides reproaches everlasting
totius Flandriae, nonne jure idem locus debetur omnibus
of-all Flanders is-not rightly the-same place owed to-all
malis? Et si ecclesia fratrum patitur quae in Brudgis
evils and if the-church of-the-brothers suffers which at Bruges

est, nonne merito, quia prepositus ejusdem ecclesiae causam
is is-it-not deservedly because the-provost of-the-same church the-cause
malorum intulit? Et quamvis nemo auderet annuntiare bannum
of-evils brought and although no-one dared to-announce the-ban
et anathema archiepiscopi nostri et episcopi ceterorumque
and anathema of-archbishop our and of-the-bishop and-of-the-other
suffraganeorum episcoporum ejus, audivimus et cognovimus
suffragan bishops his we-heard and recognized
quidem vere et nos fuisse merito in banno positos et
indeed truly also us to-have-been deservedly under ban placed and
in prohibitione divini officii, eo quod superposueramus
under prohibition of-the-divine office by-this that we-had-set-over
comitem comiti et infinitas mortes per hoc intulimus
a-count over-a-count and endless deaths through this we-brought
universis. Presbiteri nostri et clerus nostri loci preparaverunt
on-all priests our and the-clergy of-our place prepared
sese ad pugnam cum populo et turba, male illius
themselves for fight with the-people and crowd badly of-that
memores, quod starent quasi murus pro domo Israel.
mindful that they-should-stand as-if a-wall for the-house of-Israel

Christian of Gistel gives his son as a hostage, and Walter's brothers remain in fetters at Bruges, while Walter, mortally wounded, is taken away.

Quinto idus julii, feria quarta, in translatione Benedicti
on-the-fifth ides of-July on-the-day fourth on the-translation of-Benedict
abbatis, Christianus de Gistela et fratres Walteri
abbot Christian of Gistel and the-brothers of-Walter
Pennati-mendacii venerunt Bruggas per conductum Danielis.
Feathered-lie came to-Bruges through the-conduct of-Daniel
Et posuit Christianus filium suum in obsidem, et fratres
and placed Christian son his as hostage and the-brothers
prefati duo remanserunt obsides pro Waltero fratre suo
aforesaid two remained hostages for Walter brother their
compediti in domo comitis, quae est in Brudgis. Ferebant
fettered in the-house of-the-count which is at Bruges they-carried
igitur secum Christianus et milites ejus Walterum illum,
therefore with-them Christian and knights his Walter that
donec viderent, si aut convaleret aut moreretur, utpote
until they-should-see if either he-should-recover or die as-being
illum qui vulneratus ad mortem languebat.
him who wounded to death languished

The duke of Louvain besieges Aalst with William's help. A mill breach drains the water defending Bruges, and soothsayers and priests flatter the citizens, proclaiming fasts and anathemas for offerings, though every soul should be subject to the power God sets over it. Walter is brought back to Bruges.

Quarto idus julii, feria quinta dux Lovaniae obsedit
on-the-fourth ides of-July on-the-day fifth the-duke of-Louvain besieged
Alst cum gravi exercitu; et venit sibi in auxilium
Aalst with heavy army and came to-him into aid
comes Flandriarum Willelmus cum quadringentis militibus.
the-count of-the-Flanders William with four-hundred knights
Interim apud Brudgenses multa mendacia volitabant de
meanwhile among the-men-of-Bruges many lies flew about
negotio obsidionis prefatae. Contigit interim, quod in
the-business of-siege aforesaid it-happened meanwhile that at
Brudgis molendinum aquis inmersum undique dilapsumque
Bruges a-mill by-waters drowned on-all-sides and-fallen-apart
destrueretur, et aqua, quae ad plagam meridiei munierat
was-destroyed and the-water which on the-side of-the-south had-fortified
castrum et suburbium Brudgense, in loco quo molendinum
the-castle and suburb of-Bruges in the-place where the-mill
concluserat aquas, elaberetur fere tota. Inde commoti
had-shut-in the-waters slipped-away almost whole thence stirred
cives accurrebant, et fimo, lignis, terra, aquas effluentes
the-citizens ran-up and with-dung timbers earth the-waters flowing-out
obstruebant. Imputabant igitur suffossionem molendini factam
blocked they-imputed therefore the-undermining of-the-mill done
fuisse furtive ab inimicis suis, eo quod ita post defluxum
to-have-been stealthily by enemies their by-this that so after the-flowing-off

aquarum castrum et suburbium ipsorum ad ingressum
of-the-waters the-castle and suburb their to entry
pateret hostibus. Multi aderant divinatores et laici et
might-lie-open to-the-enemies many were-present soothsayers both lay and
sacerdotes, qui adulabantur civibus nostris, predicentes eis
priests who flattered citizens our foretelling to-them
quaecumque sciebant cives voluisse audire. Si quis vero
whatever they-knew the-citizens to-have-wished to-hear if anyone but
sapiens de negotio obsidionis aut de loci et civium
wise about the-business of-the-siege or about of-the-place and of-the-citizens
periculis inminentibus verum profitebatur, vilissima repulsa
dangers hanging-over the-truth professed by-a-most-vile rebuff
impetitus ab ipsis obmutuit. Sed presbyteris adulatoribus
attacked by them he-fell-silent but for-the-priests flatterers
bonum fuit quia, cum in quadragesimali sancto tempore
good it-was because when in the-Lenten holy time
concessissent civibus bis comedere in die quo omnes
they-had-granted to-the-citizens twice to-eat in a-day when all
catholici observabant jejunia et modo in tempore obsidionis
catholics kept fasts and now in the-time of-the-siege
ducis praefati ante vigiliam sancti Jacobi apostoli et
of-the-duke aforesaid before the-eve of-saint James the-apostle and
Christophori martyris feria secunda indixissent jejunium
Christopher the-martyr on-the-day second they-had-proclaimed a-fast
in pane et aqua omnibus nostri loci et pueris qui septennes
on bread and water for-all of-our place and children who seven-years-old
exstiterant et universis utriusque sexus hominibus, cruces
had-been and all of-both sex persons crosses
ferendo, consulem Willelmum anathematizando, candelas et
by-carrying the-consul William by-anathematizing candles and
denarios et ceteras oblationes ventribus tantummodo utiles,
pennies and other offerings for-bellies only useful

ipsi sacerdotes in pretium susceperunt, quasi tali jejunio
they the-priests as payment received as-if by-such fast
et oblatione, ipsum Deum ad injustitiam flecterent, cum
and offering himself God to injustice they-might-bend when
tamen cives in eadem obstinatione persisterent ut nullo
yet the-citizens in the-same obstinacy persisted so-that in-no
modo dominum suum recognoscerent et, ut sepe diximus,
way lord their they-recognized and as often we-have-said
omni potestati omnis anima sit subjecta propter Deum
to-every power every soul let-be subject for God
et ipse dominus Pilato respondit, qui et ipse Pilatus a
and he the-Lord to-Pilate answered who also himself Pilate by
Romanis prestitutus erat Ierosolimis Judeis, tempore eodem
the-Romans set-over was at-Jerusalem to-the-Jews at-the-time same
quo passus est dominus, non haberes, inquit, in me
in-which suffered has the-Lord not you-would-have he-says over me
potestatem nisi tibi datum fuisset desuper a patre meo;
power unless to-you given it-had-been from-above by Father my
et iterum: quae sunt Dei Deo reddite et quae
and again the-things-which are of-God to-God render and the-things-which
sunt Cesaris Cesari. Injuste quidem agebant cives ut,
are of-Caesar to-Caesar unjustly indeed acted the-citizens that
vivo domino suo, alium superponerent dominum, neutro
while-living lord their another they-should-set-over lord neither
quippe vel juste depulso vel suscepto. Quidam presbyterorum
indeed either justly driven-off or taken-up a-certain of-the-priests
consilium accepit a convicariis suis utrum consulem
counsel took from fellow-vicars his whether the-consul
Willelmum et omnes ejus fautores cujuscumque fuissent
William and all his supporters of-whatever they-had-been
conditionis excommunicaret in festo sancti Christophori
condition he-should-excommunicate on the-feast of-saint Christopher

in Brudgis. Ecce in aperto est quia a senibus judicibus
at Bruges behold in the-open it-is that from old judges
iniquitas egressa sit qui videbantur regere gregem domini.
iniquity gone-forth has who seemed to-rule the-flock of-the-Lord
Adhuc vero languebant cives nostri in extorquendo pecuniam
still but languished citizens our in wringing money
ab invicem, quam comiti Theodorico transmitterent in
from each-other which to-count Theoderic they-might-send for
expeditionem obsidionis prefatae. Similiter illi ex Gend
the-expedition of-siege aforesaid likewise those from Ghent
laborabant. Erantque in Alst obsessi Iwan et Daniel et
labored and-there-were at Aalst besieged Iwain and Daniel and
comes Theodoricus cum forti milite satisque in bello probato.
count Theoderic with strong knighthood and-enough in battle proved
Octavo kal. augusti, feria quarta, in die sancti
on-the-eighth kalends of-August on-the-day fourth on the-day of-saint
Christophori, reductus est Walterus Pennatum-mendacium in
Christopher brought-back was Walter Feathered-lie into
captivitatem Brudgis; et redditi sunt obsides, qui pro eo
captivity at-Bruges and returned were the-hostages who for him
dati et usque ad id temporis observati fuerant.
given and right-up to that of-time kept had-been

On 27 July, in an assault on Aalst, William is unhorsed, and a foot soldier's lance pierces his hand and arm. His knights hide his death all day, while the duke seeks peace with Theoderic and then announces that William has died. His body is carried to Saint Omer for burial.

Sexto kal. augusti, sexta feria post transfigurationem
on-the-sixth kalends of-August on-the-sixth day after the-transfiguration
Domini in monte Thabor, dignabatur Dominus suae previsionis
of-the-Lord on mount Tabor deigned the-Lord of-his foresight
et nostrae simul persecutionis ponere in hac seditione
and of-our together persecution to-put on this sedition
quadammodo finem, quia comes Willelmus Northmannus, dum
in-some-way an-end because count William the-Norman while
in assultu prefatae obsidionis se pretulisset hostibus
in the-assault of-the-aforesaid siege himself he-had-put-forward to-the-enemies
penes castrum Alst, dejectus ab equo, dum sese in pedes
near the-castle of-Aalst thrown from horse while himself onto feet
recepisset, et manum dexteram ad oras armorum deduceret.
he-had-got-again and the-hand right to the-edges of-the-armor he-drew
quidam peditum ab hostibus prosiliens, lancea eandem
a-certain of-the-foot-soldiers from the-enemies leaping-forth with-a-lance the-same
dexteram consulis in palma perfigens, medium brachii, quod
right-hand of-the-consul in the-palm piercing the-middle of-the-arm which
adjunctum manui coheserat, perfodit et lethali vulnere
joined to-the-hand had-clung dug-through and with-a-deadly wound
infecit. Quem milites sui collegerunt, utpote dominum
stained whom knights his gathered as-being lord
suum miserando occasu morientem, ac per totum illum
their by-pitiable fall dying and through all that

diem mortem celando inimicis, sine planctu et ejulatu
day the-death concealing from-the-enemies without lament and wailing
voces et clamores dolorum compresserant, tanto acriori
the-voices and cries of-griefs they-had-pressed-down by-so-much sharper
mentis angustiati confusione. Dux igitur Lovaniae querere
of-mind distressed with-confusion the-duke therefore of-Louvain to-seek
satagebat, ut se et suos componeret cum comite nostro
was-busy that himself and his-men he-might-reconcile with count our
Theodorico, et totius discordiae in invicem habitae,
Theoderic and of-the-whole discord against each-other held
caussas in judicio Iwan et Danielis et regis Angliae
the-causes to the-judgment of-Iwain and of-Daniel and of-the-king of-England
commendavit. Concessione ergo compositionis utrimque
he-entrusted by-the-granting therefore of-the-settlement on-both-sides
laudata, dum rogabat comitem nostrum Theodoricum, ut
praised while he-asked count our Theoderic that
ducatum preberet consuli Willelmo revertendi cum suis
escort he-should-furnish to-the-consul William of-returning with his-men
pacifice ab obsidione, cumque etiam comes Theodoricus
peacefully from the-siege and-when also count Theoderic
duci super hoc assensum prestitisset, ait dux: «Ecce! quem
to-the-duke upon this assent had-furnished says the-duke behold whom
in tantum virtus tua persequitur hostem, Willelmus comes
to such-a-degree strength your pursues the-enemy William the-count
e vulnere lethali expiravit.» Igitur prosiluit unusquisque
from the-wound deadly has-expired therefore leapt-forth each-one
utrimque, alius ad deflendum tanti et tam precipui militis
on-both-sides one for weeping-for of-so-great and so outstanding a-knight
occasum, alius ad excitandum hostes in exultandum, alius
the-fall another for rousing the-enemies to exulting another
ad denuntiandum his qui domi remanserant, ut sibi
for announcing to-those who at-home had-remained that for-themselves

precauti rerum suarum non nisi vigilanter et preconsiderati
forewarned of-things their not except watchfully and with-forethought
agerent. Volitabat enim undique rumor et fama mortis
they-should-act flew for on-all-sides the-rumor and report of-the-death
principis illius, et qui in fide et securitate ejusdem
of-the-prince that and those-who in the-faith and assurance of-the-same
consulis decertaverant, ad tutiora loca sese conferebant.
consul had-fought to safer places themselves betook
Tunc cum planctu infinito et clangore excelso corpus
then with lament endless and clamor loud the-body
militis strenui feretris impositum ad Sanctum Audomarum
of-the-knight vigorous on-biers placed to Saint Omer
humandum transtulerunt.
to-be-buried they-carried

120 · THEODERIC TRIUMPHS

Theoderic takes Ypres and harries William's supporters. Galbert reflects that God freed Bruges by letting William die in the duke's quarrel, not by its citizens' hands, though some say they share his death for setting Theoderic against him, and others that each fought there for his own cause.

Ceterum Theodoricus comes inimicos suos persequebatur
moreover Theoderic the-count enemies his pursued
ubique, et conflagratione ignis eos vastavit, captivavit,
everywhere and with-the-burning of-fire them laid-waste captured
disperdidit, nisi qui gratiam ejus ante conflagrationem
destroyed except those-who the-favor his before the-burning
ipsam aut pecunia aut aliter conquisierant. Ascendit igitur
itself either by-money or otherwise had-won went-up therefore
Theodoricus comes apud Ipram quarto kal. augusti,
Theoderic the-count to Ypres on-the-fourth kalends of-August

dominica, cum infinito militum auxilio et obtinuit Ipram.
on-Sunday with endless of-knights help and gained Ypres
Cives vero Brudgenses et milites et solidarii eorum
the-citizens but of-Bruges and the-knights and hired-soldiers their
exierunt, et depredati sunt villam Ridevorda et domos
went-out and plundered have the-village Ruddervoorde and the-houses
combusserunt. Igitur Lambertus ex Ridevorda et Lambertus
burned therefore Lambert of Ruddervoorde and Lambert
ex Winchina, et Folketh ex Tileth, et plures alii de
of Wingene and Folket of Tielt and many others from
confiniis nostris, qui in auxilio consulis Willelmi certaverant,
borders our who in the-aid of-the-consul William had-fought
sese in oppido Winendala receperunt. Illi quoque qui in
themselves into the-fortress of-Wijnendale withdrew those also who at
Ipra cives in parte constiterant Willelmi, cum Isaac apud
Ypres citizens on the-side had-stood of-William with Isaac at
Formesela sese contra comitem Theodoricum firmaverunt,
Voormezele themselves against count Theoderic fortified
ubi exercitata est militia maxima.
where practiced was knighthood very-great
Et notandum, quod cum in tantis periculis Brudgensium
and it-must-be-noted that when in such dangers of-the-men-of-Bruges
locus fuisset, ut cives nullo consilio sibi posse, nisi
the-place had-been that the-citizens by-no counsel themselves to-be-able except
a solo Deo, mederi credidissent, et ideo cordis sacrificio
by alone God to-heal had-believed and therefore of-heart with-the-sacrifice
Deum placassent, dispensatione solita Deus subvenit ipsis;
God had-appeased by-dispensation usual God came-to-aid them
nam consulem Willelmum gladio sui judicii enecavit, sed
for the-consul William with-the-sword of-his judgment he-killed but
illo quippe modo, ut non in propria sed in alienae pugnae
in-that indeed way that not in his-own but in of-another fight

caussa, scilicet ducis illius cujus in auxilio militabat,
the-cause namely of-the-duke that whose in aid he-served
emoreretur. Proinde nos Brudgenses a morte illius innoxii
he-should-die accordingly we men-of-Bruges from the-death of-him harmless
deputabamur, quoniam quidem nemo e nostris ipsi intulerat
were-reckoned since indeed no-one of ours to-him had-brought
mortem, imo eodem tempore, quo defunctus est a
death nay at-the-same time in-which departed he-was from
vita, nos timebamus illum procul dubio ad nos obsidendos
life we feared him without doubt for us to-be-besieged
futurum. Illi etiam ex Ostkercka milites, qui de consilio
about-to-be those also from Oostkerke knights who on the-counsel
comitis Theodorici et nostro pendebant, eadem die qua
of-count Theoderic and ours depended on-the-same day on-which
obiit consul Willelmus, improperabant nobis quod traditores
died the-consul William reproached us that traitors
fuissemus, et recesserunt a nobis. Interea apud Bruggas
we-had-been and withdrew from us meanwhile to Bruges
nuntius venit, qui mortem denuntiaret Willelmi consulis;
a-messenger came who the-death should-announce of-William the-consul
quo audito, cives et omnes nostrates Deo referebant
which heard the-citizens and all our-people to-God gave
gratias pro tanta liberatione sua et rerum suarum. Igitur
thanks for so-great a-deliverance their and of-goods their therefore
mirabilis dispensatio Dei, quae hoc modo principem illum
wonderful the-dispensation of-God which in-this way prince that
mori dispensavit, ut in ducis prefati obsidentis Alst
to-die arranged that in of-the-duke aforesaid besieging Aalst
auxilio obiret extra consulatum nostrum. Et quamquam
the-aid he-should-die outside consulship our and although
contra nostrum comitem et nostrates in parte pugnaret,
against our count and our-people in part he-fought

non fuit quidem alicujus alterius caussa illius pugnae et
not was indeed of-any other the-cause of-that fight and
obsidionis quam ducis. Et licet Willelmus comes libenter
siege than of-the-duke and although William the-count gladly
quacumque occasione nostrates impugnaret, et ideo in
on-whatever occasion our-people would-attack and therefore into
auxilium ducis maxime conscendisset, ejus pugna aut
the-aid of-the-duke most had-gone-up his fight or
ejus mors ibidem a Deo prefixa non imputabatur nisi
his death there by God fixed not was-imputed except
duci; ducis enim miles in hoc fuerat, nec ibidem
to-the-duke of-the-duke for the-knight in this he-had-been nor there
pro comitatu primo, sed pro salute et honore ducis,
for the-countship first but for the-safety and honor of-the-duke
velut alius quislibet solidarius, mortuus est. Contendunt
as another any hired-soldier dead he-is contend
aliqui quod nostrates, postquam expulerant Willelmum
some that our-people after they-had-expelled William
consulem, superopposuerunt ei Theodoricum comitem, et
the-consul set-against him Theoderic the-count and
eundem argento et consilio et omni facultate tam
the-same with-silver and counsel and every resource as-much
consilii quam pecuniae undique confirmatum in castris
of-counsel as of-money on-all-sides strengthened in the-castles
et omnibus locis, in quibus prevenire poterant, Willelmo
and all places in which to-forestall they-could William
illi opposuerunt ad resistendum; illo enim modo non
that they-set-against for resisting in-that for way not
potuerunt innocentes a morte illius probari. Alii dicunt
they-could innocent of the-death of-him to-be-proved others say
ducem impetisse Theodoricum comitem, quia presciebat, si
the-duke to-have-attacked Theoderic the-count because he-foreknew if

ipse Theodoricus forte regnaret et persisteret in consulatu
he Theoderic perhaps should-reign and persist in the-consulship
Flandrensi, multa mala posset in posterum inferre sibi,
Flemish many evils he-could in the-future to-bring on-him
et fortassis a ducatu expelleret, aut saltem dotem
and perhaps from the-duchy expel or at-least dowry
illam, pro qua comes Theodoricus satagebat ducem coram
that for which count Theoderic was-busy the-duke before
imperatore appellare violenter auferret. Comes Willelmus pro
the-emperor to-summon violently take-away count William for
consimili causa in predicta ducis obsidione impugnabat
a-like cause in the-aforesaid of-the-duke siege attacked
comitem Theodoricum, quia sciebat hunc emoliri, quo
count Theoderic because he-knew this-one to-be-striving by-what
astu a consulatu expellere ipsum potuisset; attamen
cunning from the-consulship to-expel him he-could yet
sibi injuste et traditiose sciebat illum Theodoricum
to-himself unjustly and treacherously he-knew that Theoderic
sibi superpositum fuisse, et ideo utrimque poterant
to-him set-over to-have-been and therefore on-both-sides they-could
rationabiliter et comes Willelmus pro causa ducis et
reasonably both count William for the-cause of-the-duke and
pro propria injuria ibidem recte occubuisse, et comes
for own wrong there rightly to-have-fallen and count
Theodoricus pro dote a duce expostulata juste et
Theoderic for the-dowry from the-duke demanded justly and
pro comitatu oblique tradito ibidem restitisse duci et
for the-countship crookedly handed-over there to-have-resisted the-duke and
Willelmo comiti.
William the-count

Galbert asks why God let William, whose cause seemed juster, die and kept Theoderic: the county was Theoderic's by inheritance, and William was set over him by purchase from the king. God punished the Flemings for taking their lord heedlessly, and their counselors taught him plunder.

Queratur ergo, cum per mortem alterius Deus pacem vellet
let-it-be-asked therefore since through the-death of-the-one God peace wished
restituere patriae, cur magis dispensavit, ut moreretur
to-restore to-the-fatherland why rather he-arranged that should-die
Willelmus comes, qui justiorem caussam regendi terram
William the-count who the-juster cause of-ruling the-land
obtinuit, et quare non citius mortuus fuit Theodoricus
held and why not sooner dead was Theoderic
comes, qui injuste superpositus videbatur, aut qua
the-count who unjustly set-over seemed or by-what
justitia Deus concessit ei consulatum, qui violenter
justice God granted to-him the-consulship who violently
arripuit dignitatem. Si igitur neuter eorum bene suscepit
seized the-dignity if therefore neither of-them well took-up
comitatum, jure uterque erat auferendus. Attamen quia
the-countship by-right each was to-be-taken-away yet because
jure hereditario Theodorico consuli pertinebat comitatus,
by-right hereditary to-Theoderic the-consul belonged the-countship
jure eum possidet; et si injuste videatur arripuisse,
by-right it he-possesses and if unjustly he-seem to-have-seized
tamen quia olim ante electionem illius Willelmi, qui
yet because once before the-election of-that William who
mortuus est, per litteras directas primatibus Flandriae
dead is through letters directed to-the-chief-men of-Flanders

requisiverat, quod sibi pertinebat, quamquam et tunc non
he-had-claimed what to-him belonged although also then not
sit exauditus ab illis, non minus debebat petere et
he-was heard by them not less he-ought to-seek and
conquirere hereditatem suam, quae injuste sibi ablata
to-win inheritance his which unjustly from-him taken-away
est, et alii injuste a rege Franciae vendita. Igitur post
was and to-another unjustly by the-king of-France sold therefore after
tot controversias preponimus justiorem caussam Theodorico
so-many controversies we-set-before the-juster cause to-Theoderic
comiti, qui non injuste dicitur superpositus consuli
the-count who not unjustly is-said set-over to-the-consul
Willelmo, imo ille comes mortuus ipsi Theodorico
William nay that count dead to-the-very Theoderic
injustissime superpositus est, et per coemptionem ex
most-unjustly set-over was and through the-purchase from
regis potestate potestative comes effectus. Igitur jure
of-the-king power by-power count made therefore by-right
illum ex antiqua justitia Theodoricum vitae reservavit,
him from old justice Theoderic for-life he-kept
et suae hereditati restituit, illumque morte a consulatu
and to-his inheritance restored and-him by-death from the-consulship
removit, qui quantumcumque potenter viveret, totam
removed who however powerfully he-might-live the-whole
terram vastaret, omnesque terrae incolas ad bellum
land would-lay-waste and-all of-the-land the-inhabitants to war
civile provocaret, legesque Dei et hominum confunderet,
civil would-provoke and-the-laws of-God and of-men would-confound
quem lege districta Deus viam universae carnis ingredi
whom by-law strict God the-way of-all flesh to-enter
non sine malis meritis suis adjudicavit. Nec enim comes
not without evil deserts his adjudged nor for count

Willelmus de omnibus quae in vita possedit secum
William of all-things which in life he-possessed with-himself
post mortem permanere fatebitur inter umbras, quas ad
after death to-remain shall-confess among the-shades which to
penalia loca premisit, nisi militiae laudem; bonus enim in
penal places he-sent-ahead except of-knighthood the-praise good for in
militia dicebatur. Igitur tantam injuriam, quia nulla potestas
knighthood he-was-said therefore so-great a-wrong because no power
humana corrigere aut potuit aut voluit, secundum lineam
human to-correct either could or wished according-to the-line
districti examinis sui Deus correxit. Ideoque in homines
of-strict judgment his God corrected and-therefore on the-men
Flandriae iram et flagella indignationis suae intulit, quia
of-Flanders wrath and the-scourges of-indignation his he-brought because
omnium erat in arbitrio positum ante deliberare, previdere
of-all it-was in the-choice placed before to-deliberate to-foresee
et discutere et summa diligentia perquirere, Deumque
and to-discuss and with-highest diligence to-search-out and-God
contrito corde et piae mentis sacrificio super hoc placare,
with-contrite heart and of-pious mind by-sacrifice about this to-appease
quem sibi et patriae dominum prestituerent,
whom for-themselves and for-the-fatherland as-lord they-should-set-over
et electum amarent et venerarentur. Quia ergo hoc
and chosen should-love and venerate because therefore this
neglexerunt, eum, quem incaute dominum susceperunt,
they-neglected him whom heedlessly as-lord they-took-up
tyrannum et vastatorem totiusque mali exactorem perpessi
as-tyrant and waster and-of-all evil exactor suffered
sunt, eundemque post electionem et susceptionem in
they-have and-the-same after the-election and taking-up in
consulatu nullam viam vel mores honestos predecessorum
the-consulship no way or ways honorable of-the-predecessors

comitum, principes et bajuli aut consiliarii terrae
counts the-princes and bailiffs or counselors of-the-land
docuerunt, sed ad predam et argutas fallacesque causas
taught but for plunder and subtle and-deceitful cases
instruxerunt, quibus pecunias infinitas super cives et
instructed by-which moneys endless from the-citizens and
burgenses terrae conquirerent et quandoque violenter
burghers of-the-land they-might-win and sometimes violently
extorquerent.
they-might-wring

122 · THEODERIC CONFIRMED

Theoderic is received in Flanders and invested by the kings of France and England.

Igitur Theodoricus Flandriarum marchio ab illo mortis
therefore Theoderic of-the-Flanders marquis from that of-the-death
Willelmi tempore regnavit, et peragratis castris, scilicet
of-William time reigned and traversed the-castles namely
Atrebato, Teruannia, Sancto Audomaro, Insulis, Aria, in quibus
Arras Thérouanne Saint Omer Lille Aire in which
locis more bonorum predecessorum suorum venerabiliter
places in-the-manner of-good predecessors his reverently
susceptus est a clero et populo, et fide et hominio
received he-was by the-clergy and people and in-faith and homage
confirmatus, tandem ad reges Franciae et Angliae ascendit,
confirmed at-last to the-kings of-France and of-England went-up
suscepturus ab ipsis feoda et donaria regalia. Complacuit
about-to-receive from them the-fiefs and gifts royal pleased
ergo sibi utriusque regni scilicet rex Franciae et
therefore to-themselves of-each realm namely the-king of-France and

rex Angliae super comite nostro Theodorico, et investituras
the-king of-England about count our Theoderic and investitures
feodorum et beneficiorum, quae ab ipsis sanctissimus et
of-the-fiefs and of-the-benefices which from them the-most-holy and
piissimus comes Karolus obtinuerat, gratanter dederunt.
most-pious count Charles had-held gladly they-gave
